

AMBRIDGE



active GRAMMAR

with answers

A1-A2 **LEVEL 1**

Fiona Davis and Wayne Rimmer
Series Editor: Penny Ur



CAMBRIDGE



active **GRAMMAR**

LEVEL 1

With answers

Fiona Davis and Wayne Rimmer
Series editor: Penny Ur

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Cambridge, New York, Melbourne, Madrid, Cape Town, Singapore,
São Paulo, Delhi, Dubai, Tokyo, Mexico City

Cambridge University Press
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 8RU, UK

www.cambridge.org

Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9780521732512

© Cambridge University Press 2011

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,
no reproduction of any part may take place without the written
permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2011

Printed in the United Kingdom at the University Press, Cambridge

A catalogue record for this publication is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-0-521-73251-2 Paperback with answers and CD-ROM
ISBN 978-0-521-17368-1 Paperback without answers and CD-ROM

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or
accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in
this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is,
or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel
timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at
the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee
the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Introduction

What is Active Grammar?

Active Grammar is a grammar reference and practice series for secondary students and university students. It is divided into three levels, corresponding to the levels of *The Common European Framework of Reference for Languages* (CEF). Level 1 corresponds to A1–A2, Level 2 to B1–B2, and Level 3 to C1–C2. The books give comprehensive coverage of grammar at each level, while also covering reading, composition and discussion. The books are suitable for students who are preparing for Cambridge ESOL exams.

How are the books organised?

Each unit includes

- a short **presentation** text which shows the grammar in context and provides authentic content in areas such as geography, history, social studies and science.
- easy-to-understand **grammar explanations** with plenty of examples.
- **Tip** boxes which highlight common errors or other interesting facts about the grammar.
- graded grammar **practice exercises**, many of which are in the style of Cambridge ESOL exams, aimed at building students' confidence.
- a **My Turn** activity, where students can actively apply the grammar to their own experiences, opinions and personal preferences.
- a **My Test** section which allows students to check their understanding of key points.

Also included in the book

- regular **Review** units which provide contrastive practice of previous units.
- an **Answer key**.
- the **Appendices**, which include a **Glossary** with definitions for all **highlighted** words in the units.

The CD-ROM includes

- extra activities for all the grammar covered in the book.
- printable progress tests.

How do I use the book?

You can work through the book unit by unit from Unit 1. Alternatively, you can use any unit or group of units separately if you want to focus on a particular area of grammar.

The book can be used for self-study, or in the classroom. For teachers, a comprehensive online teacher's guide gives practical tips on how to use the material in class.

www.cambridge.org/elt/activegrammar

Contents

Introduction	3	19 Be going to	48
1 Word class and word order	6	<i>I'm going to use magic.</i>	
<i>In the world today</i>		R4 Review: the future	50
Present		Modal verbs	
2 Be	8	20 Modal verbs: can, could, be able to	52
<i>Are you my son?</i>		<i>How can dogs help us?</i>	
3 Present simple 1: statements	10	21 Modals for requests: can, could, may	54
<i>Maybe you know her.</i>		<i>Could we go on a safari?</i>	
4 Present simple 2: negatives and questions	12	22 Must, have to and can't	56
<i>Do you like zoos?</i>		<i>I have to stay here.</i>	
5 Present continuous	14	23 Should, ought to	58
<i>She's wearing a bright yellow dress.</i>		<i>You should take off your shoes.</i>	
6 Present continuous and present simple	16	24 Modals of possibility: may, might	60
<i>I'm walking – I don't have a car.</i>		<i>We may never know ...</i>	
7 Imperatives	18	R5 Review: modals	62
<i>Stay calm!</i>		Questions and answers	
R1 Review: present simple and present continuous	20	25 Yes / no questions and short answers	64
Past		<i>Are beetles important? Yes, they are!</i>	
8 Past simple 1: was / were	22	26 Question words: Where? When? Why?	66
<i>He was a popular hero.</i>		<i>How? Whose?</i>	
9 Past simple 2: regular past forms	24	<i>How did he die?</i>	
<i>She lived in a tree.</i>		27 Object and subject questions	68
10 Past simple 3: irregular past forms	26	<i>Who studied at Hogwarts?</i>	
<i>They spoke Celtic languages.</i>		28 Be like and look like	70
11 Past continuous	28	<i>What does Wolverine look like?</i>	
<i>Everyone was talking about the alligators.</i>		29 What? and Which?	72
R2 Review: past simple and past continuous	30	<i>Which of them is the queen bee?</i>	
12 Present perfect 1	32	30 How ...? questions	74
<i>They've already invented it!</i>		<i>How cold is the Channel?</i>	
13 Present perfect 2	34	31 So and neither	76
<i>Have you ever tried mustard ice cream?</i>		<i>Neither do I.</i>	
14 Present perfect 3	36	32 Question tags	78
<i>They have lived there for centuries.</i>		<i>Chocolate is bad for you, isn't it?</i>	
15 Present perfect or past simple?	38	R6 Review: questions and answers	80
<i>The company has invented the Mac and the iPod.</i>		Verbs	
16 Used to	40	33 Have and have got	82
<i>Sick people often used to sleep in temples.</i>		<i>Have you got a favourite crocodile?</i>	
R3 Review: present perfect and used to	42	34 Make, do and get	84
The future		<i>Do you get angry?</i>	
17 Will, shall, won't	44	35 Prepositional verbs	86
<i>I hope you'll enjoy yoga.</i>		<i>Think about it!</i>	
18 Present continuous with future meaning	46	36 Phrasal verbs	88
<i>She's flying to Glasgow tomorrow.</i>		<i>A friend to tidy up your room.</i>	

37 Verbs with two objects	90	60 Adverbs of frequency	142
<i>Tell your friends the truth.</i>		<i>We always have dreams.</i>	
38 Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive; like and would like	92	R10 Review: adjectives and adverbs	144
<i>Learn to speak any language in two weeks!</i>		Prepositions	
39 State verbs	94	61 Prepositions of place	146
<i>Imagine a story.</i>		<i>I've left my keys at home.</i>	
R7 Review: verb structures	96	62 Prepositions of time: at, in, on	148
Articles, nouns, pronouns, etc.		<i>It happened at night.</i>	
40 Countable and uncountable nouns	98	63 Prepositions of movement	150
<i>Where does sand come from?</i>		<i>Get off the boat and swim to the island.</i>	
41 Plural nouns	100	R11 Review: prepositions	152
<i>He ate 47 sandwiches in ten minutes.</i>		The passive	
42 Articles 1	102	64 Passive: present and past simple	154
<i>Do you know the answer?</i>		<i>A lot of rubbish is produced.</i>	
43 Articles 2	104	Conditionals	
<i>Play music and watch the birds.</i>		65 Zero and first conditionals	156
R8 Review: nouns and articles	106	<i>If you study chemistry, you'll never stop learning.</i>	
44 This, that, these, those	108	66 Second conditional	158
<i>This is me.</i>		<i>I'd throw a cake at him if he didn't stop.</i>	
45 Some, any, no, none	110	R12 Review: the passive; conditionals	160
<i>There are no trains or buses.</i>		Reported speech	
46 Something, everywhere, nobody, anyone	112	67 Reported speech	162
<i>Say nothing.</i>		<i>She said she would never have a party again.</i>	
47 Much, many, a lot of, a little, a few	114	68 Say and tell	164
<i>A lot of fun!</i>		<i>She told me to meet her.</i>	
48 Subject and object pronouns	116	Relative clauses	
<i>I don't know them and they don't know me.</i>		69 Defining relative clauses	166
49 Possessive 's	118	<i>A ball game that is played in many countries</i>	
<i>My great-grandfather's letters</i>		R13 Review: reported speech; say / tell; relative clauses	168
50 Whose?, my, mine	120	Linking words and sentences	
<i>Whose bag is this?</i>		70 Linking words: and, but, or, so, because	170
51 There and it	122	<i>What is 6,700 km long and made of stone?</i>	
<i>It's a very unusual book.</i>		71 Time and sequence adverbs: first, then, afterwards	172
R9 Review: pronouns; possessives; quantifiers	124	<i>After lunch we visit the Peguche Waterfall.</i>	
Adjectives and adverbs		72 Both, either, neither	174
52 Adjectives	126	<i>They both live in a fantasy world.</i>	
<i>It's a wonderful place.</i>		73 Word order	176
53 Order of adjectives	128	<i>Outside the port today</i>	
<i>... wonderful golden shoes ...</i>		R14 Review: linking words and word order	178
54 Comparatives	130	Appendices	
<i>It's nearer than you think.</i>		Verb tenses	180
55 Superlatives	132	Irregular verbs	181
<i>The lowest point on Earth</i>		Spelling: verbs	182
56 Adverbs of manner	134	Spelling: adjectives, adverbs and nouns	183
<i>Eat healthily.</i>		Glossary	184
57 Comparative and superlative adverbs	136	Grammar index	186
<i>Which will fall faster?</i>		Answer key	187
58 -ed and -ing adjectives	138		
<i>Is it exciting?</i>			
59 Too and enough	140		
<i>This chair is too soft.</i>			

1

Word class and word order

In the world today



In the world today, people speak around **2,700** different languages.

More than **750** million people use the English language.
But only about **350** million people speak it as a first language.

About **885** million people speak Chinese as their first language.

About **80%** of the information on the world's computers is in English.

There are **26** letters in the English alphabet. The sentence
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog uses all 26 letters.



? Underline the correct option: English is the first language of around 350 / 750 / 885 million people in the world.

Answer: 350

Word class and word order

- 1 A noun can be singular (e.g. *world*) or plural (e.g. *computers, people*).

Examples of nouns are:

man, girl (people)
fox (animals)
computer, letter, language (things)
world (places)
success (qualities)

- 2 A pronoun can replace a noun.

Examples of pronouns are:

I, me, you, she, him, it, we, them

- 3 An adjective describes a noun.

Examples of adjectives are:

quick, brown, first, different, good

- 4 Adjectives usually come before the noun.

a first language NOT *a language first*

Adjectives have no plural form.

different languages NOT *different languages*

- 5 A verb can refer to the past, present or future.

Examples of verbs are:

speak, jump (actions)
be, like, stay (states)

- 6 An adverb can describe a verb, an adjective or a whole sentence. Examples of adverbs are:

carefully, slowly (adverbs that describe a verb)
very, extremely (adverbs that describe adjectives)
however, sometimes, luckily (adverbs that describe sentences)

- 7 A sentence usually contains a subject (S) and a verb (V).

He (S) *won* (V).
Williams (S) *was* (V) *the winner*.
Our team (S) *is playing* (V) *in the big stadium*.

- 8 Many sentences contain an object (O). In these sentences the word order is SVO.

She (S) *won* (V) *the race* (O).

- 9 Adverbs which describe a verb usually come at the end of a sentence.

My brother speaks English quickly.

Practice

A Find examples of nouns, pronouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs in the following sentences and write them below.

- The alphabet has 26 letters.
- 750,000,000 people use the language.
- It has five vowels: a, e, i, o and u.
- The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.
- He studied the new words very carefully.

Nouns: *alphabet, letters.*

Pronouns:

Adjectives:

Verbs: *has.*

Adverbs:

B What is the subject in each of the sentences in Exercise A?

- the alphabet*
-
-
-
-

C Complete the sentences with an appropriate word. Use the part of speech in brackets.

- He's a *happy* child – he's always smiling. (adjective)
- loves her. (pronoun)
- She to the pool every Saturday. (verb)
- Can you speak more? I can't understand you. (adverb)
- They're both very and thin. (adjective)
- Luckily, the weather is good. It has been sunny all week. (adverb)
- I study at school. I'm a (noun)
- My teacher really good stories. (verb)
- They work at the They're nurses. (noun)
- My cousins live in Brazil. speak Portuguese. (pronoun)

D Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order.

- walks / he / quickly *He walks quickly.*
- we / speak / Russian
- a / woman / strange / is / she
- very badly / drives / my aunt
- they / live / in this street
- he / two brothers / has
- the dog / my sandwich / ate
- we / film / the / new / saw

MY TURN!

Use the words in the box to complete the table below.

	adjectives	adverbs	nouns	pronouns	verbs
1		<i>nouns</i>	bee country game giraffe leaves man moon Morocco pizza spider station tennis match woman		
2			I they we		
3			beautiful crazy purple small <i>stripy</i> tall ugly wonderful young		
4			be dance eat go have watch win		
5			angrily happily quickly quietly sadly slowly		

Now use the words from the table to make ten or more sentences and write them in your notebook. Use the verb in any appropriate tense. Your sentences must be correct but they can be crazy!

Example: *The tall man ate his pizza slowly.*



MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- My sister and I love computer games. all the time. a We play them b Them play we c Play we them
- My uncle speaks four a different languages b languages different c different languages
- My mother is Spanish and my father is Japanese, but both speak English with me. a we b them c they
- I like the book and my friend likes too. a book b him c it
- Cat, rabbit, dog and snake are a adverbs b nouns c pronouns

My Test! answers: 1a 2a 3c 4c 5b

2

Be

Are you my son?



The Prince and the Pauper (1881) is a book by Mark Twain. The book is about two boys, Tom and Edward. They are 15 years old but their lives are very different. Tom is a poor boy but Edward is a prince. They change places by mistake so Edward is a poor boy and Tom is a prince. The old King, Henry VIII, is not well but he is Edward's father and he wants to know the truth ...

The King visits the prince (or is he the poor boy?).
 King: I don't understand! **Are you** my son?
 Tom: No, I'm **not** a prince, I'm poor.
 King: **Are you** sure? Your clothes **are not** very old!
 Tom: **They're not** my clothes. **They're** Edward's clothes. **He's** poor now.
 King: Oh no! This **is** terrible! **Is** it true?
 Tom: Yes, **it is**. I'm really sorry, King Henry. **You aren't** my father, **you're** my King.



Underline the correct option: Edward is Henry's *father / brother / son*.

Answer: son

Be

- 1 Use **be** to give and ask for information.

*I'm Tom.
 The story **isn't** true.
 Is he in England?*

- 2 Use **be** with ages.

*Two boys **are** 15 years old.*

- 3 Use **be** and **a / an** with jobs.

She's a teacher.

- 4 Use **be** to describe the weather.

It's cold.

- 5 Use **be** to talk about time and place.

*It's six o'clock.
 Edward is in London.*

- 6 There is a full form and a short form.

*I **am** → I'm.*

In conversation, the short form is more common.

'They're not my clothes.'

In writing, the short form is used mainly with pronouns, not nouns.

The old King is not well, he's sick.

► See Units 25 and 32 for more information on **be** in questions.

statement ✓

negative ✗

I am ('m)

I am not ('m not)

You / We / They are ('re)

You / We / They are not (aren't / 're not)

He / She / It is ('s)

He / She / It is not (isn't / 's not)

question ?

short answer ✓ ✗

Am I ...?

Yes, I am.
 No, I am not ('m not).

Are you / we / they ...?

Yes, (they) are.
 No, (they) are not (aren't / 're not).

Is he / she / it ...?

Yes, (he) is.
 No, (he) is not (isn't / 's not).

TIP

English sentences normally need a subject.

It is cold. NOT *Is cold.*

I am sure. NOT *Am sure.*

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- I be / am / is twelve years old.
- They be / am / are in the garden.
- It am / is / are six o'clock.
- You be / is / are a dentist.
- I am / is / are in the station.
- It am / is / are very hot.
- My sister am / is / are at work.
- I be / am / are hungry.
- We am / is / are students.
- The book be / is / are about tigers.

B Complete the sentences from stories with the present simple of *be*. Some are negatives or questions.

- The poor boy has no coat. He 's cold.
- We are the three bears. We are in the woods.
- Cinderella is running home. It is 12 o'clock.
- Tweedledum and Tweedledee have the same parents. They are brothers.
- The monster has a very ugly face. He isn't handsome.
- The wicked queen is asking her mirror: are I beautiful?
- Achilles and Hector fight. They are friends.
- Robinson Crusoe has no friends on the island. isn't he unhappy?

C Complete this book review of *The Prince and the Pauper* with the present simple of *be*.

The Prince and the Pauper ¹ is a very good book. I ² am 11 years old and I ³ am not very interested in history but I really like this book. Mark Twain ⁴ is a great writer. It ⁵ is not a true story but the characters ⁶ are very realistic. The story ⁷ is not difficult. It ⁸ is easy to understand and enjoy the book. Tom ⁹ is a simple English boy. His family are poor and they ¹⁰ are always hungry. Edward ¹¹ is not poor because he ¹² is a prince. The boys ¹³ are very different but at the end of the book they ¹⁴ are friends. There are many films of the book too but they ¹⁵ are not very good – the book is the best!

D Make Tom's questions, using the words given and *be*. Then make Edward's replies with short answers using *be*.

- you / prince?
Tom: Are you a prince?
Edward: Yes, I am.
- King Henry / your father?
Tom: Are you King Henry?
Edward: Yes, I am.

- your mother / the Queen?
Tom: Is your mother the Queen?
Edward: Yes, she is.
- we / brothers?
Tom: Are we brothers?
Edward: No, we aren't. I don't have a brother.
- your sisters / here?
Tom: Are your sisters here?
Edward: No, they aren't. They're in France.
- you / very rich?
Tom: Are you very rich?
Edward: No, I'm not.
- it / cold / in your house?
Tom: Is it cold in your house?
Edward: No, it's always warm.
- I / your friend?
Tom: Are you my friend?
Edward: Yes, I like you.

MY TURN!

Use the verb *be* to make these sentences true for you.

- My mobile phone isn't new.
- Today is Monday.
- Coffee is my favourite drink.
- I am a good cook.
- My eyes are blue.
- It is warm today.
- My shoes are clean.
- I am at home.
- History books are interesting.
- My bed is next to the door.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Tom and Edward are.
a have 15 years b is 15 years old
c are 15 years old
- Paul isn't a doctor.
a isn't a b aren't c isn't
- A: What's the time? B: It's 11 o'clock.
a Is b It c It's
- A: Are you my son? B: No, I'm not.
a I'm not b I am c I am
- A: Is it cold today? B: No, it isn't. It's warm.
a Is cold b Is it cold c It cold

My Test answers: 1c 2a 3c 4a 5b

3

Present simple 1: statements

Maybe you know her.

There's a new girl at school.

Maybe you **know** her.

She **has** beautiful black hair down to her waist.

Her big, brown eyes are pools of chocolate.

The new girl's name is Layla. My sister and I **see** her every day. We **think** she's 15. She **lives** in the apartments on the corner of our street. She **goes** to the library after school. I **hope** she is happy.

Layla **has** a young brother. They **walk** to school together. Her mum **works** as a cleaner at our school. She **comes** from Egypt. I **don't know** much about Egypt. My dad **says** that it never **rains** in Cairo.



True or False? Layla lives in Egypt.

Answer: False

Present simple 1: statements

- Use the present simple for:
 - things that are always or usually true
It never rains in Cairo.
 - regular or repeated events
They walk to school together.
 - states, with verbs such as *feel, hate, know, like, look, love, prefer, think, understand, want.*
We think she's 15. Maybe you know her.
- Use the infinitive without *to* with *I, you, we* and *they*. Add *-s* with *he, she* and *it*.

statement ✓	
I / You / We / They	think
He / She / It	thinks

- Spelling of the final *-s*:
With most verbs, just add *-s* after the verb.
think → he thinks

After verbs which end *-o, -ch, -sh, -ss, -x*, add *-es*.

go → she goes
catch → he catches
push → she pushes
miss → it misses
fix → she fixes

When the verb ends in consonant + *-y*, drop the *-y* and add *-ies*.

fly → the bird flies

But add *-s* when the verb ends in vowel + *-y*.

play → he plays
enjoy → she enjoys

Irregular forms:

have → he has

TIP

In the present simple, the verb only changes with *he, she* or *it*. So remember ...

A ssssssnake never sleepssssssss.



► See page 182 for more spelling rules.

Practice

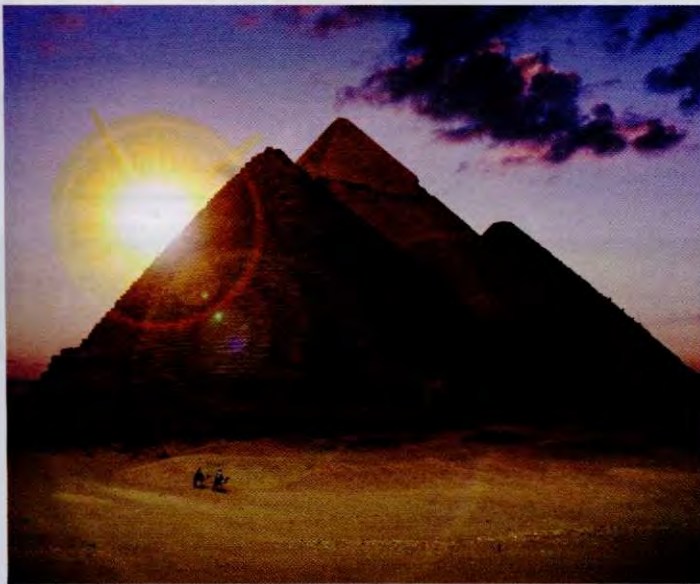
A Change the infinitive without *to* of these verbs into the correct present simple form with *it*.

- | | | |
|------------------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1 play <u>it plays</u> | 2 do | 3 enjoy |
| 4 fix | 5 miss | 6 say |
| 7 teach | 8 think | 9 try |
| 10 wash | | |

B Complete these facts about Egypt. Use the correct present simple forms of the verbs in the box.

buy come ~~have~~ have live show study visit

- Egypt has a population of around 80 million.
- 17 million people in Cairo.
- The name 'Egypt' from the Greek word *Egyptos*.
- Around 6,000,000 tourists Egypt every year.
- Every tourist presents from a night market.
- Egypt about 100 pyramids.
- Tourist guides people the pyramids of Giza.
- An Egyptologist is a person who Egyptian history from a long time ago.



C Complete Layla's letter using the correct present simple forms of the verbs in brackets.

Every morning I ¹ make (make) breakfast for my brother and me.
 I ² (walk) to school with my brother. We ³ (see) the same two girls. They always ⁴ (say) 'hello'.
 I ⁵ (feel) **lonely** sometimes, but I really like my new school. The school ⁶ (have) a very good library.
 My brother ⁷ (go) to primary school. He always ⁸ (wear) his old red coat. My mother ⁹ (go) to work early in the morning. She ¹⁰ (work) very hard.
 Thank you for the card. You ¹¹ (write) very good letters.
 Write again soon!
 Love, Layla

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write present simple statements about your school morning.

- Every morning I have breakfast with my family.
- I always
- You never
- My teacher
- The school
- My friends sometimes
- We

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- to the shops. a They walks b She walk c He walks
- Layla's mum by bus. a go b gos c goes
- in Cairo. a It never rains b It never rain c It's never rain
- big brown eyes. a Layla have b Layla haves c Layla has
- Her mum English. a study b studys c studies

4

Present simple 2: negatives and questions

Do you like zoos?

Do you like zoos?

Do you think zoos are a good idea?

Welcome to Animal World Park in California, USA.
The park is different from other zoos. We **help** animals **in danger**. When it is possible, we **return** young animals to their homes.



We **have** more than 30 gorillas in the park. A mother gorilla **doesn't have** many babies. A baby gorilla **stays** with its mother for three years.

You often **find** colobus monkeys in zoos. They are in danger because they **have** beautiful **fur**. Young colobus monkeys **don't have** black and white fur - their fur is white.



Do you want to know more about Animal World Park?

Click here for more information.



Yes, I do!
Please tell me more.
My email address is

PARK FACT
Does the park cost a lot of money?
Yes, it does. Over \$7 million every year!



Find the names of the animals in the photos.

Answer: a gorilla and a colobus monkey

Present simple 2: negatives and questions

- To make negative forms in the present simple, use **don't** and **doesn't** + the infinitive form without **to** of the verb.

*They **don't have** black and white fur.*

*A mother gorilla **doesn't have** many babies.*

negative X

I / You / We / They **do not (don't) believe**

He / She / It **does not (doesn't) believe**

TIP

There is no **-s** on the main verb after **does** or **doesn't**.

*She **doesn't think** ... NOT ~~She doesn't thinks~~ ...*

Does she know? NOT ~~Does she knows?~~

- To make a question, use **do** or **does** in front of the subject.

Do you like zoos?

Does the park cost a lot of money?

- Use **do** or **does** in the affirmative short answer and **don't** or **doesn't** in the negative short answer.

*Yes, I **do**.*

*No, he **doesn't**.*

question ?

short answer ✓ X

Do I / you / we / they like ...? Yes, (I) **do**.
No, (I) **don't**.

Does he / she / it like ...? Yes, (he) **does**.
No, (he) **doesn't**.

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- I don't know / doesn't know the answer.
- Most trees don't grow / doesn't grow very quickly.
- Do / Does Sara understand this?
- Do / Does you want to talk about it?
- The price don't include / doesn't include service.
- I don't think / doesn't think he's very nice.
- We don't see / doesn't see our grandparents very often.
- They don't live / doesn't live very near.

B Complete the text about black rhinos using the correct present simple forms of the verbs in brackets.

We ¹ have (have) a large number of rhinos living here. Black rhinos ² (not live) in groups. They ³ (prefer) to live alone. Black rhinos are in danger because of their horns. People ⁴ (use) the horns as medicine. A mother black rhino ⁵ (not have) many babies. A baby ⁶ (stay) with its mother for three to four years. The mother rhino ⁷ (not stay) with the father. Rhinos ⁸ (not fight) with other animals in the park. In fact, they are friendly animals.



C Make present simple questions from the words, then answer the questions in your notebook using short answers.

- a mechanic / fix cars
Does a mechanic fix cars?
- you / work at the weekend
Do you work at the weekend?
- a vet / look after animals
- zoo keepers / work in shops
- a young colobus monkey / have white fur
- we / go to school on Sundays
- nurses / work in a hospital
- you / do sport in the evening

D Read part of an interview with a gorilla keeper. Complete her answers, using the verbs in the box.

not eat not fight get up not go home have
have not look after love

- Yes, I get up at 6.30 every morning.
- Yes, but they bananas all the time. They like a lot of other fruit, too.
- The gorillas in the park are all friends. They
- Yes, it does. The park more than 50 gorillas.
- Yes, they do. We a baby gorilla in the park at the moment.
- Yes, but sometimes a mother her baby. Then we help the baby.
- Yes, I give the baby milk every four hours, day and night. I in the evening. I sleep at the park.
- I my job! No day is the same!

MY TURN!

What did the interviewer ask? Make present simple questions using the words in brackets and write them in your notebook.

- Do you get up early? (early)
- ? (bananas)
- ? (fight)
- ? (a lot of gorillas)
- ? (have babies)
- ? (stay with its mother)
- ? (drink milk)
- ? (like)

Now think of at least three more present simple questions for the gorilla keeper and write them in your notebook.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- A: to go to the zoo? B: No, I don't.
a You wants b Want you c Do you want
- We zoos very often.
a aren't visit b don't visit c doesn't visit
- My sister zoos.
a doesn't like b doesn't likes c don't like
- She says the animals a very happy life.
a not have b doesn't have c don't have
- A: Do the rhinos fight with other animals?
B: No,
a doesn't they b it doesn't c they don't

5

Present continuous

She's wearing a bright yellow dress.



Who is ill? a Mark b Monica c Nicole

Mark: Hi, Monica. Are you looking for Nicole?

Monica: Mark, hi. Yes, we're waiting for her at the party. She isn't answering her mobile. Is she getting ready?

Mark: No, she isn't. She's lying on the sofa.

Monica: Are you serious? Everyone's arriving now.

Mark: She isn't feeling well.

Monica: That's a shame. We're having a great time. Diego's playing his new guitar and some people are dancing. That strange girl Bianca is here too. She's wearing a bright yellow dress and a green hat. She's ... Are you listening?

Mark: Wait a minute ... Nicole is coming now ...! See you there, Monica.

Present continuous

- The present continuous describes a temporary activity in progress at or around now.

She is lying on the sofa now.

past present future

I'm reading this book at the moment.

Mark is speaking on the phone.

Are you listening?

- Make present continuous statements with *am / is / are + -ing* form of the verb.

I am watching TV.

Monica is washing her hair.

We are drinking coffee.

- Make negatives, questions and short forms like this:

I am not watching TV.

Is Monica washing her hair?

A: Are they drinking coffee?

B: Yes, they are.

statement ✓	negative ✗
I am ('m) working	I am not ('m not) working
You / We / They are ('re) working	You / We / They are not (aren't / 're not) working
He / She / It is ('s) working	He / She / It is not (isn't / 's not) working

question ?	short answer ✓✗
Am I working?	Yes, I am. No, I am not ('m not).
Are you / we / they working?	Yes, (you) are. No, (you) are not (aren't / 're not).
Is he / she / it working?	Yes, (he) is. No, (he) is not (isn't / 's not).

If a verb ends in *-e*, drop the *-e*.

dance → People are dancing. NOT ... danceing

If a verb ends in one vowel and one consonant, double the consonant.

stop → The train is stopping. NOT ... stoping

▶ See page 182 for more spelling rules.

▶ See Units 6 and 18 for more information on the present continuous.

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- 1 She is walking / are walking down the street.
- 2 People is singing / are singing too loudly.
- 3 We isn't waiting / aren't waiting in the right place.
- 4 I am running / is running because I'm late.
- 5 Hello? Are I speaking / Am I speaking to Lucy?
- 6 The guests is not enjoying / are not enjoying the party much.
- 7 At the moment I am living / are living with my friend.
- 8 Is that boy smiling / Are that boy smiling at me?

B Complete the sentences using the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 It's raining. (rain)
- 2 The baby is not crying now. (not cry)
- 3 We our holiday. (plan)
- 4 I to school. (walk)
- 5 They very fast. (not run)
- 6 The cat some milk. (drink)
- 7 I a good time. (not have)
- 8 He a computer upstairs. (carry)
- 9 She hard today. (not work)

C Complete the telephone conversation using the present continuous of the verbs in brackets. Some are negatives or questions.

'Hello, Dad. Yes, I'm still at the party. What's happening? Well, everyone ¹ 's dancing (dance) but I ² (sit) on the sofa. Geoff ³ (tell) some friends about his holiday and he ⁴ (show) them the pictures. Diego and Bianca ⁵ (look) at the pictures because they think they are boring. What? Oh, that's Helen. She ⁶ (shout), she just speaks very loudly. I'm glad she ⁷ (sing) – she is a terrible singer! Wait ... Nicole ⁸ (come) in the door. She looks OK now. Everyone ⁹ (smile). Anyway, what about you, Dad? ¹⁰ (do) anything interesting? I see. Great, they ¹¹ (bring) the food. I'm hungry! I'll phone later. Bye.'

D Complete the sentences using the present continuous of the verbs in the box. Some are negatives or questions.

carry	feel	play	stay	study
talk	try	watch	wear	write

- 1 Are you watching this film?
- 2 I very well.
- 3 A: Be quiet! We to listen to the radio!
B: Sorry.
- 4 A: My team are losing again!
B: They very well this season.
- 5 Sarah, my red dress?
- 6 A: Where's Robert?
B: He a letter.
- 7 A: you anything dangerous with you, Sir?
B: No, there's nothing dangerous in my **suitcase**.
- 8 Everyone about her purple hair.
- 9 Alice Economics at university?
- 10 A: Can I phone you at the hotel?
B: No, I there.

MY TURN!

Answer the questions in your notebook using short answers.

- 1 Is it raining? Yes, it is.
- 2 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
- 3 Are you wearing jeans?
- 4 Are any of your friends sitting near you?
- 5 Are you feeling hungry?
- 6 Is your mobile phone ringing?
- 7 Are you writing this with a black pen?
- 8 Is your watch / the clock showing the right time?
- 9 Are you listening to any music?

MY TEST!

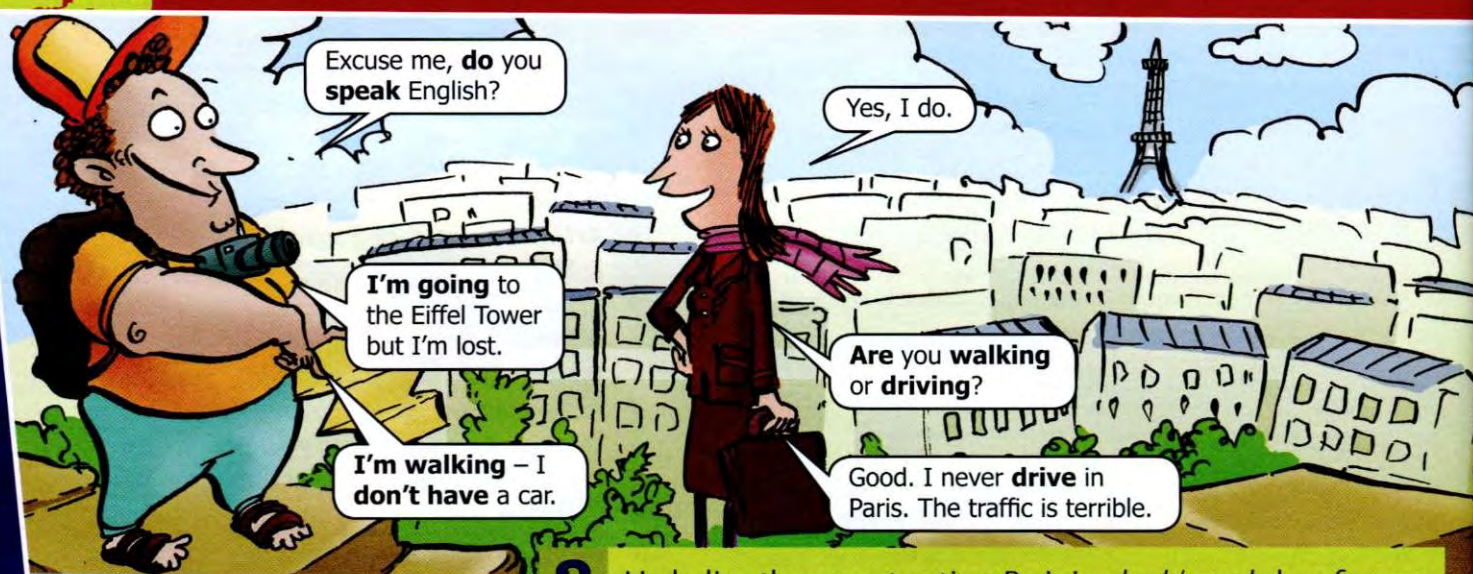
Circle the correct option.

- 1 well, so I want to stay in bed. a I amn't feeling b I aren't feeling c I'm not feeling
- 2 A: the guitar? B: Yes, he is. a Is Diego playing b Diego is playing c Is playing Diego
- 3 Everyone at the party a are danceing b dancing c is dancing
- 4 A: Is Bianca wearing a yellow dress? B: Yes, a she wears b she are c she is
- 5 Mark to Monica. a isn't listening b not listening c don't listen

6

Present continuous and present simple

I'm walking – I don't have a car.



Underline the correct option: Paris is a *bad* / *good* place for cars.

Answer: bad

Present continuous and present simple

- Use the present simple to talk or ask about things that are always or usually true.
*Do you **speak** English?*
*We **don't have** a car.*
- Use the present simple to talk or ask about regular or repeated events and habits.
*Sandra **phones** her mother every day.*
*Do you **drink** coffee in the morning?*
- We often use the present simple with adverbs of frequency (*always, never, sometimes, etc.*).
*It never **snows** here in summer.*
*I sometimes **dream** about you.*
- Use the present continuous to describe an activity in progress now / around now, or an unfinished activity.
*Are you **reading** this page. (= now)*
*They **are building** a shopping centre. (= it is not finished yet)*
- We rarely use the present continuous for verbs which are about states, not actions, e.g. *believe, know, like, love, need, seem, understand, want*. See Unit 39.
*I **know** English. NOT ~~I'm knowing~~...*
*Do you **need** a pen? NOT ~~Are you needing~~...*

present simple	present continuous
He usually walks to work.	He's walking to work today.
It doesn't rain on the moon.	It isn't raining at the moment.
Do you ever read comics ?	She's reading a comic now.
I have two brothers.	I'm having a shower.
Charles plays the piano.	Charles isn't at home. He's playing in a concert.
A: What do you do ?	A: What are you doing ?
B: I'm a taxi driver.	B: I'm driving to the airport.

TIP

The present simple is much more common than the present continuous, and in most cases you should use the present simple.

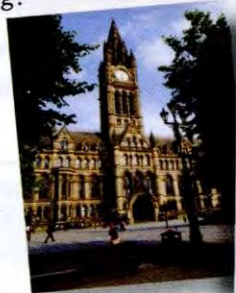
*I **think** it's nice. NOT ~~I'm thinking~~...*
*She is Turkish and **she comes** from Istanbul.*
NOT ... ~~she's coming~~...

- See Units 3 and 5 for more information on the present simple and present continuous.

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- They play / are playing rugby twice a week.
- Are you having / Do you have breakfast every morning?
- It snows / is snowing so we can't go skiing.
- Your guide speaks / is speaking three languages.
- We don't know / aren't knowing the way.
- The DJ plays / is playing my favourite song.
- Do you like / Are you liking the food?
- I'm not laughing / don't laugh, I'm crying / cry.



B Match the pairs.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1 She speaks French well | a because the tourist doesn't know Italian. |
| 2 She is speaking French | b because her mother is from Paris. |
| 3 It rains a lot | a in Mozambique. |
| 4 It's raining a lot | b and I'm wet. |
| 5 She always has lunch | a – please phone later. |
| 6 She's having lunch | b at school. |
| 7 A: Do you buy computer games? | a B: Yes, I'm in the shop. |
| | b B: No, I download them from the Internet. |
| 8 A: Are you buying a computer game? | |
| 9 I don't work. | a It's Sunday. |
| 10 I'm not working. | b I'm a student. |
| 11 A: What is she doing? | a B: She's reading. |
| 12 A: What does she do? | b B: She's a student. |

C Complete the dialogues using the verbs in the box in the present simple or present continuous. Some are negatives or questions.

agree carry know need rain understand wait wear

- A: I don't understand these instructions.
B: Why not? They look clear to me.
- A: London is a very expensive city.
B: Yes, I am with you.
- A: Do you need you any help?
B: No, I'm OK, thanks.
- A: She is wearing a coat.
B: That's strange – it's very cold today.
- A: They are carrying a piano up the stairs.
B: Help them – it's very heavy.
- A: Where is the History Museum?
B: Sorry, I don't know.
- A: Is Terry waiting for me?
B: Yes – you're late.
- A: It's a lovely day for a picnic.
B: We're lucky that it is raining.

D Complete this postcard with the present simple or present continuous of the verbs in brackets.

Hi, Rita,
I ¹ am having (have) a lovely time in Manchester. The weather is nice and warm today, the sun ² is shining (shine) and everyone ³ is wearing (wear) T-shirts. Our teacher is great. He ⁴ comes (come) from Manchester too but he ⁵ doesn't speak (not speak) English with an accent. We ⁶ study (study) three hours in the morning and ⁷ go (go) on excursions in the afternoon. Now I ⁸ am sitting (sit) in a café on King Street. I ⁹ don't think (not think) a king really ¹⁰ lives (live) here! How are you? ¹¹ are you working (work) this summer? Write soon.
Love, Julio

MY TURN!

You are on holiday. In your notebook, write a text message to your friend. Describe what you are doing and what you are wearing. Tell your friend what you do every day and what you like / don't like.

Example: I'm lying by the pool. I swim every day.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The tourist is looking for the Eiffel Tower.
a is looking b look c are looking
- He has a map, but he isn't understanding it.
a isn't understanding b doesn't understand c isn't understand
- A: Are you having a car? B: Yes, but I never drive in Paris.
a Are you have b Do you have c Are you having
- When we are in Paris, we always are going by metro.
a are go b are going c go
- It is often sunny in Paris, but today it is raining.
a are rain b is raining c rains

My Test! answers: 1a 2b 3b 4c 5b

7

Imperatives

Stay calm!

People in California in the United States are always prepared for a large earthquake. The information below is for US teenagers.

Inside

Stay inside.

Sit under a table or stand against a wall.

Don't stand near doors or windows.

Never take an elevator.

Stay calm!



Outside

Always stay where you are. Don't run inside.

Find a clear place away from buildings and trees.

Lie down on the ground until the earthquake stops.



In a car

Slow down and stop the car in a clear place.

Don't stop on a bridge.

Stay inside the car until the earthquake stops.



An earthquake in California

? Underline the correct option:
A large earthquake is *possible* / *not possible* in California.

Answer: possible

Imperatives

1 Use imperatives for:

– instructions

Answer the questions.

– advice

Stay inside the car.

– orders

Be quiet!

– invitations

Come in and have a coffee.

– requests

Please put your bag over there.

TIP

Requests with imperatives often sound not very polite to English speakers, even if you add 'please'. It's better to use other structures, e.g:

Could you put your bag over there?

Would you mind putting your bag over there?

► See Unit 21 for the use of *can* and *could* for requests.

2 Use the infinitive without *to* for imperatives. There is usually no subject.

Lie down on the ground. NOT ~~You lie down on the ground.~~

3 Make negatives by adding *don't* (*do not*) in front.

Don't / Do not stand near windows.

4 Always and never can be used at the beginning of the imperative phrase.

Never take an elevator.

Always stay where you are.

A What do you do if there is a fire in the home?

Underline the correct option.

- 1 Panic! / Don't panic!
- 2 Leave / Don't leave the house quickly.
- 3 Take time / Don't take time to collect your things.
- 4 Close / Don't close all doors behind you.
- 5 If a door is hot, open / don't open it. Go to the window.
- 6 Go back / Don't go back inside.
- 7 Phone / Don't phone the fire fighters.

B Complete the dialogues with the imperative or negative imperative forms of the verbs in the box.

forget go shopping have pick up put take
turn left ~~turn down~~ worry

- 1 A: Turn that music down!
B: I can't hear you. The music's too loud!
- 2 A: It's my exam today.
B: It'll be OK.
- 3 A: I feel really bored. What can I do?
B: ! That's what I do when I'm bored!
- 4 A: Please your feet on the seat.
B: Sorry.
- 5 A: These cakes are lovely.
B: two!
- 6 A: I'm ready to go now.
B: a great holiday!
..... to send a postcard.
- 7 A: Look at that snake! Can I take it home?
B: No! Never a snake!
- 8 A: This is the road. now!
B: What did you say?

C You are visiting a friend this weekend. Complete your friend's advice with an appropriate verb in the imperative or negative imperative.

- 1 Go to bed early tonight.
- 2 late. The train always leaves on time.
- 3 The station is always busy. your ticket before you come.
- 4 a sandwich on the train – they're very expensive.
- 5 The train arrives at platform 2. down the stairs and out of the main entrance.
- 6 left and to the car park.
- 7 in the car park. I'll meet you there.

MY TURN!

You work in a tourist information office in your town. Give some advice to tourists. Write three imperative sentences and three negative imperative sentences in your notebook.

Examples:

Bring a big coat.
Don't drive into the centre.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 ! It's 8 o'clock and you're late. a You get up b Gets up c Get up
- 2 A: Can I go to a party tonight, Mum? B: OK, but please noisy when you come home.
a you aren't b be not c don't be
- 3 across the road. a Don't never run b Never run c Don't running
- 4 A: Excuse me? Where is the toilet? B: up these stairs and turn left. It's there.
a Go b Going c You going
- 5 A: Sorry. I can't help you today. I'm very busy. B: a Don't worry b Don't be worry c Doesn't worry

My Test answers: 1c 2c 3b 4a 5a

Review: present simple and present continuous

A Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb. Be careful with spelling.

- My sister plays (play) tennis every week and always watches (watch) tennis matches on TV.
- Look at that cat! It (run) very fast. I think it (try) to catch that bird.
- My uncle (work) in a factory. He (fix) broken computers.
- The baby (cry) again. She always (cry) when she's hungry.
- Look! Everyone (have) a great time at the party. Some people are (dance), and some (chat).
- Mark usually (study) very hard for exams, but he (not study) tonight. He (make) a model.
- Alice really (not want) her yoga course to end. She (say) it's great.
- Daniel (have) an easy life. He just (relax) all day and (go) to parties at night.

B Underline the correct option.

Chris: Hello?

Sue: Hi Chris. It's Sue. ¹Are / Do you at home?

Chris: No, ²I'm not / I don't. I'm at school. Why?

Sue: ³Are / Do you have my Biology book?

Chris: Your Biology book? I think I have it but ⁴I'm not / I don't remember where. Just a moment ... no, it ⁵isn't / doesn't in my bag.

Sue: ⁶Is / does it on your desk at home?

Chris: Ah, yes. Sorry. ⁷Are / Do you need it?

Sue: Yes, I do. We have a big Biology test tomorrow. ⁸I'm not / I don't understand Biology, so I need to study.

Chris: No, you ⁹aren't / don't. Mrs Williams ¹⁰isn't / doesn't at school this week. She's ill.

Sue: Really?


Chris: Yes. So the test ¹¹isn't / doesn't tomorrow. It's next Thursday. You ¹²aren't / don't need to study tonight.



C Change the statements into negatives and the negatives into statements.

- I'm very good at sports, but I don't like watching sport on TV.
I'm not very good at sports, but I like watching sport on TV.
- My brother plays the guitar, but he isn't very good at singing.
- We are very happy. Our team is winning.
- Ann and Robert like London and they're planning to stay there.
- Lucy is very good at dancing. We enjoy her shows.
- Marcus is playing a computer game at the moment. He plays computer games every night.
- That song is very good. I want to listen to it again.
- Tony doesn't eat hamburgers. He doesn't eat a lot of meat.
- Joanna has a swimming competition next week, so she is practising very hard today.
- I don't go to school by bus – I walk. So I don't have time to read magazines on the way.

D Complete the email with the present simple or the present continuous of the verbs in brackets.



Hi Luis

Thanks for your email. I'm really pleased that you ¹ 're enjoying (enjoy) your English course in the UK.
² (your English / get) better?

We're all fine here – as always. I ³ (not / have) much free time at the moment.
 I ⁴ (practise) hard for the tennis competition – only three weeks to go and I'm really nervous
 about it. I really ⁵ (want) to win the competition this year. Brian ⁶ (think) I'm
 playing well, but I ⁷ (not think) I am.

⁸ (you / remember) my 'baby sister' Maria? Well, can you believe she's 13 now?
 We ⁹ (still / think) of her as a little child, but she's very grown-up now. She
¹⁰ (learn) to play the violin, and she's already quite good. She ¹¹ (play) right
 now, while I ¹² (write) this email.

Right, time to stop writing. I have loads of work to do! See you soon.

Angela

E Cross out all the wrong options.

- Carl work / works very hard most days, but he don't / doesn't work / works at the weekend. He relax / relaxes.
- My cat sleep / sleeps all day and go / goes out all night. She never catch / catches birds – she's too slow.
- A: Do / Does Caroline go / goes to your school?
B: No, she don't / doesn't. She go / goes to a private school in the city.
- Sam and Leo play / plays tennis every week, but Sam never win / wins. Leo always beat / beats him.
- A: Do / Does you know / knows Frances?
B: Maybe. Do / Does she have / has long blonde hair?
A: Yes, she do / does.
- We always visit / visits our grandmother in the winter. She live / lives on a farm.
- It don't / doesn't snow / snows very often here, but sometimes it rain / rains non-stop for weeks. I don't / doesn't like / likes it.
- A: Do / Does Stuart and Paula like / likes dancing?
B: Well, Stuart love / loves dancing, but Paula don't / doesn't enjoy / enjoys it.
- A: Do / Does your computer stop / stops very often?
B: Yes, it do / does. I want / wants to buy a new one.

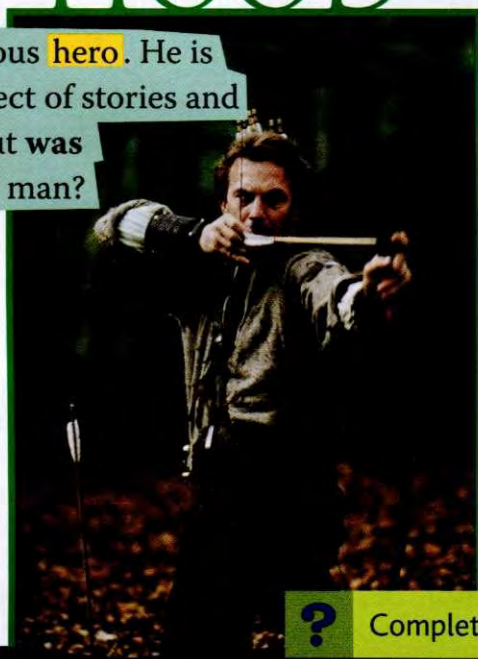
F What do the people say in these situations? Complete the sentences with the imperative or negative imperative of the words in the box.

be late be quiet bring come drink go out look at touch wait wash

- It is lunchtime. What do you say to your young sister?
Wash your hands before you eat.
- Your young sister wants to help with the cooking. What do you say?
..... the pot – it's hot!
- You are sitting in the exam room. Everyone is talking before the exam. What does the teacher say?
Please
- A student is trying to see his friend's answers. What does the teacher say?
..... your friend's work.
- You receive an invitation to a friend's party. What does the invitation say?
..... to my party on Saturday.
- Your friend wants everyone at the party on time. What does the invitation say?
The party starts at 8 – !
- If you enter Australia, there are some things you can't have with you. What does the sign in the airport say?
..... fresh fruit into the country.
- You need to show your passport at the airport. There are a lot of people there. What does the sign say?
Please here.
- You are ill. What does the doctor say?
Stay at home –
- The doctor wants you to have more water. What does he say?
..... three glasses of water every day.

ROBIN HOOD

is a famous **hero**. He is the subject of stories and films. But **was** he a real man?



Who **was** Robin Hood?

Nobody knows. In the film, *Robin Hood: Prince of Thieves*, Robin **was** rich – but this probably **wasn't** true. We know that he **was** a popular hero in the 13th century. It's possible the real man **was born** before then.

Who **were** the Merry Men?

Little John and Will Scarlet **were** famous Merry Men. Robin Hood **was** the leader of this group of men (and women).

Why **were** Robin Hood and his Merry Men famous?

They **were** famous for robbing rich people. But Robin Hood and his Merry Men **weren't** robbers – the money **was** for poor people.



Complete this sentence: There are many about Robin Hood.

Answers: stories and films

Past simple 1: was / were

- 1 **Was** is the past of *am* and *is*.
He **was** the leader.
Was I asleep?
Who **was** Robin Hood?
- 2 **Were** is the past of *are*.
They **were** famous for robbing rich people.
Were you there?
Who **were** the Merry Men?
- 3 Use **wasn't** (*was not*) and **weren't** (*were not*) for the negative.
This **wasn't** true.
They **weren't** robbers.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / He / She / It	was	was not (wasn't)
You / We / They	were	were not (weren't)

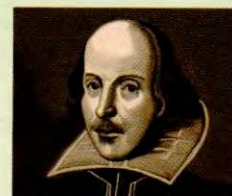
- 4 Make questions and short answers as follows:

question ?	short answer ✓✗
Was I / he / she / it a robber?	Yes, (he) was . No, (he) wasn't .
Were you / we / they famous?	Yes, (they) were . No, (they) weren't .
Who was he?	
Where were you?	

TIP

was / were born

Shakespeare **was born** in 1564
and **died** in 1616.



Practice

A Complete the sentences using *was*, *wasn't*, *were* or *weren't*.

- Chiara and her sister were here a moment ago.
- It was a holiday last week and we were at my uncle's house. My cousins were at home, so it was quiet.
- A: You're here at last! I was worried about you.
B: The train was late.
- A: Was it a good film?
B: No, it wasn't. It was the worst film of the summer!
- A: Was Ben at football practice on Monday?
B: No, he wasn't! And where was you?
- A: Were your parents angry?
B: No, they were.

B Robin Hood's **enemy**, the Sheriff of Nottingham, is asking him some questions.

Complete the questions and the short answers.

- Sheriff: Where ¹ were you born?
Robin: I'm not telling you!
Sheriff: Were you at home yesterday?
Robin: No, I ² wasn't.
Sheriff: Were you with your friends?
Robin: The Merry Men? Yes, I ³ was.
Sheriff: ⁴ Were you in the forest?
Robin: No, we ⁵ were not.
Sheriff: Where ⁶ was yesterday?
Robin: We ⁷ were in your **castle**!
Sheriff: Where's my money?
Robin: I'm not telling you!

C Complete the sentences using *wasn't* or *weren't* and an appropriate adjective from the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

afraid clean friendly hot hungry
in a hurry very big

- The town was pretty but it wasn't very big.
- The restaurant was nice but I wasn't.
- The food was good but the waiters were not.
- The dog was very big, but the children were not.
- The weather was sunny but it wasn't.
- The beach was great but it wasn't.
- The hotel was nice but the rooms were not.
- The shop was busy but we were not.

D Complete the text with *is*, *are*, *was*, *were*, *wasn't* or *weren't*.

Sherwood Forest ¹ was home for Robin Hood and his Merry Men. In the 13th century the forest ² was a safe place for most people, but Robin and his friends ³ were happy there. Their home ⁴ was a camp near a large tree. Today the forest ⁵ is a popular place for tourists to visit, and the tree ⁶ is still there. Some people say that Robin Hood and Maid Marian ⁷ were lovers. In fact, Robin ⁸ was already married! But do you prefer to believe the stories? Then you can still see St Mary's Church where they ⁹ were married. St Mary's Church and Sherwood Forest ¹⁰ are near the city of Nottingham in the centre of England.



MY TURN!

In your notebook, write sentences using *was*, *were*, *wasn't* and *weren't* about a place you have visited.

I we it the town the streets the shops
the weather the people

Example: We visited Bath. The town was beautiful.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

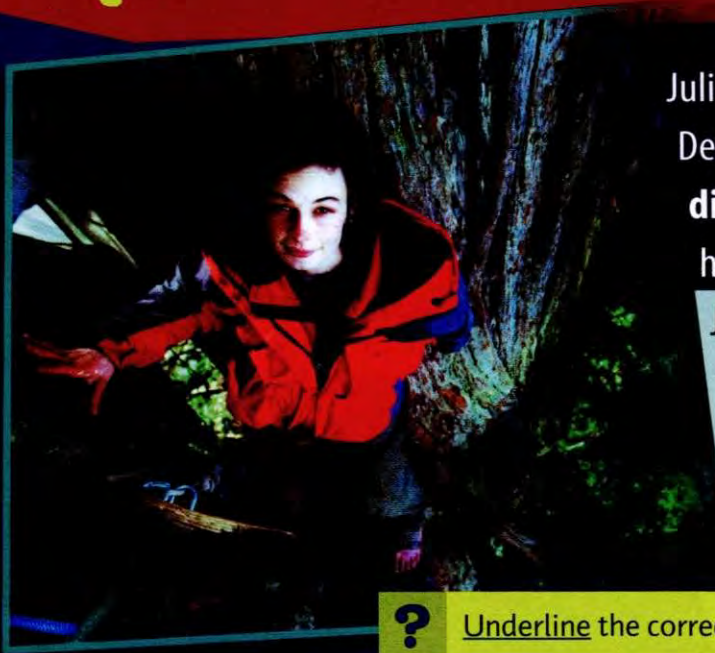
- A: Where was all yesterday evening?
B: At the cinema.
a were you b was you c you were
- The film was very good, but Kevin Costner was excellent.
a wasn't b were not c weren't
- Both Shakespeare and Galileo were in 1564.
a were born b was born c are born
- A: Mum, where was born?
B: In Nottingham.
a I was b were I c was I
- A: Were the Merry Men very rich?
B: No, they weren't.
a they weren't b were not c they wasn't

My Test answers: 1a 2a 3a 4c 5a

9

Past simple 2: regular past forms

She lived in a tree.



Julia Hill **lived** in a tree from December 1997 to December 1999. She **stayed** in the tree because she **didn't want** people to cut it down. Some people **liked** her. Some people **called** her a **criminal**. We **asked** Julia, 'Why **did you decide** to do it?' Julia **replied**, 'It **seemed** the right thing to do. They **didn't need** to cut the tree down. I told them not to do it but they **didn't listen** to me. I **believed** I was right.'



Underline the correct option: Julia *lives* / *doesn't live* in a tree today.

Answer: doesn't live

Past simple 2: regular past forms

- 1 Use the past simple for past actions, states and general truths.

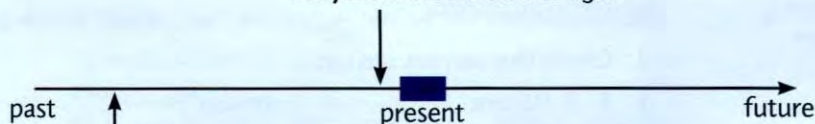
*I **phoned** Julia yesterday.*

*Did you **stay** at the party long last night?*

*Once people **didn't believe** the world was round.*

- 2 The past time could be recent or distant.

*We **finished** one minute ago.*



*The Chinese **invented** paper.*

- 3 Add **-ed** to make the past simple (regular) for all persons. Use *did not* and the infinitive without *to* to make the negative and use *did* to make a question. We usually say and write *didn't* instead of *did not* in informal situations, e.g. an email to a friend.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	started	did not (didn't) start

question ?	short answer ✓✗
Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they start?	Yes, (I) did . No, (I) did not (didn't) .

- 4 Past time expressions, e.g. *yesterday*, *last (night / week / year)*, *(a few minutes / two months / 10 years) ago*, are sometimes used with the past simple.

*She **didn't arrive** yesterday.*

*Did you **clean** the car last weekend?*

*Colombus **discovered** America 500 years ago.*

Spelling

When a verb ends in **-e**, add **-d**.

die → died

love → loved

When a verb ends in a consonant (*b, t, m*, etc.) and **-y**, delete the **-y** and add **-ied**.

copy → copied

try → tried

When a verb ends in a single vowel (*a, e, i, o, u*) and a single consonant, double the last consonant.

stop → stopped

prefer → preferred

► See page 182 for more spelling rules.

Practice

A What was Margaret's life like in 1970 when she was young? Write past simple statements (✓) and negatives (X) using the information below.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----|---------------------------------|
| 1 ✓ work in a shop | 1 | <u>She worked in a shop.</u> |
| 2 X like her job | 2 | <u>She didn't like her job.</u> |
| 3 ✓ live in a flat | 3 | ..... |
| 4 X want a house | 4 | ..... |
| 5 ✓ prefer flats | 5 | ..... |
| 6 X watch TV much | 6 | ..... |
| 7 ✓ enjoy dancing | 7 | ..... |
| 8 ✓ dance the Salsa | 8 | ..... |
| 9 ✓ learn Spanish | 9 | ..... |
| 10 X stay at home much | 10 | ..... |

B Complete the sentences with an appropriate verb in the past simple. Some are negatives or questions.

- I was tired, so I didn't walk to work.
- _____ you w _____ the match last night on TV?
- Yesterday she w _____ all day in the factory.
- The rain s _____, so the tennis started.
- Tony was very quiet. He _____ 't _____ to anyone.
- Last summer we t _____ around Europe by train.
- A: _____ Jane p _____ the test?
B: No, she **failed**.
- I l _____ to the concert as a podcast.
- A: _____ the children f _____ all their breakfast?
B: Yes, they were hungry.
- The party was terrible, I _____ ' _____ l _____ it.

C Complete the text using the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Travis Carter ¹ lived (live) in a fridge for 40 days from December 1998 to February 1999 – a world record. A reporter ² (ask) Travis later, '3 _____ you _____ (celebrate) New Year in the fridge?' Travis ⁴ _____ (reply), 'No. I ⁵ _____ (not know) that it was New Year: my watch ⁶ _____ (not work) because it was so cold!' Two years ago, Travis ⁷ _____ (try) another world record – 60 hours in a freezer. This time he ⁸ _____ (fail). 'The freezer was just too cold. I ⁹ _____ (not like) it,' Travis said. 'I ¹⁰ _____ (prefer) the fridge.'



MY TURN!

A hundred British teenagers answered a questionnaire about technology. Change their answers into past simple sentences. Some are negative.

Question	Answer
Did you watch a DVD last Saturday night?	87 yes 13 no
Did you use the Internet yesterday?	70 yes 30 no
Did you download a song last week?	19 yes 81 no
Did you play a computer game yesterday?	35 yes 65 no
Did you email a friend last week?	58 yes 42 no
Did you like computers five years ago?	90 yes 10 no

- 87 teenagers watched a DVD last Saturday night.
- 13 teenagers didn't watch a DVD last Saturday night.
- 30 teenagers
- 19 teenagers
- 35 teenagers
- 58 teenagers
- 10 teenagers

Now answer the questionnaire in your notebook.

- I didn't watch a DVD last Saturday night. /
I watched a DVD last Saturday night.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- She _____ in the tree for 737 days.
a stayed b was stayed c is stayed
- She _____ when she finished her **protest**.
a cried b cried c cry
- _____ to journalists?
a Did she talked b Talked she c Did she talk
- A: Did she save the tree? B: Yes, she
a saved b save c did
- A: Julia, was it boring?
B: Yes, it was. I _____ TV for two years.
a didn't watched b don't watched c didn't watch

My Test! answers: 1a 2b 3c 4c 5c

10

Past simple 3: irregular past forms

They spoke Celtic languages.



Where did English come from?

Old English	he on þa duru eode
Modern English	he went to the door

The **ancient Britons** spoke Celtic languages like Welsh. The Romans **made** Britain a **colony** in 43 AD but Latin **didn't** become the language of the common people. Not many of the ancient Britons **knew** Latin and they **didn't** feel happy with a new language.

In the 5th century AD, the Romans **left** Britain because they **had** problems at home. The Angles, Saxons and Jutes then **went** to England from Denmark and Germany. They **brought** their own Germanic languages. These languages became Old English. The story of English **began**.



True or False? English is a Latin language.

Answer: false

Past simple 3: irregular past forms

- 1 Many past simple verbs do not end in **-ed**. They have irregular forms. For negative and question forms, use **did** and the infinitive without **to**.

The Romans **made** Britain a colony.

They **didn't** feel happy.

Did they **speak** Latin?

statement ✓	negative ✗
You sang .	You did not (didn't) sing.
She told her brother.	She did not (didn't) tell her brother.
The army went home.	The army did not (didn't) go home.

question ?	short answer ✓ ✗
Did I / you / he / she / it / we / they sing?	Yes, (I) did . No, (I) did not (didn't) .

present	past
be	was / were
become	became
begin	began
bring	brought
buy	bought
come	came
do	did
eat	ate
get	got
give	gave
go	went
have	had
hear	heard

present	past
know	knew
leave	left
make	made
mean	meant
pay	paid
put	put
say	said
see	saw
speak	spoke
take	took
tell	told
think	thought

► See page 181 for a list of irregular verbs.

Practice

A Circle the 12 past simple forms in the wordsearch puzzle, then write their infinitive-without-to forms.

h	e	a	r	d	t	y	r	t	u
i	o	p	a	w	s	q	d	o	k
s	a	w	t	s	f	g	h	o	n
j	k	l	h	x	b	r	o	k	e
z	s	p	o	k	e	w	e	c	w
l	m	b	u	s	f	u	d	n	j
m	e	e	g	d	a	y	g	m	l
g	a	f	h	i	e	m	a	d	e
o	n	h	t	k	c	g	k	l	f
t	t	j	k	c	a	m	e	i	t

- 1 come
- 2 _____
- 3 _____
- 4 _____
- 5 _____
- 6 _____
- 7 _____
- 8 _____
- 9 _____
- 10 _____
- 11 _____
- 12 _____

B The most famous poem in Old English is *Beowulf*. Complete the text using the correct past simple form of the verbs in brackets.

Beowulf¹ was (be) a great fighter 1,000 years ago. He² won (win) many **battles** against **monsters** and dragons. Grendel was a terrible monster from Denmark. He³ had (have) big teeth and he was very strong. Grendel⁴ didn't sleep (not sleep) and⁵ didn't eat (not eat). He⁶ drank (drink) blood. King Hrothgar of Denmark⁷ paid (pay) Beowulf to kill Grendel. Beowulf⁸ went (go) to Denmark,⁹ fought (fight) the monster and killed it. King Hrothgar¹⁰ gave (give) Beowulf a lot of money. Beowulf¹¹ left (leave) Denmark and¹² didn't come (not come) back. He¹³ became (become) a King. Finally, Beowulf died because a dragon killed him.

C Read the notes about a typical teenager's day in 1000 AD. Write full sentences in the past simple. Some are statements (✓) and some are negatives (X).

A teenager in 1000 AD

- ✓ get up: 5.30
- ✓ breakfast (bread and water)
- X go to school ✓ go to work
- ✓ work begin: 6.30
- ✓ lunch (meat)
- ✓ get home: 5.00
- ✓ make clothes: evening
- ✓ before bed: tell story to sister
- X sleep in a bed ✓ sleep on the floor



She got up at 5.30 and _____

MY TURN!

What did you do yesterday? Answer the questions in your notebook using past simple short answers and sentences. Then write three more questions and answer them in the same way.

- 1 Did you get up early?
No, I didn't. I got up at 10 o'clock.
- 2 Did you speak English?
Yes, I did. I said 'Hello' to my English teacher.
- 3 Did you buy anything?
- 4 Did you go anywhere in the evening?
- 5 Did you forget anything?
- 6 Did you see any friends?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 A: Did they feel happy? B: No, they _____ very angry. a feled b fell c felt
- 2 Where _____ from? a did the Saxons come b the Saxons came c did the Saxons came
- 3 A: Did Beowulf speak Old English? B: Yes, he _____. a did b spoke c does
- 4 The Ancient Britons _____ pens and pencils. a hadn't b didn't have c didn't had
- 5 Beowulf _____ sorry to the King. a sayed b said c saw

11

Past continuous

Everyone was talking about the alligators.

Urban legends are stories about strange things that happen in everyday life. But they are probably not true.

Or are they?

Years ago in Florida and Georgia, you could buy baby alligators. But they are difficult **pets**, so people set them free.

Where did these alligators go?

While we **were studying** English, my wife and I **were living** in New York. At that time everyone **was talking** about the alligators in the sewers.

A friend told me that one day a man **was working** in the sewers. It was five o'clock and he **was just finishing** for the day. His friends **were waiting** for him in the street. They heard a **scream**. When they pulled the man out of the sewer, he was scared and he **was shaking**. There was an alligator in the sewer!



What do you think? Is this story true?

Past continuous

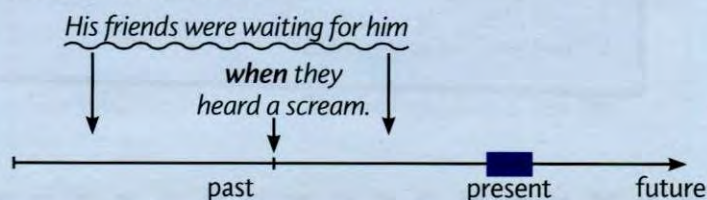
- 1 Use the past continuous to talk about events which were in progress at a particular time in the past.

*At that time everyone **was talking** about the alligators in the sewers.*

- 2 Use the past continuous to set the background to a story – to talk about what was going on when an event happened. The main events are usually in the past simple.

*His friends **were waiting** for him in the street. They heard a scream.*

- 3 Use *when* or *while* to link past simple and past continuous. We can use *when* before the past simple or the past continuous.



When his friends were waiting for him, they heard a scream.

We can also use *while* before the past continuous.

While his friends were waiting for him, they heard a scream.

- 4 Use *while* with the past continuous in both parts of a sentence to talk about two situations going on at the same time.

*While we **were studying** English, my wife and I **were living** in New York.*

TIP

When *when* and *while* come at the beginning of a sentence, put a comma in the middle of the sentence.

While I was falling, I closed my eyes.

- 5 Use the past continuous to give the reason for a past event.

*I forgot about the bath because I **was talking** on the telephone.*

*She **shouted** at me because I **was driving** fast.*

- 6 Make the past continuous using the verb *was / were* + verb + *-ing* form.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
You / We / They	were working	were not (weren't) working
I / He / She / It	was working	was not (wasn't) working

question ?	short answer ✓ ✗
Were you / we / they working?	Yes, (you) were . No, (you) weren't .
Was I / he / she / it working?	Yes, (I) was . No, (I) wasn't .

► See page 182 for spelling rules.

Practice

- A What was Grace doing this time last week? Look at the picture and complete the sentences with the correct past continuous forms of the verbs in the box.

drink feel read shine sit wear

'Can you believe it? This time last week I was on holiday ...



- 1 I was sitting in a café. 2 The sun
3 I my sunglasses. 4 I my book.
5 I lemonade. 6 I relaxed.'

- B Write full sentences using the words in the same order. Change the verbs to the past continuous or past simple. One or both verbs should be in the past continuous.

- 1 He / sit / in the kitchen / when / the fire / start
He was sitting in the kitchen when the fire started.
2 It / get late / and / the man / work / quickly.
.....
3 The pencil / break / while / I / writing down / her phone number.
.....
4 It / snow / but we / not wear / warm clothes.
.....
5 A cat / run / in front of the car / when / I / drive / home.
.....
6 The lights / change / while / she / still cross / the road.
.....
7 You / still sleep / when / I / get up.
.....
8 They / not build / the stadium / when / I / live / in the city.
.....

- C Complete this urban legend. Use past continuous or past simple forms of the verbs in brackets.

A TV team in Alaska ¹ was making (make) a film about the life of salmon. They ² (catch) a salmon in the sea and very carefully ³ (put) a radio transmitter on it. The radio transmitter ⁴ (send) messages to the TV team. They ⁵ (follow) the salmon's journey for two months. One day the cameramen ⁶ (camp) at the side of the river and they ⁷ (follow) the salmon as usual. Suddenly the fish ⁸ (leave) the river and ⁹ (go) through a forest. The team ¹⁰ (take) their cameras and followed. In the forest a group of boys ¹¹ (camp). When the TV team ¹² (find) the boys, they ¹³ (sit) around a fire. They ¹⁴ (cook) the salmon on the fire.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, copy and complete the replies with your own ideas using the past continuous.

- 1 A: Did you hear the phone?
B: No, I was listening to music.
2 A: Someone just knocked at the door.
B: Who was it?
A: I don't know
3 A: What was the weather like when you left home?
B: Terrible!
4 A: Did you catch a cold yesterday?
B: Yes, I did
5 A: Were you at school on Monday?
B: No, I wasn't
6 A: Did you hear me?
B: No, sorry,

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 He was working in the sewer he saw the alligator. a then b when c while
2 They television when they saw a cow in their garden. a are watching b watching c were watching
3 I was wearing sunglasses because the sun very brightly. a was shining b is shining c shone
4 A: raining when you arrived? B: No. It was very sunny. a Was it b It was c It is
5 A: Were you wearing a **helmet** when you fell off your bike? B: a No, I weren't b No, I wasn't c No, I'm not

My Test answers: 1b 2c 3a 4a 5b

A Complete the story by matching the phrases in the box to the correct places.

- a while it was running
- b and showing me his photos while we were eating
- c when John was speaking
- d because we were hungry
- e it ran away
- f when it happened

- 1 I was visiting my friend John in Australia ¹
- 2 We were having dinner early ²
- 3 He was telling me about his family ³
- 4 Suddenly, a kangaroo jumped through the window ⁴
- 5 While we were thinking what to do next, ⁵
- 6 He took a photo of the kangaroo ⁶

B Match each picture to the correct sentence.



- 1 She was running when she saw him. ☐ a
- 2 She ran when she saw him. ☐ b



- 5 We talked about it when we got home. ☐
- 6 We talked about it while we were going home. ☐



C Underline the correct option. Sometimes more than one option is possible.

- 1 I was having / had a shower when my friend called.
- 2 While Sally was walking / walked to the station, she met Harry.
- 3 Tom went to bed and was saying / said, 'Goodnight.'
- 4 Did you get angry when she finally was telling / told you?
- 5 We danced while the music was playing / played.
- 6 I was meeting / met David many years ago.
- 7 Were the Romans using / Did the Romans use paper?
- 8 When she wasn't watching / didn't watch, I took another biscuit.



- 3 We went home while it was raining. ☐
- 4 When it started raining, we went home. ☐



- 7 When he finished his lunch, Dad read the paper. ☐
- 8 Dad read the paper while he was finishing his lunch. ☐



D Complete these stories using the correct past simple or past continuous forms of the verbs in brackets.



The clock ¹ broke (break) while the children
² (play) football in the house.
 The clock ³ (fall) when the ball
⁴ (hit) it. The accident ⁵ (happen) while their parents ⁶ (come) home.



Jill ⁷ (drink) her coffee when she
⁸ (hear) her phone. It was her mother. While
 they ⁹ (speak), a man ¹⁰ (run)
 to the table and ¹¹ (give) Jill some flowers.

E Circle the correct option.

Police officer: What ¹ when you saw the elephant?
 Driver: I ² through the park.
 Police officer: ³ quickly?
 Driver: No, I ⁴ fast because there were a lot of
 animals. My wife ⁵ out of the window
 and watching some lions. She ⁶ to take
 some photos of them but while she ⁷
 the camera out of her bag, an elephant ran
 at the car!
 Police officer: Why ⁸ away while the elephant ⁹ ?
 Driver: The elephant was very fast. I only ¹⁰ the
 elephant when it hit our car.

- 1 a do you do b was you doing **c were you doing**
- 2 a was driving b drove c were driving
- 3 a Did you go b Were you going c Was you going
- 4 a wasn't driving b weren't driving c didn't drive
- 5 a was looking b were looking c looked
- 6 a were wanting b was wanting c wanted
- 7 a got b was getting c were getting
- 8 a didn't you drive b wasn't you driving
c weren't you driving
- 9 a ran b was running c were running
- 10 a were seeing b was seeing c saw

F Make sentences from the words and write them in your notebook. Put one verb in the past simple and one verb in the past continuous.

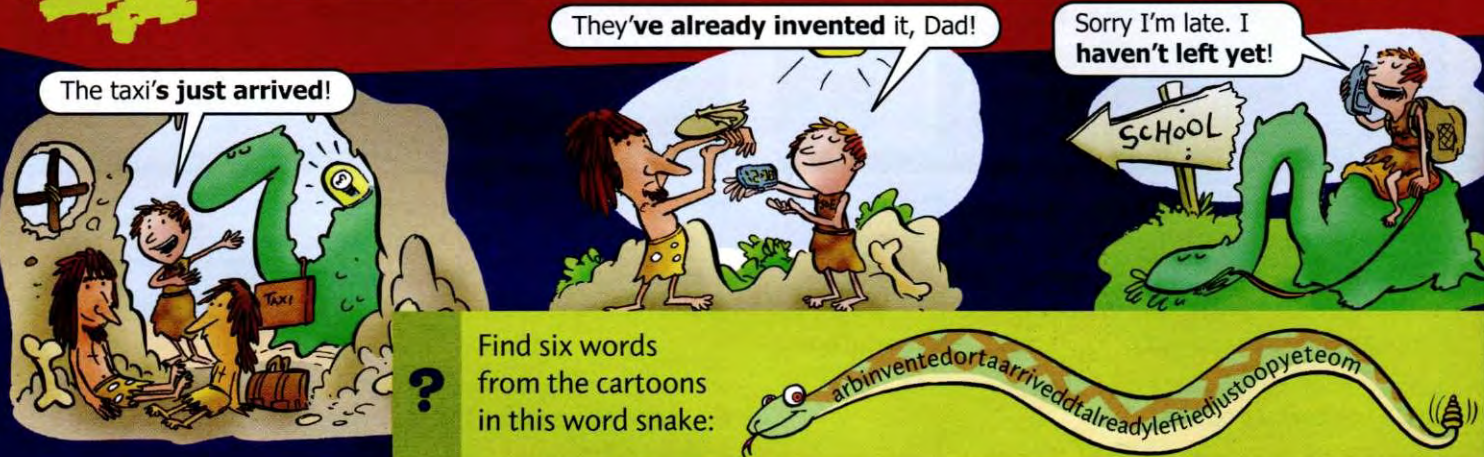
- 1 I / shop / when / meet / her
I was shopping when I met her.
- 2 While / we / eat / breakfast / the letter / arrive
- 3 Sarah / not go / because / she / not feel / very well
- 4 As / I / fall / my parachute / suddenly / open
- 5 you / have / a shower / when / I / phone?
- 6 Gavin / break / his arm / while / he / do / judo

G Make excuses for the following situations using the past continuous (and past simple, if you want). The excuses can be funny!

- 1 Why are you late for school?
I was taking my pet kangaroo for a walk and it ran away.
- 2 Why are your shoes dirty?
- 3 Why did you eat all the chocolates?
- 4 Why didn't you do your homework?
- 5 Why are you sleeping in class?
- 6 Why didn't you answer the telephone?

H Circle the correct option.

- 1 We went to the cinema last night and a film.
It was excellent.
a watching **b watched** c were watching
- 2 She didn't understand the game. While I the
instructions, she was writing a text.
a was explaining b am explaining c explained
- 3 The man took her bag and away with it. We
never saw him again.
a run b ran c was running
- 4 She hurt her head when she fell off her bike. She
..... a helmet.
a not wearing b didn't wear c wasn't wearing
- 5 A: What when you heard the noise?
B: I ran outside to help.
a did you do b were you doing c you were doing
- 6 Were you playing hockey when you broke your nose?
B: Yes, I
a did b were c was



?

Find six words
from the cartoons
in this word snake:



Answers: invented, arrived, already, left, just, yet

Present perfect 1

- 1 Use the present perfect for a past event which the speaker feels is connected with the present.

The taxi's arrived. (The taxi is here now.)

- 2 We often use the present perfect to talk about a recent event. Use the adverb *just* to emphasise that the event is recent.

The taxi's just arrived.

- 3 We can use the present perfect with *already* and *yet*. *Already* and *yet* mean 'before now'. We use *yet* in questions and negatives. *Already* comes after *has* / *have* and before the main verb. *Yet* comes at the end of the sentence or question.

They've already invented it.

I haven't left yet.

Have the boys arrived yet?

- 4 *Still* with the present perfect negative stresses that the situation is continuing now.

I still haven't left home.

- 5 Make the present perfect using the verb *have* + past participle.

I've just seen her.

I haven't visited the museum yet.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / We / They	have ('ve) visited	have not (haven't) visited
He / She / It	has ('s) visited	has not (hasn't) visited

question ?			short answer ✓ ✗
Have	I / you / we / they	visited ...?	Yes, (I) have. No, (I) haven't.
Has	he / she / it	visited ...?	Yes, (he) it has. No, (he) hasn't.

- 6 Add *-ed* to form the past participle of regular verbs, e.g. *visited*, *arrived*, *tried*. (These are the same as the past simple verb forms.)

► See page 182 for spelling rules.

TIP

's = *is* and *has*

he's visited = *he has visited*

he's cold = *he is cold*

However, there are many irregular forms.

be → *been*

go → *gone*

see → *seen*

break → *broken*

give → *given*

speak → *spoken*

come → *come*

steal → *stolen*

wake up → *woken up*

do → *done*

TIP

Some irregular past participles are the same as the past simple form.

find → *found* → *found*

read → *read* → *read*

have → *had* → *had*

say → *said* → *said*

leave → *left* → *left*

spend → *spent* → *spent*

lose → *lost* → *lost*

tell → *told* → *told*

make → *made* → *made*

win → *won* → *won*

Practice

A Match the pairs of sentences.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 She can't do sports. | a She's lost her bag. |
| 2 He's still not feeling well. | b He's just had flu. |
| 3 She's crying. | c She's broken her arm. |
| 4 I'm very happy. | d I haven't had a shower yet. |
| 5 The car won't start. | e I've spent it on CDs. |
| 6 I have no money. | f I haven't left yet. |
| 7 You're looking worried. | g The taxi has just arrived. |
| 8 We can go now. | h My football team has just won. |
| 9 I'm not ready to go. | i What has happened? |

B Complete the sentences using the words in brackets in the correct form and position.

- He can't find his keys. I think he's lost them. (lose)
- Haven't you done your homework yet?
I it. (finish / already)
- It's midnight and she home yet. (not / come)
- lunch yet? (you / have?)
- This is terrible. Someone my bike. (steal)
- We a really cheap car! (just / buy)
- Take your boots off before you come in. I the carpets. (just / clean)
- the doctor yet? (you / phone?)
- They the film. (see / already)

C It's Sunday night and Dad is asking Joe whether he is ready for school in the morning. Write Dad's questions and Joe's replies in your notebook

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 pack school bag [✓] | 2 tidy your <u>cave</u> [X] |
| 3 do your science homework [✓] | 4 have a bath [X] |
| 5 wash the dinosaur [X] | 6 make your sandwiches [✓] |
| 7 buy the dinosaur food [X] | |

1 D: Have you packed your school bag yet? J: Yes, I have.

What four things hasn't Joe done yet? Write sentences.

Example: He hasn't tidied his cave yet.

D Write reasons for each of these situations. Use the words in brackets and the correct form of the verb.

- I don't have my glasses.
I still haven't found them. (find / still)
- He's still asleep.
..... (wake up / yet)
- The book looks very new.
..... (I / read / still)
- She isn't here any more.
..... (go / just)
- I don't have my old phone any more.
..... (give it to my dad)
- She doesn't know.
..... (they / tell her / still)
- I still haven't received the letter.
..... (postman / come / yet)
- There's no more milk.
..... (I / finish / just)

MY TURN!

Imagine it's Sunday evening. In your notebook, write three things you have done and three things you haven't done.

Example: I've cleaned my bike.



MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

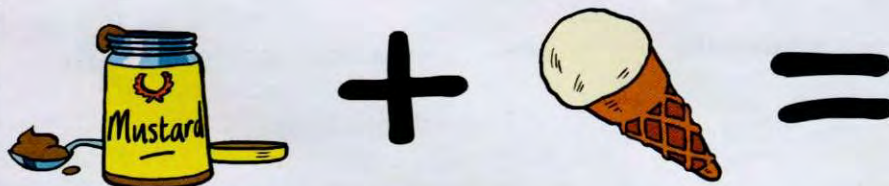
- The taxi hasn't arrived a already b just c yet
- He's his new watch. a broke b broke c broken
- He left home four hours ago and he to say he's arrived. a still hasn't phoned b haven't phoned yet c hasn't just phoned
- yet? a Have you eaten your vegetables b You have eaten your vegetables c Have you your vegetables eaten
- A: Is Alex there? B: Oh sorry. He's a gone already home b just gone home c gone home yet

13

Present perfect 2

Have you ever tried mustard ice cream?

Ingredients food magazine



Have you **ever** tried **mustard** ice cream?

Or chocolate on your vegetables? These are just some of the things you can eat at The Fat Duck restaurant near London. Some people **have called** The Fat Duck the best restaurant in the world. The chef, Heston Blumenthal, **has become** famous and **has been** on many TV shows.

John Willoughby of the New York magazine *Gourmet* says that The Fat Duck is possibly 'the most fun restaurant I've **ever eaten** in' But what do you think?

"I've **never had** mustard ice cream and I don't want to.
Just give me strawberry!"
– John, a shop **assistant**

"I **haven't visited** the restaurant. It's too
expensive for me!"
– Chris, a nurse



Underline the answer which is **not** true: The Fat Duck restaurant is *famous / cheap / fun*.

Present perfect 2

- 1 Use the present perfect when you do not know exactly when the past event took place, or it is not important.

*He **has been** on many TV shows.*

*He **has become** famous.*

- 2 We often use the present perfect with *ever*, *never* and *before*. *Never* and *ever* come after *has / have* and before the main verb. *Before* comes at the end of the sentence.

*Have you **ever** tried mustard ice cream?*

*It was the most fun restaurant I've **ever** eaten in.*

*I've **never** had chocolate on my vegetables.*

*I haven't been to the restaurant **before**.*

► See Unit 12 for the forms of the present perfect.

TIP

gone or been?

*My brother **has gone** to Croatia.*

(= My brother is travelling to Croatia or is there now.)

*My brother **has been** to Croatia.*

(= My brother went to Croatia but he is back home now.)

Practice

A Answer the questions with present perfect short answers.

- Have you ever tried **raw** fish?
No, I haven't.
- Have you ever used **chopsticks**?
- Have you ever seen a banana tree?
- Have you ever put sugar in a sandwich?
- Have you ever made ice cream?
- Have you ever eaten chips with sugar?
- Have you ever drunk coconut milk?
- Have you ever cooked a meal for your family?

B Which of these things have you done or not done?
Complete the sentences using the present perfect of the verbs in brackets.

- I haven't won* a competition. (win)
- to Cuba. (be)
- a book in one day. (read)
- rugby. (play)
- an elephant. (see)
- a famous person. (meet)
- a leg. (break)
- in a restaurant. (work)
- ten kilometres. (run)

Do you know people who have done these things?
Write true sentences about people you know.

Example: *My brother has met a famous person.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- My sister sushi three or four times, but she doesn't like it. a tries b has tried c is tried
- I've tried most things, but an insect. a I've ever eaten b I haven't never eaten c I've never eaten
- A: on TV? B: Yes, he has. a Has Heston ever been b Has Heston been ever c Heston ever has been
- It's our favourite restaurant. there many times. a We's been b We've gone c We've been
- A: Have you ever been to The Fat Duck? B: a Yes, we've b Yes, we been c No, we haven't

C Complete the sentences using the present perfect of the verbs in the box.

break ever forget go ever have not meet
not play see not speak never spend write

- I've broken* my nose before.
- He plays the guitar but he in a band before.
- They Christmas away from home.
- We our new neighbours.
- My friends aren't here now, they home.
- My sister an article for the local newspaper.
- I to my parents about my exam results.
- your teacher to give you homework?
- We the new James Bond film.
- She's the best friend I

D Complete the sentences with *gone* or *been*.

- My grandparents have *gone* to Australia. They'll arrive tomorrow – the journey takes 22 hours.
- They've visited the UK, but they haven't to Scotland.
- My family loves travelling. We've to 10 different countries together.
- They've out and left the lights on.
- A: Where have you?
B: To post a letter.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write three interesting things you have done in the past.

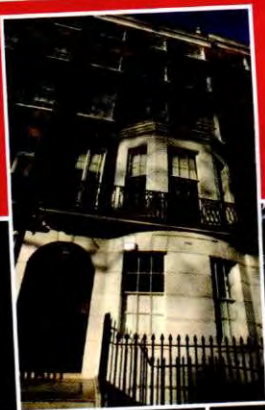
Example: *I've been to Australia.*

Now write three questions to ask a friend using *Have you (ever) ...?*

Example: *Have you ever been to Australia?*

Write about your friend.

Example: *Betty has never been to Australia.*



THE RICH AND FAMOUS IN LONDON

The rich and famous **have lived** in Marylebone for centuries. Past **residents** include Charles Dickens and the Beatles. Ringo Starr **rented** an apartment at 34 Montagu Square in Marylebone. Jimi Hendrix also lived there. There **hasn't been** a famous resident at 34 Montagu Square **since** the 1960s, but tourists still go to see the building.

Marylebone has been Madonna's favourite place in London for a few years now. The star owns four houses in the same street!



Complete the sentence: Marylebone is a place in

Answer: London

Present perfect 3

- 1 Use the present perfect for a situation which started in the past and continues now.

Marylebone **has been** Madonna's favourite place in London for a few years now.

past present future

- 2 We can use **for** and **since** with the present perfect.

The rich and famous **have lived** in Marylebone **for** centuries.

There **hasn't been** a famous resident **since** the 1960s.

- 3 Use **How long ...?** to ask for how much time a situation has continued.

How long has she lived in London?

She has lived in London **for** a few years.

- 4 We can use **always** with the present perfect.

I've **always** wanted to live in the city. (= for all the time I can remember)

- 5 Use the present perfect + **for** to emphasise how long a situation has been going on, e.g. **for an hour, for a few days, for a week, for six months, for ages** (= for a long time).

They have lived there **for** centuries.

- 6 Use the present perfect + **since** to emphasise when a situation began, e.g. **since 12 o'clock, since Monday, since January, since last year, since the 1960s, since she got married.**

The couple have been married **since** last year.

There hasn't been a famous resident **since** the 1960s.

TIP

Use the present perfect, not the present, with **since** and **for**.

She has lived here for a few years.

NOT ~~She lives here for a few years.~~

- ▶ See Units 12 and 13 for other uses of the present perfect.
- ▶ See Unit 12 for the forms of the present perfect.

Practice

A Complete each time expression with *for* or *since*.

- 1 for a long time.
- 2 two weeks.
- 3 2003.
- 4 last year.
- 5 three years.
- 6 only a day!
- 7 Christmas.
- 8 I was 12.

Now answer the question.

How long have you lived in your house?

I've lived in my house

B Complete the sentences with the present perfect of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms where possible.

- 1 They 've always wanted to visit New York. (always want)
- 2 We my cousins since the beginning of last year. They are always very busy. (not see)
- 3 It a really good summer. I don't want it to end. (be)
- 4 They in the same house all their lives. (live)
- 5 My sister and I share a bedroom. We our own rooms. (never have)
- 6 How long you your mountain bike? (have)
- 7 He his home town. (always love)
- 8 How long she ill? (be)
- 9 He in the same bank for years. (work)
- 10 I he was the best. (always think)

C Ask questions about the celebrities using *How long ...?* and the present perfect.

- 1 Michael Douglas and Catherine Zeta-Jones are married.
How long have they been married?
- 2 Madonna drives a Mini Cooper car.
- 3 Sienna Miller lives in Marylebone.
- 4 Paul McCartney plays the piano.
- 5 Ringo Starr is a **vegetarian**.
- 6 Jennifer Connelly speaks Italian.

MY TURN!

Make sentences with the words given and a time phrase which is true for you. Write them in your notebook.

- 1 I / be / hungry
I've been hungry since 9 o'clock this morning.
- 2 I / not see / my cousin
- 3 I / be / at this school
- 4 I / know / my / best friend
- 5 I / not do / the washing-up
- 6 My family / live / here

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 to meet Madonna.
a I always have wanted b I've always wanted c I've wanted always
- 2 We've lived in Marylebone
a for ages b ages ago c since ages
- 3 They've had their flat in Marylebone since they married.
a get b got c have got
- 4 A: How long? B: For about six years.
a are they famous b have they been famous c they've been famous
- 5 She London since she was a child.
a isn't visit b didn't visit c hasn't visited

Present perfect or past simple?

The company has invented the Mac and the iPod.



Steve Jobs was born in 1955 and was a multi-millionaire before the age of 30. He is **dyslexic** and one of his teachers at school remembers his 'different way of looking at things'.

In the 1970s, computers **were** large machines and only large companies **used** them. In 1976, Steve Jobs and Steve Wozniak **changed** all that. They **started** the company Apple Inc and **produced** the world's first personal computer, Apple I. Since then, Apple Inc **has** also **produced** Macintosh computers and the iPod.

Steve Jobs also **helped** to start Pixar Animation Studios. Some of the best-loved animated films **have** come from Pixar, including *Toy Story*, *Finding Nemo* and *Ratatouille*. Pixar **has** won many Oscars™ over the last 25 years.



Complete the sentence with three possible answers: Steve Jobs is famous for

possible answers: Apple Inc, Apple I, Macintosh computers, the iPod, Pixar Animation Studios

Present perfect or past simple?

- 1 Use the present perfect to talk about recent events or a past event which the speaker feels is connected with the present.

TIP

Certain time expressions are common with this use of the present perfect. These include *already, yet, just, ever, never, before*.

I haven't eaten yet. (= I'm hungry now.)

Has he left? (= He isn't here now.)

- 2 Use the past simple to talk about a finished action. Certain time expressions may be used with the past simple. These include *yesterday, last week, ago, then, when, in + year*.

In the 1970s, computers were large machines.

When did Apple invent the iPod?

- 3 Use the present perfect to talk about an event or situation which began in the past and continues now.

We often use time expressions with *since* and *for* with this use of the present perfect, e.g. *for a week, since yesterday, for a long time, since 2004*, and ask questions with *How long?*

How long have you worked at Pixar?

I've worked here for ten years.

- 4 The choice of the past simple or present perfect can sometimes depend on the point of view of the speaker, or on the context.

I didn't see George this morning. (The speaker is talking at the end of the day and *this morning* is finished.)

I haven't seen George this morning. (The speaker is talking in the morning – *this morning* is still going on.)

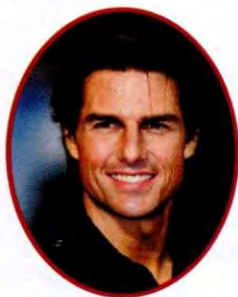
Practice

A Underline the correct option to complete the sentences about Tom Cruise.

- When he was a boy, Tom Cruise went / has been to fourteen different schools.
- While he was at high school, he acted / has acted in school plays.
- Since his first film in 1981, the actor starred / has starred in some very popular films, e.g. *Top Gun*, *Mission: Impossible* and *Jerry Maguire*.
- He worked / has worked with some very famous film makers, including Kubrick and Scorsese.
- He was / has been married to actress Nicole Kidman until 2001.
- He became / has become a father in 2006, when his daughter Suri was / has been born.

Tom says:

- 'I had / 've had a very interesting life.'



C Match the pairs.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 I've sent all the letters this morning. | a (It's four o'clock in the afternoon.) |
| 2 I sent all the letters this morning. | b (It's eleven o'clock in the morning.) |
| 3 She learnt to speak seven languages. | a (She is not still alive.) |
| 4 She has learnt to speak seven languages. | b (She is still alive.) |
| 5 He worked for the company for three years. | a (He still works there.) |
| 6 He has worked for the company for three years. | b (He doesn't work there now.) |
| 7 He has sold a lot of cars today. | a (It's 10 pm and he is not working now.) |
| 8 He sold a lot of cars today. | b (It's 4 pm and he is still working.) |

B Complete these sentences using the past simple or present perfect of the verbs in brackets.

- My grandfather didn't have much money when he was a young man. (not have)
- It was difficult to get a good job then. (be)
- Did you hear this song before? (hear)
- What did you dream about last night? (dream)
- My uncle collects old motorbikes. He has bought three. (buy)
- When the teacher was in the room, we stood up. (come)
- There were more accidents on the road last month than in the whole of last year. (be)
- You wore that coat for a long time! (not wear)

MY TURN!

Make past simple or present perfect questions from the words and write them in your notebook. Sometimes both tenses are possible.

- you / ever / see a dolphin?
- when / you / last / go swimming?
- how many different schools / you / study at / before now?
- what / you / yesterday / do?
- how many exams / you / this year / take?
- When your mother was young, where / she / live?
- you / ever / live / another country?
- what / your family / last weekend / do?

1 Have you ever seen a dolphin?

In your notebook, answer the questions about yourself and your family. Use the past simple or present perfect in your answers.

MY TEST!

I Circle the correct option.

- A: How long a multi-millionaire? B: Since I was 30. a have you been b are you c you have been
- A: Have you ever seen *Finding Nemo*? B: Yes, it on DVD last week. a I've watched b I've watching c I watched
- her Apple I computer since 1977. a She has b She's had c She have
- We've seen some Pixar films, but I *Ratatouille* yet. a don't see b haven't seen c haven't see
- together for 20 years, from 1976 to 1996. a They work b They've worked c They worked

My Test! answers: 1a 2c 3b 4b 5c

16

Used to

Sick people often **used to** sleep in temples.

The Ancient Greeks **used to** think that they were ill because of bad magic, or because the gods were unhappy with them.



The Greeks **didn't use to** take **medicine** and they **didn't use to** go to the doctor. The first 'doctors' **used to** be **witches** or people with magic powers.

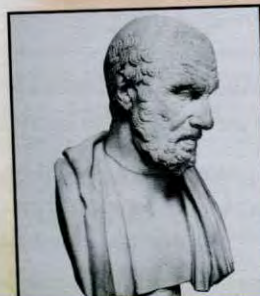


So, sick people often **used to** sleep in **temples**.



Some people **used to** eat flowers and herbs when they were ill but this **didn't use to** help everyone.

Hippocrates, born about 460 BC on the island of Kos, made medicine into a serious science. He is often called the father of medicine.



Underline the correct option: The first doctors were Greek / believed in magic / were women.

answer: believed in magic

Used to

- Used to** is for habits and states which finished in the past. **Used to** often contrasts the past and the present.
*Jack **used to** live in Brighton, but now he lives in Liverpool.*
*Most people **used to** believe in magic.*
- The past simple can usually replace **used to**.
*The Greeks **used to** sleep / **slept** in temples when they were ill.*
*They **didn't use to** go / **didn't go** to doctors.*
- Use the past simple, not **used to**, when talking about single activities, how long they took or how many times they happened.
*I **went** to the doctor yesterday. NOT ~~I used to go~~...*
*We **didn't eat** for two days.*
NOT We ~~didn't used to eat~~...
*Jane **visited** me in hospital twice.*
NOT Jane ~~used to visit~~...

- Used to** + infinitive without **to**. **Used to** has no present or continuous forms.

*Sick people often **used to** sleep in temples.*

- Make questions with **Did** + noun / pronoun + **use to** ...?
*Did doctors **use to** study science?*
*Did you **use to** eat a lot of sweets when you were young?*

- Make the negative with **did not (didn't) use to** or **never used to**.

*They **didn't use to** take medicine.*
*Operations **never used to** be easy.*

TIP

In spoken English people often use **did** + **used** (instead of **use**) in questions and negatives.

*Did you **used to** play with dolls?*
*I **didn't used to** like him.*

Practice

A Charlie is now a millionaire but he used to be poor. In your notebook, write sentences about Charlie's life with *used to* and *didn't use to*.

Now	10 years ago
1 He gets up at 11.00.	7.00
2 He doesn't work.	supermarket
3 He has a very big house.	X big house
4 He plays golf.	X golf
5 He wears expensive clothes.	cheap clothes
6 He is unhappy.	happy

1 He used to get up at 7.00

B Underline the correct option. Sometimes both options are possible.

- 1 I had / used to have a shower last night.
- 2 Kurt was / used to be a very good friend.
- 3 It snowed / used to snow a lot in winter.
- 4 I met / used to meet Janice yesterday.
- 5 Children didn't watch / use to watch so much TV.
- 6 It wasn't / never used to be very expensive.
- 7 My sister went / used to go to Mexico in 2007.
- 8 My sister went / used to go to Mexico every summer.

C Read these sentences about life 2,000 years ago. (Four are true, four are false.) If the sentence is true, rewrite it with *used to*. If the sentence is false, rewrite it with *didn't use to*.

- 1 Latin was an international language.
Latin used to be an international language.
- 2 People used to think that the world was round.
People didn't use to think that the world was round.
- 3 There were bears in England.
- 4 People ate a lot of meat.
- 5 Builders made houses out of wood.

- 6 Most people lived in towns.
- 7 Travelling by sea was dangerous.
- 8 Children learned English.

D Complete this advertisement with *used to* or the past simple of the verbs in the box.

not answer	be	change	criticise	do
get	lose	not listen	sit	not worry

1 Did you get out of bed this morning and feel terrible?
2 much fitter and healthier once?
If your answer is 'yes', you need **Powerflakes!**

Eva Clark (England): 'I about my health but I never exercise and my health got worse and worse. Then I tried Powerflakes! Now I feel like a new woman.'

Andrei Wojdylo (Poland): 'My friends me all the time because I was so lazy and unfit but I to them. I in front of the TV all night and eat chocolates. If the phone rang, I it! Last year everything because I my job and I needed to change my life. Now, I have Powerflakes and life is perfect!'



MY TURN!

In your notebook, write sentences about changes in your life with *used to*, *didn't use to* or *never used to*.
Example: I used to do judo but now I do karate.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 She wants to be a vet now, but she want to be a doctor. a use to b used c used to
- 2 He eat healthy food, but now he only eats vegetables. a didn't used b didn't use to c doesn't used to
- 3 go to the doctor very often when you were young? a Did you use to b You used to c Did you used
- 4 My dad used to smoke, but he when I was born. a used to stop b stopped c used to stopped
- 5 My parents give us medicine when we were sick. a never didn't use to b didn't never use to c never used to

A Complete the table with the missing forms.

infinitive without <i>to</i>	past simple	past participle
eat	<i>ate</i>	
		done
	fell	
		felt
		got
	had	
look		
	lived	
		made
play		
walk		
	wrote	

B Rewrite these sentences with *used to*, but only if it's possible.

- I had a red bike when I was little.
I used to have a red bike when I was little.
- Did you play computer games when you were a child?
- I played tennis three times on holiday.
- The Romans ate a lot of fish.
- She played the violin at university.
- He didn't go to the doctor yesterday.
- Didn't they work hard at their old school?
- This morning we made a cake for Grandma's visit.

C Make present perfect questions from the words.

- your sister / live in Australia / how long?
How long has your sister lived in Australia?
- ever / you / make a pizza?
- start / yet / the film?
- you / how many times / ride a horse?
- all seven Harry Potter books / you / read?
- be married / how long / Henry and Gloria?
- ever / you / have a party in your house?
- Tony / yet / say thank-you for the present?
- study English / you / before?
- clean her shoes / Maria / yet?

D Write present perfect or past simple answers to the questions in Exercise C, using the words given.

- six months
She's lived in Australia for six months.
- never
- just
- three times
- four of them already / the other three not yet
- two years
- last year
- already / four times
- never
- yesterday

E Complete these dialogues using the present perfect, past simple or used to.

- 1 come A: Has the taxi come yet?
B: Yes, it came five minutes ago.
- 2 see A: you ever a UFO?
B: Yes, I one last year.
- 3 have A: How long you your cat?
B: About a year. We her since Christmas.
- 4 play A: you tennis every week?
B: Yes, I, but I hurt my leg.
- 5 write A: you a thank-you email to your aunt yet?
B: Yes, I to her this morning.
- 6 meet A: Lisa, you my cousin Alan before?
B: Yes, we at your birthday party last year.
- 7 decide A: you about your holiday yet?
B: Well, we to go skiing, but we where yet.
- 8 want A: When you were young, you to be a train driver?
B: Yes, when I was 12. Before that, I to be a circus clown.
- 9 watch A: you *Titanic* on TV last night?
B: No, I already it four times.

F Underline the correct option.



Lee Gould is in the middle of a tour of Europe ... on a bike. We spoke to him in Portugal.

Interviewer: Hi Lee. Tell us about your tour of Europe.

Lee: Well, I've ¹always / ever wanted to visit different countries, and ²I was always / I've always been good at cycling. So about two years ago I ³decided / have decided to cycle around Europe. My plan is to visit every country in the European Union.

Interviewer: And how many countries ⁴did / have you visited so far?

Lee: Only 11. I've ⁵been / gone to all the countries in the south of Europe. I ⁶started / have started in Cyprus last year, and then I ⁷took / have taken a boat to Greece. Since then ⁸I cycled / I've cycled about 5,000 km.

Interviewer: Have you been to Ireland ⁹still / yet?

Lee: No, I ¹⁰didn't / haven't. I haven't been to any countries in the north of Europe ¹¹yet / already, but I'm going to take a boat from Spain to Ireland next week.

Interviewer: Are you tired after cycling so far?

Lee: Yes, I am. I ¹²used / have to get really tired at the beginning but it has got easier ¹³since / from I left Spain.

Interviewer: ¹⁴Did / Have you had any problems so far?

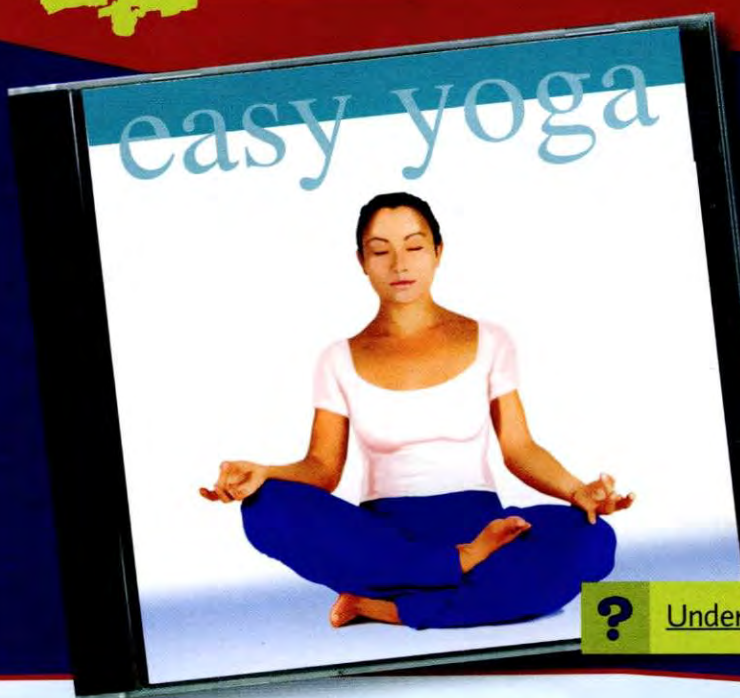
Lee: Well, ¹⁵I fell / I've fallen off my bike many times, but I ¹⁶don't / haven't really hurt myself. I've also lost my bike three times, but I've ¹⁷always / already found it again. It's a very special bike for me – ¹⁸I have / I've had it for six years, and it has been like a good friend for me.

Interviewer: Have you ¹⁹met / meet any interesting people?

Lee: I ²⁰didn't / haven't had time to talk to people, but in every country the people have been very good to me. They have helped me a lot.

Interviewer: One last question. Why are you doing this?

Lee: I'm trying to collect money for a children's hospital. So far ²¹I collected / I've collected almost £5,000.



Welcome to the Easy Yoga course!

I hope **you'll** enjoy yoga. It **won't** be easy but it **will** be healthy and fun. At the end of this CD I'm sure **you'll** feel the difference. **You'll** be happy and your whole body **will** feel good. You **won't** want to stop. **Shall** we start? I think **we'll** begin with some simple exercises. Don't worry, I **won't** go too quickly. Any problems, stop the CD and **we'll** start again. Is that clear? Right, I'll continue. Sit on the floor ...



Underline the correct option: This is a *business / fitness / music* CD.

Answer: fitness

Will, shall, won't

Will is the most usual way to talk about the future in English.

- 1 Use **will** for general predictions based on what you think. Words like *think, hope* and *sure*, which show your opinion and attitude, are common with **will**.

*It **won't** be easy but it **will** be healthy and fun.*

*I think the CD **will** be very popular.*

I hope you'll enjoy yoga.

- 2 Use **will** for instant decisions made at the time of speaking.

Right, I'll continue.

I don't know, I'll check.

TIP

Don't use **will** for plans or arrangements.

I'm going to have a yoga lesson tomorrow.

NOT I'll have a yoga lesson tomorrow.

Are we meeting at 6? NOT Will we meet at 6?

- 3 Use **will** with the infinitive without **to**.

*That **will be** nice.*

*I hope the lessons **will start** soon.*

- 4 The short form **'ll** is used mainly with pronouns and in speaking.

I'll go.

*You'll be happy and your whole body **will** feel good.*

The negative short form **won't** is common in speaking and writing with nouns and pronouns.

*You **won't** want to turn this CD off.*

- 5 Use **Shall I / we ...?** (NOT **will**) for offers and suggestions.

***Shall** I open the bottle?*

***Shall** we start?*

TIP

Shall is occasionally used with **I** and **we** in very formal British English.

*We **shall** be very happy to see you.*

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	will ('ll)	will not (won't)

question ?	short answer ✓✗
Will I / you / he / she / it / we / they go?	Yes, (I) will . No, (I) will not (won't) .

► See Units 18 and 19 for more future forms.

Practice

A Write the short form of each full form. If no short form is possible, put X.

- 1 I will try yoga. I'll
- 2 Shall we sit down? X
- 3 We will feel better. _____
- 4 Will she like it? _____
- 5 That will not be easy. _____
- 6 Shall I play it again? _____
- 7 I will not listen again. _____
- 8 Will the course be expensive? _____
- 9 I will stop the CD. _____
- 10 The instructor will not repeat it. _____
- 11 I hope it will be fun _____

B Read the text and make predictions about Victoria's new life. Complete the sentences with *will*, *'ll* or *won't*.

Victoria is from Russia. She moved to Vancouver last week with her parents. Victoria is 13 and she is a good student, but she doesn't speak much English. What do you think Victoria's new life in Canada will be like?

- 1 She ll learn English very quickly.
- 2 Victoria _____ like Canadian food.
- 3 Her friends in Russia _____ write to her.
- 4 She _____ forget Russian.
- 5 The climate _____ be a problem.
- 6 Her parents _____ worry about her.
- 7 She _____ feel homesick.
- 8 Victoria _____ get lost in Vancouver.
- 9 Her grandmother _____ visit her.
- 10 Her life _____ be very different.

C Use the phrases in the box and *will* / *'ll* to make decisions.

buy some tomorrow do it tomorrow get my coat
give her some milk have a swim talk to him

- 1 I'm cold.
I'll get my coat.
- 2 The baby is hungry. _____
- 3 I don't have any eggs. _____
- 4 I'm tired. _____
- 5 The sea is lovely. _____
- 6 There's Tom. _____

D Underline the correct option.

- Paul: What do you think, ¹shall / will Sunday be all right for the picnic?
- Sue: Sunday ²will / won't be fine for me. But, wait ... Sunday is my dad's birthday.
- Paul: ³Shall / Will we have the picnic tomorrow then?
- Sue: ⁴Shall / Will we have enough time to buy the food?
- Paul: We ⁵will / won't need much, just some snacks. My mum ⁶shall / will probably make something nice.
- Sue: ⁷Shall / Will I call everyone or ⁸shall / will you do it?
- Paul: I ⁹'ll / won't do it, it's no problem.
- Sue: Great. It ¹⁰shall / will be a lovely picnic.
- Paul: I just hope it ¹¹'ll / won't rain.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write predictions about the future with *will* and *won't*. Begin each sentence with *I (don't) think, I hope* or *I'm (not) sure*.

- 1 everyone / speak Chinese
I'm not sure everyone will speak Chinese.
- 2 we / live / on Mars
I hope we won't live on Mars.
- 3 robots / do / all the housework
- 4 children / drive / to school
- 5 everyone / have / a computer
- 6 people / live / until they are 120
- 7 I / rich
- 8 the world / be / very different

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 I hope my sister _____ this yoga CD.
a will likes b will liking c will like
- 2 I'm sure _____ time to do yoga.
a she won't has b she won't have
c she won't be have
- 3 A: _____ to our new CD now? B: Yes!
a We shall listen b Shall we listened
c Shall we listen
- 4 A: Will I be good at yoga?
B: Yes, _____.
a you will b you won't c you do
- 5 I think _____ this yoga CD. It's too difficult.
a I'll stopped b I'll stop c I stop

18

Present continuous with future meaning

She's flying to Glasgow tomorrow.



On Tuesday morning **she's flying** to Glasgow. She **isn't having** lunch because **she's making** a video. At 9:00 on Wednesday **she's meeting** her manager and **they're talking about** a new film. Lucy **is seeing** a friend at 11:00 and **she's opening** a new theatre in the afternoon. The next morning **she's going back** to Southampton. She **isn't working** on Thursday, **she's spending** time with her family.

Lucy Green is only sixteen but she is already a famous actress. Today is Monday and there is a busy week ahead. Look at her diary.

Tuesday

10:00 fly to Glasgow
13:00 make video

Wednesday

9:00 meet manager
11:00 see Jane

Thursday

16:00 open new theatre
8:00 fly back
all day with Mum & Dad!!



True or False? Thursday is a free day for Lucy.

Answer: True

Present continuous with future meaning

- 1 Use the present continuous (*be + verb + -ing*) for plans in the future when we already know the time and place.
On Tuesday morning she's flying to Glasgow,
We're meeting at two o'clock.
- 2 We often use the present continuous to talk about a definite time in the future, e.g. *tomorrow, six o'clock, on Friday.*
I'm staying at home tonight.
She isn't working on Thursday,

TIP

We can often use *going to* instead of the present continuous with future meaning.
She's spending time with her family.
= *She's going to spend time with her family.*

- See Unit 5 for the present continuous and Units 17 and 19 for more future forms.

Practice

Look at Lucy's diary for Friday, then complete the summary using present continuous statements.

Friday

7:00 get up
 9:00 leave home
 11:00 meet manager + sign contract
 13:00 all have lunch together in theatre + read script
 14:00 - 17:30 see Kate
 18:00 - interview with journalists
 21:00 take train home (Mum meeting me)

Lucy ¹ 's getting up early on Friday morning. At 9:00 she ² home. Her manager ³ her at 11:00 and they ⁴ the **contract**. Lucy ⁵ lunch with everyone in the theatre and they ⁶ the script. In the afternoon she ⁷ her friend Kate. At 18:00 some journalists ⁸ her. At 21:00 she ⁹ the train home. Her mum ¹⁰ her at the station.

Here is part of Lucy's interview. Match the questions to the correct answers, then write both in full using the present continuous.

- 1 Lucy / you / go / to the Cannes film festival?
- 2 you / have / a holiday / there?
- 3 you / fly / to Zurich?
- 4 where / you / stay?
- 5 your sister / travel / with you?

c

- a No / I / do / a drama course
- b No / we / not go / together
- c No / I / spend / the spring / in Switzerland
- d I / rent / a flat / in Geneva
- e Yes / but / I / not stay / in Zurich

- 1 Question: *Lucy, are you going to the Cannes film festival?*
 Lucy: *No, I'm spending the spring in Switzerland.*
- 2 Question: _____
 Lucy: _____
- 3 Question: _____
 Lucy: _____
- 4 Question: _____
 Lucy: _____
- 5 Question: _____
 Lucy: _____

C Complete this telephone dialogue with present continuous forms of the verbs in the box.

come do not do give go meet play play
 not spend not stay take

- Angela: Hi, Stacy. ¹ *Are* you *going* to the school disco tonight?
- Stacy: No way! ² I _____ my Friday night at school. I ³ _____ my brother at 8.
- Angela: ⁴ _____ he _____ you with him to the hockey game?
- Stacy: Yes, I'm so excited. He ⁵ _____ against a very good team tonight. Steven Stamkos ⁶ _____, that guy from the NHL.
- Angela: Steven Stamkos! ⁷ _____ he _____ too?
- Stacy: No, he ⁸ _____ the prizes. He ⁹ _____ long. Anyway, what ¹⁰ _____ you _____ after the disco?
- Angela: I ¹¹ _____ anything special.

MY TURN!

Imagine you are a famous person. What are you doing next week? First, write notes in your notebook, then write at least six present continuous sentences. Some can be negatives.

Examples:


I'm watching myself on TV.
I'm not getting up before 12 tomorrow.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 _____ my manager tomorrow evening.
 a I'm meeting b I meeting c I meet
- 2 _____ the new contract.
 a He'll bringing b He's bringing c He's bring
- 3 _____ coming to the theatre?
 a You're b Will you c Are you
- 4 A: Are you making a video next week?
 B: No, _____. I made it last week.
 a I don't b I won't c I'm not
- 5 We _____ staying in a hotel.
 a aren't b won't c don't

My Test! answers: 1a 2b 3c 4c 5a

The dragon is very angry (and hungry!) now – **it's going to eat you!** You don't have a sword  so you **aren't going to fight** an angry dragon! **Are you going to run away?**



I'm not going to fight. I'm going to run away.

► Turn to page 212.



I'm going to use magic.

► Turn to page 45.



I'm going to speak nicely to the dragon. **We're going to be** friends!

► Turn to page 170.

92



Which answer would you give?

Be going to

- 1 Use **be going to** + infinitive without **to** (e.g. *do, say, have*) for predictions about the future based on what we see or know now.

*The dragon is very angry – it's **going to eat** you!*
*The water is cold. I'm **not going to swim**.*

- 2 Often **be going to** + infinitive without **to** shows that something is going to happen immediately or very soon.

*Be careful, it's **going to fall**!*
*Julie is working too hard. She's **going to get** ill.*

- 3 Use **be going to** + infinitive without **to** for plans and decisions.

*I'm **going to use** magic.*
*Are you **going to clean** your shoes?*

- 4 We can also use the present continuous (**be** + verb + **-ing**) to talk about plans and decisions.

*I'm **meeting** Fiona tonight. = I'm **going to meet** Fiona tonight.*

TIP

Be going to (NOT the present continuous) can be used for plans which have not been scheduled.

*I'm **going to buy** a laptop tomorrow. = I'm **buying** a laptop tomorrow. (A plan, I know when.)*

*One day, I'm **going to marry** a prince. NOT ~~One day, I'm marrying~~ a prince. (A plan but I don't know when.)*

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I	am ('m) going to see	am ('m) not going to see
He / She / It	is ('s) going to see	is not (isn't / 's not) going to see
You / We / They	are ('re) going to see	are not (aren't / 're not) going to see

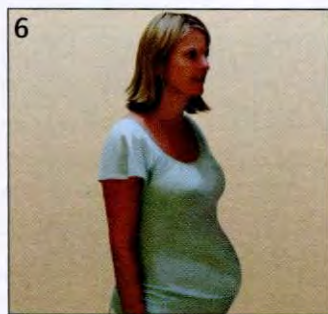
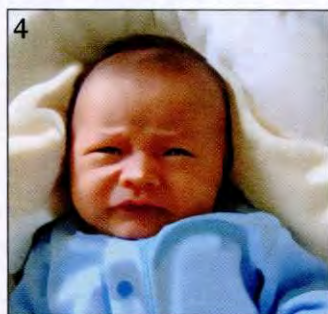
question ?	short answer ✓✗
Am I going to see ...?	Yes, I am. No, I am ('m) not.
Is he / she / it going to see ...?	Yes, (he) is. No, (he) is not (isn't / 's not).
Are you / we / they going to see ...?	Yes, (you) are. No, (you) are not (aren't / 're not).

► See Units 17 and 18 for more future forms.

Practice

A What is (or is not) going to happen next? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with *be going to* and a verb from the box.

break buy cry finish have snow



- 1 *She's going to buy a new dress.*
- 2 The ball window.
- 3 It
- 4 The baby
- 5 The manager work early.
- 6 She a baby.

B Complete the sentences with *be going to*. Some are negatives or questions.

- 1 I love science. *I'm going to* study Physics at university.
- 2 She feels hungry, so she have dinner.
- 3 The party is tomorrow. you come?
- 4 He's broken his leg, so he play tonight.
- 5 They like fast cars. They buy a Ferrari.
- 6 A: he win? B: I hope so.
- 7 We don't have tickets for the concert. We see it.

C Underline the correct option. Sometimes both options are possible.

- 1 We're going to do / doing it soon.
- 2 John is going to do / doing it tomorrow.
- 3 My son is going to win / winning an Olympic medal in 2020.
- 4 Are you going to study / studying hard at college next year?
- 5 My sister is going to have / having a baby in December.
- 6 We're not going to finish / finishing it soon, unfortunately.
- 7 Glenda is going to write / writing a book one day.
- 8 Is Dad going to take / taking you to the airport on Saturday?

MY TURN!

Read the sentences, make your own predictions with *be going to* and write them in your notebook.

- 1 The dog is hungry. It sees some meat on the table.
The dog's going to jump on the table and eat the meat.
- 2 Mike sees a nice jacket in the shop window.
- 3 I don't speak French well but I know the phone number of a private French teacher.
- 4 You like Biology and you are a good student.
- 5 Sally wants a car but her salary is very small.
- 6 They live in a town but they don't like the noise and pollution.
- 7 You find 100 euros in the street. You see a police officer.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 Be careful! The dragon up. a be going to wake b is going to wake c is going to waking
- 2 to read this adventure book again. Do you want it? a I don't going b I'm not going c I won't going
- 3 A: Are they going to be friends? B: Yes, a they are b they going c they do
- 4 A: magic? B: No, she isn't. She's going to run away. a She is going to use b Is she going use c Is she going to use
- 5 Relax! The dragon you. It's a very friendly dragon. a aren't going to eat b isn't going to eat c not going to eat

A Match the questions to the answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Shall we go dancing tonight? | a Yes, they're never late. |
| 2 Will it be cold in Germany? | b No, I'm not. She's on holiday, so I'm going to stay at home. |
| 3 Are you meeting Rachel tonight? | c Yes, she will. Is that OK? |
| 4 Is the train going to be late? | d Yes, we are. I think it'll be really good. |
| 5 Will they arrive on time? | e OK. That's a good idea. |
| 6 Are you both going to watch the tennis match? | f Yes, it is. Sue called to say she's still waiting at the station. |
| 7 Will your sister want to come with us? | g Yes, he is. He's bought some pizzas. |
| 8 Is Dan cooking dinner tonight? | h No, it won't. At this time of year it's usually warm. |

B Read the reasons for using different future forms below.

Find an example in Exercise A to match each reason.

- Will for predictions based on what you think: *Will it be cold in Germany?*
- Shall for offers and suggestions:
- Present continuous for plans when we already know the time and place:
- Be going to for predictions about the future based on what we see or know now:

C Change these sentences into questions (?) or negatives (x).

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 She's arriving at 10 pm tonight. (?) | <i>Is she arriving at 10 pm tonight?</i> |
| 2 This film will be very exciting. (x) | <i>This film won't be very exciting.</i> |
| 3 We're going to be late. (?) | |
| 4 I'll need my passport at the hotel. (?) | |
| 5 Susan's going to the party, so I'll go. (x) | |
| 6 You'll enjoy this book. (x) | |
| 7 It's going to snow tonight. (?) | |
| 8 You're going to be sick. (?) | |
| 9 Your parents will be angry. (?) | |
| 10 We're going to win the match. (x) | |

D Underline the correct option.

- Jill: ¹Will you go / Are you going to Joe's Halloween party next week?
 Kelly: Of course. I'm really excited about it. What about you?
 Jill: Yes, ²I'll / I'm going to go. But I don't know what to wear. Maybe ³I'll / I'm going to be a witch.
 Kelly: Oh no, please don't. ⁴I'll / I'm going to be a witch. I've bought a black hat and ⁵I'll / I'm going to have a green face.
 Jill: Oh, right. OK, so I ⁶won't / I'm not going to go as a witch. I know. ⁷I'll / I'm going to put a white sheet on my head and be a ghost.
 Kelly: Hmm ... Sue and Chris and Sharon ⁸will all / are all going to be ghosts. Sue told me yesterday.
 Jill: OK, OK. ⁹I'll / I'm going to buy some Dracula teeth. Is that OK?
 Kelly: Yes, that's a great idea.
 Rob: Hi Jill. Hi Kelly. ¹⁰Will you go / Are you going to Joe's party?
 Jill: Oh yes. Yes, and ... ¹¹I'll / I'm going to be Dracula.
 Rob: Dracula? Oh no ... please don't. ¹²I'll / I'm going to be Dracula too.

E Match the pairs.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 We're going to Korea next month. | a I think it's going to be hot. |
| 2 It's a beautiful morning, with no clouds. | b It'll probably be hot. |
| 3 She's always late. | a She probably won't be here on time today. |
| 4 She phoned to say her bus didn't come. | b She isn't going to be here on time. |
| 5 Our football team is really good. | a I'm sure we'll win today's match. |
| 6 It's 6-1, with only 10 minutes to play. | b We're going to win the match. |
| 7 I've seen this film before. I know the ending. | a Maybe she'll marry the doctor. |
| 8 It's a great film. How will it end? | b She's going to marry the doctor. |
| 9 How many children are you going to have? | a I don't know. Ask me again in 10 years' time. |
| 10 How many children will you have? | b Two. Next month. |

F Make predictions (using *will* and *be going to*) and plans (using *be going to* and present continuous) with the words given. Some are negatives.

- It / be very cold / tonight. (It's 8 o'clock in the evening, and already below zero!)
It's going to be very cold tonight.
- It / be very cold / next week. (You think; you haven't seen the weather forecast.)

- I / go to the cinema / tonight. (You're going with your sister; it starts at 8 o'clock.)

- I / go to the cinema / next week. (You don't know when, who with or what film.)

- My favourite football team / play a match / this weekend. (You have a ticket, the game starts at 3 o'clock.)

- My favourite football team / win the cup / this year. (You think, but you don't know.)

- We / go to a hot country on holiday / next week. (You have the plane tickets.)

- We / go to a hot country on holiday / this summer. (You don't know which country or the date.)

How can **dogs** help us?

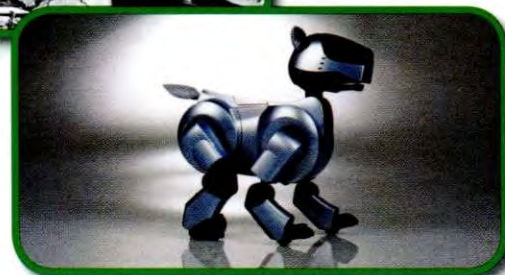
Dogs **can** hear and see much better than humans. They **can** also smell many things that humans **can't**.

During World War I, many soldiers went blind. Dogs **were able to** look after the blind soldiers.



In World War II, dogs **were able to** smell or hear **survivors** that people **could not** find.

Sony's Aibo.
Will a robot ever **be able to** replace a dog?



Why are dogs very good at finding people?

Answer: They can hear, see and smell much better than humans.

Modal verbs: *can, could, be able to*

- 1 Use **can** to talk about ability.
*Dogs **can** hear and see much better than humans.*
- 2 **Can** does not change. It is the same with all subjects.
*I **can** swim. He **can** swim. They **can** swim.*
- 3 **Can** is followed by a second verb. The second verb is the infinitive without **to**.
*Dogs **can** hear much better than humans.*
NOT *They **can** to hear...*
- 4 The negative of **can** is **cannot**. The short form is **can't**. The short form is more common, especially in conversation.
*Emily **can't** swim very well.*

- 5 Make questions and short answers as follows:

question ?		short answer ✓/✗	
Can	I / you / he / she / it / we / they	swim?	Yes, (he) can. No, (he) can't.
	How can dogs help us?		

- 6 Use **could (not)** or **was / were (not) able to** for the past.
*In World War II, dogs **were able to** smell or hear survivors that people **could not** find.*
- 7 Use **will be able to** for the future. The negative form of the future is **will not be able to** or **won't be able to**.
*A robot **will / won't be able to** replace a dog.*
***Will** a robot ever **be able to** replace a dog?*

- ▶ See Unit 21 for **can** (request).
- ▶ See Unit 22 for **can't** (forbid).

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / He / She / It / We / They	can swim.	cannot (can't) swim.

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- 1 Dogs can / could travel a long way to find food.
- 2 Most dogs can't / couldn't see the difference between red and green.
- 3 Often during World Wars I and II, people were not able to / can't find survivors.
- 4 However, dogs were able to / will be able to find them.
- 5 They can / could also carry messages.
- 6 In the future, scientists will be able to / can make better robot dogs.

B Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 bottle / I / open / can't / this
I can't open this bottle.
- 2 couldn't / name / her / remember / I
.....
- 3 stand / child / able / The / wasn't / to
.....
- 4 at / meet / we / Can / 7?
.....
- 5 question / He / the / answer / couldn't
.....
- 6 play / can't / I / tennis
.....
- 7 truck / drive / Can / a / she?
.....
- 8 able / come / friends / My / weren't / to
.....

C Circle the correct option.

- 1 I ... use my mobile here – it doesn't work.
a can **b can't** c couldn't d wasn't able to
- 2 In 1998, 20% of the world's population ... not write.
a can **b can't** c could d was able to
- 3 The box was very heavy – I ... carry it.
a will be able to **b won't be able to**
c can't d couldn't
- 4 When I was younger, I ... read a book in one day.
a could **b can** c will be able to d can't
- 5 I ... take this to the post office. I haven't got enough time.
a can **b can't** c could d couldn't
- 6 I'm not busy. I ... go to the post office for you.
a can't **b won't be able to** c can d couldn't
- 7 Don't stay out late or you won't ... get up early.
a could **b can** c be able to d can't
- 8 The window was very small but my daughter ... climb in.
a wasn't able to **b weren't able to**
c won't be able to d was able to

D Complete the sentences using can, can't, could, couldn't, will be able to or won't be able to and a verb from the box.

come	have	hear	imagine
read	see	speak	understand

- 1 It's too dark in here. I can't read my book.
- 2 I want to learn Spanish. you
..... another language?
- 3 When we move to the country next year, we
..... a dog.
- 4 We don't really know what life was like in the past. We
..... only
- 5 **Bats**
very well but they have excellent hearing.
- 6 That film was really boring.
you what it was about?
- 7 I couldn't sleep last night. I a strange noise.
- 8 If I go to Australia to study, I
..... home very often.

MY TURN!

Make sentences about what you *can* / *can't* do now, *could* / *couldn't* do when you were younger or *will* / *won't be able to* do in the future and write them in your notebook. Use expressions from the box or your own ideas.

drive	run 10 kilometres	speak English
stand on my head	touch my toes with my nose	

Example: When I was four, I couldn't speak English.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 My dog understand about 20 words in Spanish. **a can to** b can c is able
- 2 But he understand one word of English.
a doesn't can b can't c can not
- 3 When the people the survivor, their dogs helped them.
a couldn't find b can't found c couldn't found
- 4 My dog very fast.
a doesn't can run b can't run c cannot runs
- 5 A: Will the robot dog be able to swim?
B: No, it **a can't** b isn't c won't

My Test answers: 1b 2b 3a 4b 5c

Write to **Jim** and tell him your dreams. For one lucky winner, your dream will come true!

Dear Jim,
Could we go on a safari in South Africa? We'd really like to see some real lions. **Can** our friends come too?
Best wishes, Claudia and Elena (13 years old)

Dear Jim,
Can you send me a model Ferrari? I emailed you last month but you didn't send it. **Could** you answer 'yes' or 'no'? (I hope 'yes'.)
Best wishes, Charles (11 years old)

Dear Jim,
May I have a baby sister, please? I have two brothers but I really want a sister to play with.
Best wishes, Rita (10 years old)
P.S. Please **could** she have brown hair and brown eyes like me?

Dear Jim,
Could I work in the circus? I'm still at school but all my teachers say I am a clown. **May** I send you a video clip of myself?
Best wishes, John (12³/₈ years old)



Match each person to their request:

- | | |
|-----------|-------------|
| 1 Claudia | a a sister |
| 2 Charles | b a holiday |
| 3 John | c a car |
| 4 Rita | d a job |

Modals for requests: *can, could, may*

- 1 Use *can, could* and *may* to ask for something politely; *can* and *could* are more common than *may*.

Can you send me a model Ferrari?

Could I have a cake?

May I have a baby sister?

- 2 Use *can* and *could*, but not *may*, to ask people to do things.

Could she phone me when she's free?

Can you come here?

- 3 We can use *can, could* and *may* with the first person to ask for permission. *Could* is more polite than *can*. *May* is formal. We usually give permission with *can*, or we can just say *Of course* or *Sure*.

A: *Can I leave the room?* B: Yes, you *can*.

A: *Could we have some more?* B: No, you *can't*!

A: *May I start?* B: Of course.

TIP

Please + imperative is not very polite.
Please + can / could / may + the infinitive without to is polite.
Don't say *Please do it!*, say *Please can you do it?*

Practice

A Match each request to the correct reply.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1 May I come in? | a I'm not sure. I'll ask her. |
| 2 Could you ring back later? | b No, the shop is closed. |
| 3 Can we meet on Saturday? | c Sorry, I don't know Italian. |
| 4 May I take your number? | d Sure, I'll phone again in an hour. |
| 5 Can your sister come? | e Yes, take some. It's very good. |
| 6 Could they buy some bread on the way home? | f No, I'm busy at the weekend. |
| 7 Can I see your homework? | g I haven't done it yet. |
| 8 Could we try the cake? | h One moment, I'll open the door. |
| 9 Can you translate it? | i Sure. 737 - 52 - 25. |

B Write sentences asking for permission.

1 I want to go out.



Can I go out, please?

2



I want to speak to Sarah.

3



We want to come home late tonight.

4



I want to ride your bike.

C In your notebook, write a request for each situation using *can*, *could*, *may* and the words in brackets. Use *may* when you need to be very polite.

- You are in a very expensive cafe. You want a coffee. (I / have)
May I have a coffee?
- You are lost. You see an old man with a mobile phone. (I / use)
- Your computer won't work. Your friend is good with computers. (you / help)
- You are late for class. You want to go into the room. (I / come in)
- You want to see your friend after school. (we / meet)
- You have invited your friend to a party. You like his CD. (you / bring)
- It is cold. Your friend is in front of an open window. (you / close)
- You are going to play tennis with a friend. You have the ball. (we / start)

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Dear Jim. Can you my friend? a be b being c to be
- A: Excuse me. your toilet, please? B: Yes, of course. a May I use b May I using c May I to use
- for my sixteenth birthday? a May you give me a car b Could give you me a car c Could you give me a car
- Dear Jim. Please a new mobile phone? a could have my sister b could my sister has c could my sister have
- A: Mum? Can we have a dog? B: No, we a don't b haven't c can't

D These emails to Jim are not polite. In your notebook, write polite versions of them using *can*, *could*, *may* and *please*.

1 Give me a Sony PlayStation ?

Could you please give me a Sony PlayStation? / Can you give me a Sony PlayStation, please?

2 Buy me a new bike ?

3 I want to visit London. ?

4 Translate this email from my friend in Mongolia. ?

5 Do my Geography homework. ?

6 Send my sister a birthday present. ?

7 I want to go into space. ?

8 I want to be in the next Spider-Man film. ?

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write emails to Jim. Make them polite with *can*, *could*, *may* and *please*.

Examples: *Could I meet Roger Federer?*

I have to stay here.

3

People tell you all the time,
Poems **do not have to rhyme**.
It's often better if they don't
And I'm **determined** this one won't.
Oh dear.

Wendy Cope

4

There's a bird that comes flying,
settles down on my knee,
and he carries a letter
from my mother to me.
Little bird, take the greeting,
take a kiss and a tear,
for I **cannot** go with you,
as I **have to** stay here.

German folk song, translated by Gerda Mayer



1

I love the first bit of the morning,
The bit of the day that no one has used yet,
The part that is so clean
You **must** **wipe your feet** before you walk
out into it.

Coral Rumble

2

I have a fairy by my side
Which says I **must not** sleep,
When once in pain I loudly cried
It said 'You **must not** **weep**'.

Lewis Carroll



Which poem is about being far away from someone you love?

Answer: Poem 4

Must, have to and can't**1 Use must**

– to talk about rules and laws

*All passengers **must** wear a seat belt.* (This is the rule.)

– to talk about something the speaker feels is necessary.

*You **must** phone me.* (The speaker feels that this is important.)**2 The negative form is must not. The short form is mustn't. Use must not or mustn't to talk about things we are not allowed to do.***You **mustn't** smoke in the restaurant.***3 We can use can't instead of mustn't to talk about things we are not allowed to do.***I **can't** / **cannot** go with you.**I **couldn't** have sweets when I was a girl.***4 Use have to**

– to talk about rules and laws (a similar use to must)

*All passengers **have to** wear a seat belt.* (This is the rule.)

– to talk about obligation imposed on the speaker by others or circumstance.

*I **have to** stay here.* (The speaker can't change the situation.)**5 Use don't have to or doesn't have to to talk about something which is not necessary.***Poems **do not have to** rhyme.* (The speaker doesn't think this is necessary.)**6 The past of have to is had to.***I **had to** show my passport at the airport.*

The past of don't / doesn't have to is didn't have to.

*I **didn't have to** get up early yesterday.***7 There are no past or future forms of must. Use forms of have to to talk about obligation in the past or future.***I **had to** show my passport at the airport.**I **will have to** leave early.***8 Must does not change. It is the same with all subjects.***I **must** go. He **must** go. They **must** go.***9 Must is a modal verb, and is followed by a second verb in the infinitive without to.***You **must not** weep.***10 Questions are more common with have to than must. Make questions and short answers as follows:**

question ?	short answer ✓/X
Do I / you / we / they have to stay?	Yes, we do. No, we don't.
Does he / she / it have to stay?	Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

TIP**Don't have to** is not the same as **mustn't**.*You **mustn't** walk on the grass.**NOT You **don't have to** walk on the grass.*

► See Units 20, 21, 23 and 24 for more modal verbs.

Practice

A Complete the sentences with *have to* or *don't have to*. Make them true for you.

If you want to be my friend, ...

- 1 you be rich.
- 2 you be good-looking.
- 3 you be kind.
- 4 you like the same things as me.
- 5 you talk about your feelings.
- 6 you remember my birthday.

Example:

1 *you don't have to be rich.*

B Complete the sentences using *must*, *mustn't* or *can't* and a verb from the box.

be drink drive ride your bike ~~stop~~ talk



- 1 Drivers *must stop*
- 2 You on your mobile phone.
- 3 You here.
- 4 Cars under 60 km per hour.
- 5 You the water.
- 6 You quiet here.

C Follow the instructions to complete the poem.

Think of something you need to **buy**. (Write the verb in 1 and the object in 2.) Think of someone you need to **talk to**. (Write the verb in 3 and the person in 4.) Think of something you want to **eat**. (Write the verb in 5 and the food in 6.)
Now read your poem.

I must	1	<i>buy</i>	2
	3		4
and	5		6
and	1	<i>buy</i>	4
	3		6
or	5		2
or			

MY TURN!

You are going on a camping holiday in the summer. In your notebook, write two things you *have to* do at the campsite, two things you *mustn't* do and two things you *don't have to* do. Choose from the verbs in the box.

arrive early bring a **tent** get up early have parties
keep the campsite clean make a lot of noise
pay in advance wear a **uniform**

Example: *I don't have to get up early.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 I remember it's my mum's birthday next week. a must to b has c must
- 2 write poems at school? a Have you b Do you have to c Do you must
- 3 Please don't tell my parents I had a hamburger. They know. a mustn't b have not to c doesn't must
- 4 I my poem to the class yesterday. a had to read b must read c must to read
- 5 travel a lot when you were a pop singer? a Had you to b Must you c Did you have to

Here are some things you should remember if you go to different countries.

If you go to a restaurant in South Korea, you **should** take off your shoes. This is polite.



You **should not** touch somebody on the head in Thailand. The head is a special part of the body in Thai culture.

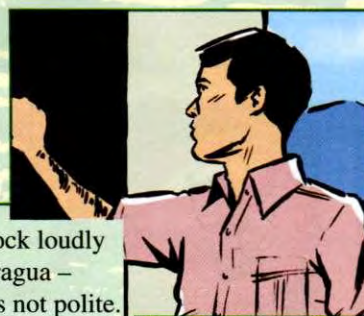


In Russia, you **shouldn't** whistle inside a house. (No one knows why!)



Guests in Mexico **should** always leave a little bit of food on their plate. This shows they are not hungry.

You **ought to** knock loudly on doors in Nicaragua – knocking softly is not polite.



In Taiwan, you **shouldn't** give somebody an umbrella as a present. An umbrella will bring people bad luck.



True or False? It is a bad idea to wear shoes in a restaurant in South Korea.

Answer: True

Should, ought to

- Should** has a similar meaning to **must**, but is not so strong.
You **should** eat healthy food.
In Taiwan, you **shouldn't** give somebody an umbrella as a present.
- Use **should** to ask for and give advice.
What **should** I do now?
A: I don't feel well. B: You **should** go home.
- Should** is a modal verb so it has no -s in the third person singular. It is followed by the infinitive without **to**.
Simon **should** come with us.
NOT ~~Simon should to come with us.~~
- We make questions by putting **should** before the subject.
Should we buy a **guidebook**?
What **should** I do?
- We make negatives with **not**. The short form of **should** **not** is **shouldn't**.
You **should not** touch somebody on the head in Thailand.
Children **shouldn't** play here.
- Ought to** = **should** but it is much less common. **Ought to** is very rare in questions and negatives.
You **ought to** be polite.

Practice

A Match the correct advice to each sentence.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 It's raining. | a You shouldn't think about it. |
| 2 I'm tired. | b You should remember it. |
| 3 It's my birthday. | c You should take an umbrella. |
| 4 I'm worried about this test. | d You ought to see a dentist. |
| 5 My tooth hurts. | e You should answer it. |
| 6 My phone is ringing. | f You shouldn't eat it. |
| 7 It's important information. | g You should not work so hard. |
| 8 It smells strange. | h You should buy a nice cake. |

B Complete the sentences using *should* and the verbs in the box.

buy ~~come~~ eat give kiss meet open say

- Guests should come late to parties in Switzerland.
- You should give flowers for women on 8 March in Romania.
- In Ukraine, you should meet guests with bread and salt.
- If you get a present in Thailand, you should open it at home.
- When you answer the phone in Germany, you should say your name.
- In Belgium, friends should kiss three times when they meet.
- Guests should eat everything on their plate in Bolivia.
- If you have a house party in New Zealand, you should buy a key to guests.

C Tick ✓ the correct option.



- a It is necessary to wear the hat if it's raining.

b You can wear the hat if it's raining.

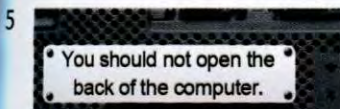
c It isn't a good idea to wear the hat if it's raining. ✓



- a It is a good idea to clean your teeth.

b This toothpaste is the best for cleaning your teeth.

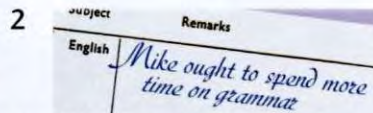
c It is a good idea to use the toothpaste two times a day.



- a It is necessary to open the back of the computer.

b It is impossible to open the back of the computer.

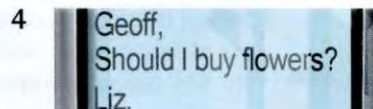
c It is a bad idea to open the back of the computer.



- a Mike is not interested in grammar.

b Mike should do more grammar.

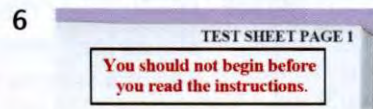
c Mike has no time for grammar.



- a Liz doesn't know if she needs to buy flowers.

b Liz wants Geoff to buy flowers.

c Liz thinks it is necessary to buy some flowers.



- a You ought to begin reading the test.

b Read the instructions first.

c This is not a test for beginner students.

D Give advice in the following situations using *should* or *ought to*.

- You are always tired in the mornings.
You should go to bed early.
- Your neighbour plays loud music at night.
.....
- You have nothing nice to wear to a party.
.....
- You don't know what to buy your father for his birthday.
.....
- You are waiting for a friend but he is very late.
.....
- There are mice in your house.
.....
- You want to be a pop star.
.....
- Your mum says you can't go to the party.
.....

MY TURN!

What advice would you give to tourists coming to your country? In your notebook, write six sentences using *should*, *shouldn't* or *ought to*.

Example: You ought to come in summer.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Children should in the bus, so that older people can sit down.
a stand up b standing up c to stand up
- You wear a hat in somebody's house.
a don't should b shouldn't c not should
- take off my shoes in the house?
a Should I b Do I should c I should
- When a man meets another man, he his hand.
a should shakes b should shake c should to shake
- You a thank-you email for the present.
a should to write b ought to wrote c ought to write

My Test answers: 1a 2b 3a 4b 5c

In 1925 a Greek photographer saw a strange thing in the Himalayas. It was like a man but much bigger. Since then many more people say they have seen it; they call it the Yeti. Is the Yeti real? It's possible, but we don't know for sure.

You **might** see a Yeti if you go to the Himalayas. There **may** be many Yetis or there **might not** be any. The Yeti **may** live very high in the mountains. It **may** be very **shy**. It **might not** want to meet people. It **mightn't** be very glad to see you (and you **mightn't** be very glad to see it!).



What is the Yeti? a A man b An animal c We don't know.

Modals of possibility: *may, might*

- 1 Use *may* or *might* to talk about the chance of something being true.

*The Yeti **may** live in the mountains.*

*It **might not** want to meet people.*

- 2 Use *might* instead of *may* if you think the chance is less certain.

*It **may** snow in the Himalayas next week. (It's cold in the mountains.)*

*You **might** see a Yeti there. (if they exist ...)*

- 3 We can also use *could* to talk about possibility (see Unit 20).

*We **could** go in summer.*

*Where **could** the Yeti be?*

- 4 *May, might* and *could* are followed by the infinitive without *to*.

*We **may / might / could** go by helicopter.*

- 5 The negative of *might* is *might not*, or (sometimes) *mightn't*. The negative of *may* is *may not*.

*It **might not / mightn't** be very glad to see you.*

*Many people **may not** return alive.*

TIP

Maybe is not the same as *may be*.

Maybe (one word) means 'possibly' and usually begins a sentence.

Maybe the Yeti is friendly. *Maybe* it lives in the mountains.

may be is two words: a modal (like *can* and *must*) + verb.

The Yeti *may be* friendly. It *may be* in the mountains.

Practice

A Match facts 1–8 to the possible reasons / consequences a–h.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 The sky is dark. | a She might be a model. |
| 2 She speaks English. | b It may rain. |
| 3 The tourists are lost. | c He might be hungry. |
| 4 You don't want to go to that hotel. | d You may be ill. |
| 5 She is beautiful. | e She might be American. |
| 6 You aren't at school. | f They may be in the car. |
| 7 I can't find my keys. | g It might be expensive. |
| 8 The baby is crying. | h They may not have a good map. |

B You are going on an expedition to find the Yeti. Use **may (not)** or **might (not)** and the information in the box to complete the sentences.

✓	✗
1 snow	2 not work
3 get lost	4 run away
5 not find the Yeti	6 not have enough food
7 follow	8 not attack
9 write a book	10 not survive

- It might snow very hard.
- The camera may / might not work in the cold.
- We might not work in the mountains.
- The Yeti might not attack.
- We might not find the Yeti.
- We might not have enough food.
- Animals might not follow us.
- The Yeti might not survive us.
- I might not write a book after the expedition but ...
- We might not survive!

C Captain Oakes is on an expedition to find the source of the river Ganges. Read his email and complete it with **may (not)** or **might (not)** and the words from the box.

be be find ~~get lost~~ have like need see work write

... I'm taking a good map because we ¹ might get lost.
 We ² might not have a **compass** too. I'm worried that we
³ might not have enough food but we can't carry more. I
 have my camera but it ⁴ might not work in the cold. So, we
⁵ might not find the source of the river but not get any
 pictures. This ⁶ might not be a good thing because the
 people who live there ⁷ might not believe it if we take pictures.
 Well, we ⁸ might not find the source of the river, but if we do
 I ⁹ might not write a book about our **expedition**. We
¹⁰ might not survive famous one day!

Captain Oakes

MY TURN!

Think of a possible explanation for each fact or situation using **may** or **might**. Write them in your notebook.

- You feel bad.
You might be ill. / You may have a cold.
- Your steak tastes terrible.
- A dog follows you home.
- You hear somebody knocking loudly at your door early in the morning.
- Your phone rings. You answer in English. The other person doesn't answer.
- You see a strange light in the sky.
- Your father has a free ticket to the opera but he doesn't want to go.
- A good friend hasn't spoken to you for two weeks.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The photographer's story
true.
a may don't be b not may be
c may not be
- My uncle's going to the Himalayas next year. He a yeti.
a may see b may sees c mays see
- Yetis able to speak.
a might to be b might be
c are might
- Are you sure you saw a Yeti?
was just a big man.
a Maybe it b Might be it
c May be it
- You this, but I saw a Yeti yesterday in your garden.
a might not to believe
b might not believed
c mightn't believe

My Test answers: 1c 2a 3b 4a 5c

A Complete the sentences using the words in the box. Sometimes two or three answers are possible.

can could have may might must mustn't
ought should

- 1 When you travel by bus, you must have a ticket.
- 2 When I was a young man, I run 10 kilometres, but now I'm too old.
- 3 My mum says I to come home before 10 o'clock.
- 4 I go home early today, please?
- 5 You to read this book – it's very interesting.
- 6 I'm going to take an umbrella because it rain later.
- 7 She speak French and Spanish, but her English is terrible.
- 8 What do you think? I do the exam this year or next year?
- 9 You watch television, but please keep it quiet.
- 10 Don't worry. You don't to buy me a present.
- 11 you give me some money, please? I've left my bag at home.
- 12 At the zoo, you give food to the animals. It's very bad for them.

B Match the sentences in Exercise A to these reasons for using modal verbs.

- | | |
|---|---------------|
| a talking about present ability (Unit 20) | 7 |
| b talking about past ability (Unit 20) | ..... |
| c asking people to do things (Unit 21) | ..... |
| d asking for permission (Unit 21) | ..... |
| e giving permission (Unit 21) | ..... |
| f talking about rules and laws (Unit 22) | ..... |
| g talking about things we are not allowed to do (Unit 22) | ..... |
| h talking about an obligation imposed by others (Unit 22) | ..... |
| i talking about something which is not necessary (Unit 22) | ..... |
| j asking for advice (Unit 23) | ..... |
| k giving advice (Unit 23) | ..... |
| l talking about the possibility of something being true (Unit 24) | ..... |

C Complete the sentences using the modal verbs from the boxes.

could will be able to can

- 1 Last year I could run 1500 metres in 5½ minutes.
- 2 Now I run 1500 metres in 5 minutes.
- 3 Next year I run 1500 metres in 4½ minutes.

must / have to will have to had to

- 4 Yesterday you wash the windows.
- 5 Today you wash my car.
- 6 Tomorrow you wash your clothes – they're very dirty.

will be able to, won't be able to could, couldn't
can, can't

- 7 When I was 5 I climb trees but I ride a bike.
- 8 Now I'm 14 I ride a bike but I drive a car.
- 9 50 years from now I drive a car but I climb trees.

didn't have to, had to have to, don't have to
won't have to, will have to

- 10 When I was small I do homework, but I go to bed early.
- 11 Now I do homework, but I go to bed early.
- 12 In 10 years I do homework and I go to bed early, but I get a job.

Write three more similar sentences about yourself.

.....

.....

.....

Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use two to four words including the correct form of the word in brackets

- 1 a It's a good idea to eat fruit and vegetables every day. (ought)
b You ought to eat fruit and vegetables every day.
- 2 a Maybe Sharon will know the answer. You should ask her. (might)
b You should ask Sharon. She might the answer.
- 3 a She'll be very good at playing the piano next year. (able)
b Next year she will be able to the piano very well.
- 4 a I want to open the window. Is that OK? (may)
b May I open the window, please?
- 5 a You must have clean hair before you go in the swimming pool. (have)
b Your hair must be clean before you go in the swimming pool.
- 6 a Bob will be ready in five minutes. Please wait in the garden. (could)
b Could you wait for Bob in the garden, please? He'll be ready in five minutes.
- 7 a It's possible that Anna isn't asleep. I'll phone her. (may)
b I'll phone Anna. She may be asleep.
- 8 a Don't worry. It's not necessary to wear a tie at the opera. (have)
b Don't worry. You don't have to wear a tie at the opera.

Tick ✓ the odd one out.

- 1 a You mustn't speak in the exam.
b You don't have to speak in the exam. ✓
c You can't speak in the exam.
- 2 a We may go home now.
b We should go home now.
c We ought to go home now.
- 3 a It might be sunny tomorrow.
b It may be sunny tomorrow.
c It has to be sunny tomorrow.
- 4 a May I sit here?
b Must I sit here?
c Can I sit here?

- 5 a I can't understand her.
b I wasn't able to understand her.
c I couldn't understand her.
- 6 a Could you be quiet?
b Can you be quiet?
c Should you be quiet?

F Complete the dialogue with the modals from the box. Sometimes there is more than one correct answer.

be able to can / can't could have to may might must ought should

- Alice: Where are you going on holiday?
Brad: To Switzerland. We're going skiing.
Alice: Really? ¹ can you ski?
Brad: Well, I ² could ski quite well when I was a child, but that was 10 years ago. I think I ³ might have some problems.
Alice: No, you'll be fine. You'll ⁴ be able to be careful on the first day, but after a day or two of lessons you'll ⁵ be able to ski quite fast.
Brad: Lessons? ⁶ should I have an instructor?
Alice: Hmm ... yes, I think you ⁷ should to have some lessons. You don't ⁸ have to, but it's a good idea.
Brad: I don't know. It ⁹ might be expensive.
Alice: It ¹⁰ might be. Just a second, my friend is a ski instructor. He ¹¹ can know a cheap instructor in Switzerland. You ¹² should call him.
Brad: Great. ¹³ can I have his number, please?
Alice: Er ... I ¹⁴ can't remember it. But my mum ¹⁵ can know it.
Brad: Great. ¹⁶ should you ask her?
Alice: Of course.

sciencemagazine sciencemagazine sciencemagazine

This week Dr Stephen Elliot answers your questions about beetles.



Q Are beetles important?

A People often ask me this, and the answer is, **yes, they are!** Beetles are important because they feed on dead plants and animals.

Q Do beetles lay eggs?

A **Yes, they do.** Then the eggs change into larva, pupa and adult beetle. This is called metamorphosis.

Q There are 350,000 species of beetle. Is this true?

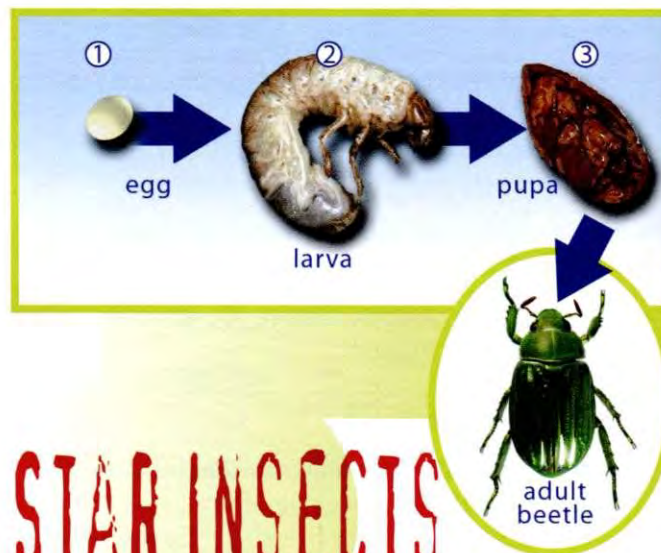
A **No, it isn't** – there are probably more! We just haven't found and named them all yet!

Q Do beetles live everywhere?

A **No, they don't.** Beetles don't live in the sea. But beetles were living on Earth before dinosaurs were here – and they have adapted to almost every **habitat**.

Q Have beetles adapted to the Arctic?

A You may not believe this – but **yes, they have!** The Arctic beetle can live in temperatures of -40°C !



STAR INSECTS



True or False? Beetles only live in warm countries.

Answer: False

Yes / no questions and short answers

- 1 To make a yes / no question, put the auxiliary verb (e.g. *am, is, are, has, have*) before the subject.

Is this true? Have beetles adapted to the Arctic?

auxiliary verb	subject	...?
Is	he / she / it	OK?
Am	I	happy?
Are	you / we / they	living here?
Has	he / she / it	arrived?
Have	I / you / we / they	found it?

TIP

Yes / no questions in English always have an auxiliary verb.

Do you come from here? NOT *You come from here?*

- 2 If there is no auxiliary verb, use *do* or *does*.

Does it have wings? Do beetles lay eggs?

auxiliary verb	subject	...?
Does	he / she / it	look good?
Do	I / you / we / they	have a question?

- 3 Make a yes / no answer with just the subject pronoun and the auxiliary verb.

A: *Is it true?* B: Yes, it **is**. / No, it **isn't**.

A: *Are you cold?* B: Yes, I **am**. / No, I'm **not**.

A: *Has she arrived?* B: Yes, she **has**. / No, she **hasn't**.

A: *Have beetles adapted to the Arctic?*

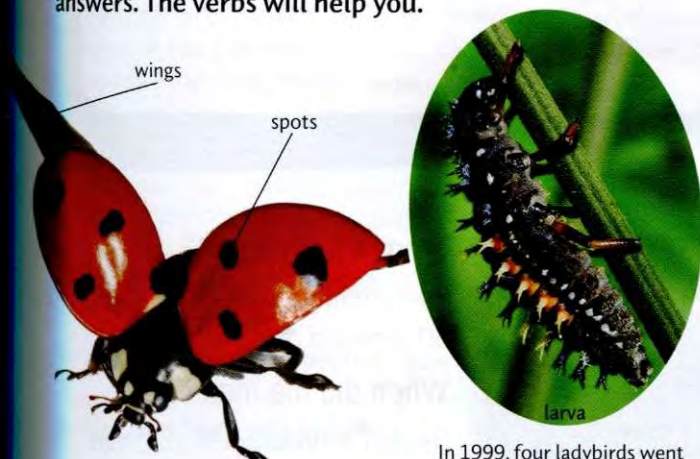
B: Yes, they **have**. / No, they **haven't**.

A: *Does it look good?* B: Yes, it **does**. / No, it **doesn't**.

A: *Do beetles lay eggs?* B: Yes, they **do**. / No, they **don't**.

Practice

A Match these questions about ladybirds to the correct answers. The verbs will help you.



In 1999, four ladybirds went into space in a NASA space shuttle. They came back alive.

- | | |
|---|---------------------|
| 1 Are ladybirds beetles? | a Yes, they do. |
| 2 Are all ladybirds red and black? | b No, they aren't. |
| 3 Do ladybirds lay eggs? | c No, it isn't. |
| 4 Have ladybirds adapted to all habitats? | d No, they haven't. |
| 5 Is the ladybird larva red? | e Yes, they are. |
| 6 Does the ladybird larva have black spots? | f Yes, it has! |
| 7 Has a ladybird been in space? | g No, it doesn't. |

B Your aunt and uncle have a holiday house. You are going to stay there this summer, but you have some questions. Complete their answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 Is it close to the beach? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Yes, it is. |
| 2 Is it big? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No, it isn't. |
| 3 Does it have a swimming pool? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 Is my cousin Silvia coming too? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Has Silvia been there recently? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Are the neighbours friendly? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 Do the neighbours know we're coming? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 Have you left the keys with the neighbours? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

C Use the words in the table to make eight or more different questions and write them in your notebook.

Have	beetles	have	eggs?
Do	a bee	ever seen	wings?
Does	mosquitoes	ever picked up	spots?
	you	lay	a ladybird larva?
			a worm?
Is		important?	
Are		black and yellow?	

Examples: Do mosquitoes lay eggs?
Are mosquitoes important?

MY TURN!

You are coming to visit your grandmother in the USA. At the airport, the immigration officer asks you some questions. Make the questions using the words in brackets and write them in your notebook.

- (your name / Marco de Silva)
Is your name Marco De Silva?
- (over 18)
- (more than one bag)
- (live / in the USA)
- (grandmother / living / in the USA)
- (been / to the USA / before)
- (staying / for more than a month)

Now answer the questions in your notebook using the information below.

NAME: Marco De Silva

AGE: 16

LIVES: Capri

REASON FOR VISIT:
Visiting grandmother. First visit.

LENGTH OF STAY: 2 weeks

NUMBER OF BAGS: 2



- Yes, it is.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Sorry, late?
a Do I b Are I c Am I
- A:? B: Yes, some beetles eat dead fish.
a Do beetles eat fish
b Are beetles eat fish
c Eat beetles fish
- A: Are beetles very intelligent?
B: No, They have very small brains.
a it isn't b they don't c they aren't
- A: Have you ever eaten a beetle?
B: No, I
a don't b didn't c haven't
- A: Does your pet beetle have a name?
B: Yes, he His name's Ringo.
a has b does c have

My Test answers: 1c 2a 3c 4c 5b

Question words: *Where? When? Why? How? Whose?*

How did he die?

In 1984 a farmer found a body in a field in Lindow Moss near Manchester. The farmer called the police. Scientists found that the person died 2,000 years ago. It was a very important archaeological discovery. They called it 'The Lindow Man'. There were many interesting questions for scientists and archaeologists to ask and answer.



Whose body was it?

It was a man's body. He was about 30 years old.

When did the man die?

He died in about 55 BC (55 years Before Jesus Christ was born).

How did he die?

The Celts – the people of Britain at that time – killed him with an **axe**.

Why did they kill him?

We don't know!

Where is the body now?

It is in the British Museum.



Underline the correct option: A farmer *found / killed* the Lindow Man.

found: answer

Question words: *Where? When? Why? How? Whose?*

Where, When, Why, How and *Whose* are question words.

1 Use *Where ...?* to ask about place.

A: *Where* is Lindow Moss? B: It's near Manchester.

A: *Where* are my shoes? B: Next to the door.

2 Use *When ...?* to ask about time.

A: *When* is your birthday? B: 7 July.

A: *When* did you get home? B: Ten o'clock.

3 Use *Why ...?* to ask about reason.

A: *Why* are you wet? B: It's raining.

A: *Why* did you become a teacher? B: I like children.

4 Use *How ...?* to ask about the way things are or the way people feel.

A: *How* did you get home? B: By taxi.

A: *How* are you? B: I'm fine, thank you.

5 Use *Whose ...?* to ask about who has something.

A: *Whose* is this? B: It's hers.

A: *Whose* army invaded Russia in 1812? B: Napoleon's army.

6 The word order is: question word + auxiliary (e.g. *is, did, will*, etc.) + subject + main verb.

question word	auxiliary	subject	main verb
<i>When</i>	<i>will</i>	<i>they</i>	<i>understand</i>
<i>Where</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>going?</i>
<i>Why</i>	<i>did</i>	<i>Jane</i>	<i>cry?</i>

7 *Whose* can come before a singular or plural noun. *Who* can refer to people, animals or things.

A: *Whose* bag is it? B: It's Barry's.

Whose streets are cleaner – London's or Manchester's?

► See Unit 50 for more information on *whose*.

► See Units 27 and 28 for *Who ...?* and *What ...?* questions and Unit 30 for more *How ...?* questions.

Practice

A Make questions by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 did / he / live / where *Where did he live?*
- 2 is / why / he / famous ?
- 3 farmer / the / did / body / where / the / find ?
- 4 it / whose / farm / was ?
- 5 when / did / invade / the / Britain / Romans ?
- 6 did / the / Celts / why / him / kill ?
- 7 do / about / know / people / how / this ?
- 8 him / see / we / can / where ?

B Write *Where, When, Why, How* or *Whose*.

- 1 *How* was your trip?
- 2 is the British Museum?
- 3 do they know he died 2,000 years ago?
- 4 will the museum be open?
- 5 axe was it?
- 6 is the Lindow Man so famous?
- 7 did the farmer feel?
- 8 can you come with me to see the Lindow Man?

C Complete the questions with *Where, When, Why, How* or *Whose* and a form of *be* or *do*. Then choose the correct answers from the box.

An apple Brazil ~~Egypt~~ eleventh
George Washington Greece horse Microsoft

- 1 Question: *Where are* the Pyramids?
Answer: They are in *Egypt*.
- 2 Question: the Normans invade England?
Answer: They invaded in the century.
- 3 Question: picture
on an American \$1 note?
Answer: It's a picture of .
- 4 Question: the 1896 Olympics?
Answer: They were in .
- 5 Question: Newton discover *gravity*?
Answer: fell on his head.
- 6 Question: Bill Gates leave university?
Answer: Because he wanted to create the company.
- 7 Question: national dance
the *samba*?
Answer: It's the national dance of .
- 8 Question: the Greeks enter Troy?
Answer: They hid in a wooden .

D Write questions with *Where, When, Why, How*, and *Whose*.

- 1 *Whose birthday cake is it?*
It's my birthday cake.
- 2 *When is your birthday?*
It's tomorrow.
- 3 I usually celebrate it at home.
- 4 Because my family is there
- 5 Last year? Oh, I celebrated it with a big party!
- 6 That was my idea.
- 7 It started early, about 4 o'clock.
- 8 It started then because my gran goes to bed at 9.
- 9 I invited her because she's a great cook!

MY TURN!

Read the first paragraph of a detective story. In your notebook, write questions about it using all the question words *Where, When, Why, How* and *Whose* at least once.

Chapter 1

The man is alone. It is cold and wet but he isn't wearing a coat. He has been here a long time. He wants to leave but he can't. The police are not here yet. The man is afraid, very afraid. Suddenly, he hears a voice. He doesn't recognise the voice but he understands everything. The man runs back to his car. The car won't start. He sees a face in the mirror. He screams.

Examples: *Where is he? Why is he alone?*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 body did the farmer find?
a Why b Whose c Where
- 2 How more about Lindow Man?
a I learn b I can learn c can I learn
- 3 Why broken *bones*?
a did the body have b had the body c the body had
- 4 we going to the museum?
a When do b Where do c When are
- 5 A: I can't find my book. B: I'll help you. Where looked?
a did you b you have c have you

My Test answers: 1b 2c 3a 4c 5c

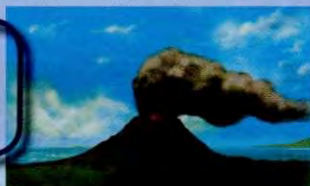


Do you know the answers to any of these questions?

Facts Everyone Should Know

1

What happened on
24 August, 79 AD?



4

What did Sir Alexander
Fleming discover in 1928?



2

Who did
Romeo love?

5

Who lives at 1600 Pennsylvania
Avenue, Washington D.C.?

3

Who studied
at Hogwarts?



6

What happens in the ninth month
of the Muslim calendar?

Answers: 1 Mount Vesuvius destroyed Pompeii. 2 Juliet. 3 Harry Potter. 4 He discovered penicillin. 5 The President of the United States. This is the official address for The White House. 6 Ramadan: Muslims do not eat during the day in Ramadan.

Object and subject questions

- 1 Object questions. In questions beginning with *who* or *what* and using the auxiliary verb *do*, *does* or *did*, the question word is the object.

A: *Who* did John Lennon marry in 1969?

B: He married *Yoko Ono*.
(Who / Yoko Ono = object)

A: *What* does she want?

B: She wants *a new car*.
(What / a new car = object)

- 2 Subject questions. If the question word is the subject, we don't use the auxiliary verb *do*, *does* or *did*.

A: *Who* discovered penicillin?

B: *Alexander Fleming* discovered penicillin.
(Who / Alexander Fleming = subject)

A: *What* happens in November in the USA?
(What / Thanksgiving = subject)

B: *Thanksgiving*.

TIP

In a subject question, the verb after the question word is in the third person singular, even when the answer is plural, e.g.

A: *Who lives at number 42?* B: *Elena and Chris*.

Practice

A Make questions by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 Who / love / did / Scarlett O'Hara? e
Who did Scarlett O'Hara love?
- 2 What / on 4 April 1968 / happened? □
- 3 Who / *Around the World in 80 Days* / wrote? □
- 4 landed on Mars / What / in 1976? □
- 5 Who / Will Smith / marry / in 1997 / did? □
- 6 invent / did / What / Frank Whittle? □
- 7 in 1969 / What / Neil Armstrong / do / did? □

Now match answers a–g to questions 1–7.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| a Jules Verne | e Rhett Butler |
| b He walked on the moon. | f The jet engine |
| c Viking 1 | g The assassination of |
| d Jada Pinkett | Martin Luther King, Jr. |

B Write complete questions using the present simple or the past simple of the verbs in the box.

destroy invent live love paint sing about write

- 1 What / Miguel de Cervantes? *What did Miguel de Cervantes write?* *Don Quixote*
- 2 Who / at 10 Downing Street? *Who was the British Prime Minister?*
- 3 What / most of San Francisco in 1906? *What happened?* *An earthquake*
- 4 Who / Mary Jane Watson? *Who was Spider-Man?*
- 5 Who / *Sunflowers*? *Who painted?* *Vincent Van Gogh*
- 6 What / Tim Berners-Lee? *What did he invent?* *The World Wide Web*
- 7 Who / Elton John in his song *Candle in the Wind*? *Who wrote?* *Marilyn Monroe*

C Read the texts and write a question for each answer.

There was an accident in our road yesterday. A driver was going down the road too fast. A bird hit the car roof and surprised the driver. The driver came off the road and hit a tree.

- 1 *What did the car hit?* ? A tree.
- 2 *What hit the car?* ? A bird.

Matt likes cats but Kelly likes birds.

- 3 *Who likes cats?* ? Birds.
- 4 *Who likes birds?* ? Matt.

My mum told my neighbour that I didn't like school. And my neighbour told my teacher!

- 5 *Who told me that I didn't like school?* ? My mum.
- 6 *Who told my teacher that I didn't like school?* ? My teacher.

The world makes money and money makes the world go round.

- 7 *What makes the world go round?* ? Money.
- 8 *What makes money go round?* ? Money.

MY TURN!

You have the chance to go on a sports activity course, but you are not sure if you want to go. In your notebook, write questions to ask the organisers, using *who* or *what* and the words in the box.

teach happen can come wear bring contact

Example: *What do you teach on the course?*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 A: Who ? B: Tolstoy. a did write *War and Peace* b did *War and Peace* write c wrote *War and Peace*
- 2 A: What ? B: The Harry Potter books. a write J K Rowling b wrote J K Rowling c did J K Rowling write
- 3 A: What on 31 August 1997? B: Princess Diana died in a car crash. a happened b did happen c happens
- 4 A: Who on the left side of the road? B: British and Japanese people. a drive b drives c does drive
- 5 A: What every February or March? B: The Carnival. a happen in Rio b does happen in Rio c happens in Rio

WHO are the X-Men?

The X-Men first appeared in comic books published by Marvel Comics in the 1960s.

WHAT are X-Men like?

X-Men are people who are born with superhuman powers.

WHAT do X-Men look like?

X-Men are very similar to humans but they are a little different. They may have strange-coloured skin, for example.

WHAT does Wolverine look like?

He has dark hair, blue eyes and claws.

WHAT'S he like?

Wolverine is good-looking. He is more than 100 years old, but he is still very strong. He can see and hear very well.



Wolverine is one of the most popular X-Men.



What superhuman powers does Wolverine have?

Answer: He is very strong and he can see and hear very well.

Be like and look like

- Use the questions *What is ... like?* and *What does ... look like?* to find out about a person's looks.
A: *What does Wolverine look like?* B: *He has dark hair and blue eyes.*
A: *What is Wolverine like?* B: *He is good-looking.*
- We can also use the question *What is ... like?* to find out about a person's character.
A: *What's he like?* B: *He is still very strong. He can see and hear very well.*
- Use the question *What is / was it like?* to ask for a description of the weather, a place or an event.
A: *What was the weather like yesterday?*
B: *It was really hot.*
A: *What's Mexico City like?* B: *It's very big and busy.*
A: *What was the football match like?* B: *It was great!*

TIP

What ... like? is not the same as *How's ...?*

A: *What's Jo like?* B: *He's really nice.*

A: *How's Jo?* B: *He's fine.*

- The plural forms of the questions are *What are ... like?* and *What do ... look like?*

What	is	he / she / it	like?
What	are	you / we / they	like?
What	does	he / she / it	look like?
What	do	you / we / they	look like?

- Other verbs similar to *look like* include *feel like*, *smell like*, *sound like* and *taste like*.
What does the coat feel like?
What do olives taste like?
What does the flute sound like?
What does the sea smell like?

TIP

Generally, we don't include the word *like* in the answers to these questions.

A: *What does he look like?*

B: *He is tall and he has a beard.*

Practice

A Match the questions to the correct answers.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| 1 What does Batman look like? | a It's one of the largest cities in Italy and it's very fashionable. |
| 2 What is Superman like? | b They're always strong and they usually have a good heart. |
| 3 What is Milan like? | c They're usually ugly. |
| 4 What's the book like? | d He wears a black suit and a mask. |
| 5 What do witches look like? | e It's funny, but also a little sad. |
| 6 What are superheroes like? | f He has short, dark hair and he wears a red and blue suit. |

B Complete the questions using the verbs in the box.

feel like ~~look like~~ smell like sound like taste like

- | | | | | |
|----------------|----|-------------|-----------|---|
| 1 A: What | do | butterflies | look like | ? |
| B: Beautiful. | | | | |
| 2 A: What | | sulphur | | ? |
| B: Very bad. | | | | |
| 3 A: What | | honey | | ? |
| B: Very sweet. | | | | |
| 4 A: What | | feathers | | ? |
| B: Very soft. | | | | |
| 5 A: What | | drums | | ? |
| B: Very loud. | | | | |

C In your notebook, write eight or more questions using *What ... like?*, *What ... look like?* and the words in the table.

What	do	your grandparents	like?
	does	the party	look like?
	did	Harry Potter	going to
	is / 's	Charlie Chaplin	be like?
	are	the weather	
	was	Superman and Lois	
	were	the first computers	

Example: *What was Charlie Chaplin like?*

MY TURN!

Write appropriate questions for these dialogues, using *What ... like?*, *What ... look like?* and *How ...?*

- | | | |
|------|---|---|
| 1 A: | <i>What are your neighbours like</i> | ? |
| B: | They're kind and friendly. | |
| 2 A: | | ? |
| B: | She's tall and dark. | |
| 3 A: | | ? |
| B: | She's feeling better now, thanks. | |
| 4 A: | | ? |
| B: | It's an Italian island in the Mediterranean. It's very beautiful. | |
| 5 A: | | ? |
| B: | It was by the sea and very modern. I had a lovely room. | |
| 6 A: | | ? |
| B: | I'm fine, thanks. | |
| 7 A: | | ? |
| B: | It was great. Everyone was there! | |
| 8 A: | | ? |
| B: | They're quite old now but they are still good-looking! | |
| 9 A: | | ? |
| B: | He's tall and he wears glasses. | |

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- | | | | | | |
|--|----------|---|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 A: What | like? | B: He is very friendly, but he worries a lot. | a does Iceman look | b is Iceman look | c is Iceman |
| 2 A: What does Iceman's skin | like? | B: It's cold and hard. | a feel | b smell | c sound |
| 3 A: | like? | B: It was really good. I loved it. | a How was the film | b What did the film | c What was the film |
| 4 A: How is your sister? | B: She's | | a very pretty | b friendly | c fine, thanks |
| 5 A: What does your brother look like? | B: | | a He likes football | b He's tall and thin | c He's very nice |

My Test! answers: 1c 2a 3c 4c 5b



What kinds of bees do you know? There are many different kinds of bees, but which bees make honey? Honey bees, of course! Every family of honey bees has one - and only one - queen bee.

Look at the three pictures of bees. Which of them is the queen? Look carefully. Which one has the longest body? Yes, the bee in picture 2. This is the queen bee. Picture 1 is a drone and picture 3 is a worker.

What work does the queen do? She doesn't make honey - the workers do that. The queen bee is the mother of all the drones and workers. The workers give special food to the queen. What food is this? It is called 'royal jelly' and only queen bees eat it.



Complete the sentence. makes honey.

a The worker bee b The drone c The queen bee

Answer: a

What? and Which?

- 1 Use both *What* or *Which* + singular and plural nouns to ask questions.

What colour is a honey bee?

Which bees are dangerous?

What food does a queen bee eat?

- 2 Use *What* + noun for general questions when there are many possibilities, and *Which* + noun when there is a small or limited number of possibilities.

What language do they speak in Timbuktu? (many possibilities)

Which language shall we use - Japanese or English? (two possibilities)

- 3 We say *What time ...?*, *What kind(s) of ...?* and *What size ...?*

What time is it?

What kinds of bees do you know?

What size are these jeans?

- 4 Use *Which of ...* + pronoun or *the*.

Which of them is the queen?

Which of the answers do you know?

- 5 We say *Which one(s) ...?*

Which one would you like?

Which ones are worker bees?

► See Unit 27 for how to make *What ...?* questions.

Practice

A Complete the questions using **Which** and a noun from the box.

bed car planet team telephone way



- 1 Which team is winning? 2 _____ is mine? 3 _____ shall I go?



- 4 _____ am I on? Earth? 5 _____ is ringing? 6 _____ do you want?

B Complete the questions with **What** or **Which**.

- 1 A: What colour is it? B: It's blue.
2 A: _____ season do you prefer: summer or winter?
B: Winter.
3 A: _____ music do you like? B: I like jazz.
4 A: _____ game are you playing? B: We're playing chess.
5 A: _____ book is Janet reading?
B: She's reading *Charlie and the Chocolate Factory*.
6 A: _____ school did you go to – Sheffield High or Sheffield Grammar? B: I went to Sheffield High School.

C Underline the correct option.

- 1 What / Which time do you go to bed?
2 What / Which one do you want?
3 What / Which size are you?
4 What / Which of the films have you seen?
5 What / Which kind of music do you like?
6 What / Which of her books is the best?
7 I don't know what / which time it is.
8 A: Here's your pizza, Sir.
B: What / Which pizza? I didn't order any!
9 A: What / Which university is older, Cambridge or Oxford?
B: Oxford.
10 A: Good morning, Jane Smith calling.
B: I'm sorry, I can't hear you. What / Which name was that?

MY TURN!

Write **What** or **Which** questions about bees in the correct places in the dialogue.

- Beekeeper: Hello, nice to meet you.
1 What questions do you have about bees?
You: I can see a lot of bees! 2 _____?
Beekeeper: This one with the yellow spot.
You: 3 _____?
Beekeeper: Honey bees live in many countries.
You can find them on four continents.
You: 4 _____?
Beekeeper: Antarctica. It's too cold! There are seven main types of honey bee but none of them live there.
You: 5 _____?
Beekeeper: I have European honey bees. They make great honey.
You: 6 _____?
Beekeeper: My honey, of course!

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 I don't know the difference between bees and **wasps**. Which _____ is dangerous? a from them b of them c of they
2 A: _____ food do wasps eat? B: Mostly they eat other insects. a Which b Which of c What
3 _____ the flowers in your garden do the bees like? a Which b What c Which of
4 A: What _____? B: Orange and black or brown and black. a are honey bees colour b colour are honey bees c colour honey bees are
5 A: _____ homes do wasps live in? B: Paper **nests**. a What kind of b How kind c What kind

Swimming the Channel: Frequently Asked Questions

How many people have swum the Channel?

Around a thousand people have swum the Channel, the sea between England and France. The 'Queen of the Channel', Alison Streeter, has swum it 38 times.

How far is it?

The direct route is 32 kilometres from Shakespeare Beach, Dover to Cap Gris Nez, France.

How long does it take?

It takes 10–20 hours, depending on how good you are at swimming and the weather.

ENGLAND

32 km

FRANCE

How cold is the water?

The water temperature is from 13–17° in summer. The cold is probably the biggest problem in swimming the Channel.

How much should I practise?

A lot! You will need to swim for one or two hours a day. Some of this training must be in open water.

How often should I eat during the swim?

Eat every half-hour. Eating in the water is not easy, so practise.



Complete the sentence with the names of two countries:

The Channel goes between E..... and F.....

Answer: England; France

How ...? questions

- 1 Use **How** + an adjective or an adverb in questions.

How cold is the water?

How hungry are you?

How late did you get home?

- 2 Use **How far** ...? to ask about distance.

A: *How far is it from London to Paris?*

B: *One hour by plane.*

A: *How far did you drive?* B: *600 kilometres.*

- 3 Use **How long** ...? to ask about time or length.

A: *How long is the film?* B: *It's two hours long.*

A: *How long is the canal?* B: *About 200 kilometres.*

TIP

Use **How long does it take?** to ask about how much time you need to go somewhere or do something.

A: *There's a plane to Paris.*

B: *How long does it take?*

A: *One hour.*

- 4 Use **How often** ...? to ask about frequency.

A: *How often do you go swimming?*

B: *Every day. / Twice a week.*

A: *How often is Steven here?*

B: *He only comes on Tuesdays / Not very often.*

- 5 Use **How many** ...? with plural countable nouns.

How many people have swum the Channel?

How many eggs do we need?

- 6 Use **How much** ...? with singular uncountable nouns.

How much food shall we take?

How much time do you need?

- See Unit 40 for more information on countable and uncountable nouns.

- 7 Use **How much** ...? without a noun to ask about the price or quantity of something.

A: *How much does it cost?* B: *Eleven euros.*

A: *How much did she eat?* B: *A lot!*

- See Unit 26 for more information on **How** in questions.

Practice

A Match the questions to the correct answers.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 How wide is the Channel? | a Very. 400 ships cross the Channel every day. |
| 2 How important is it? | b About 200 euros. |
| 3 How deep is it? | c Between 32 and 240 kilometres |
| 4 How many types of fish live there? | d Rarely, the water is usually calm . |
| 5 How often are there big storms in the Channel? | e 300,000 people visit it every year. |
| 6 How long does it take to get through the Channel tunnel ? | f It's about 120 metres in the middle. |
| 7 How much does a ticket through the tunnel cost? | g 20 minutes on most trains. |
| 8 How popular is Dover Castle? | h There are about 1,000 different kinds. |

B Complete the questions with the words in the box.

far fast good long much often old

- A: How old is your grandmother?
B: She's 85 tomorrow.
- A: How _____ is your house from school?
B: It's about a ten-minute walk.
- A: How _____ is her English?
B: She speaks it almost perfectly.
- A: How _____ are you staying in Madrid?
B: We're only here for the weekend.
- A: How _____ does it cost?
B: Seven euros.
- A: How _____ does it go?
B: About 60 kilometres an hour.
- A: How _____ do you go to the cinema?
B: Once a month.

C Complete each question b so that it means the same as question a. Use one to three words.

- a Does Alison Streeter train hard?
b How hard does Alison Streeter train?
- a Do you swim every day or every week?
b How _____ swim?
- a What is the temperature of the water in the Channel?
b How _____ the water in the Channel?
- a What is the distance from England to France?
b How _____ from England to France?
- a Did you swim the Channel quickly?
b How _____ take you to swim the Channel?
- a Did you eat a lot during the swim?
b How _____ eat during the swim?

MY TURN!

Now write at least five questions with *How ...?* that you'd like to ask an Olympic athlete.

Example: *How often do you train?*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- A: How _____ were you when you first swam the Channel? B: I was 15 years old.
a old b many c age
- A: How _____ did it take you to swim the Channel? B: About 18 hours.
a long time b many time c long
- A: How _____ water should I drink? B: About 5 litres.
a much b many c often
- A: How _____ do they go swimming? B: Five times a week.
a long b often c many
- A: How _____ to go swimming in your city? B: Five euros.
a many it costs b much it costs c much does it cost

My Test answers: 1a 2c 3a 4b 5c

home | chat | message boards | contact us | links

THE 123 CHATROOM *for teens only*

SEND US YOUR COMMENTS.

Tell us things you don't need in your life.

[emma]	Easy. My brother. Maths. Winter. Milk chocolate – I don't like it.
[nicko]	Neither do I. Dark chocolate is the best.
[suzi and abi]	Hello, Emma! You're right. Winter is so boring.
[todd]	Hi, everyone. I think winter is OK.
[nicko]	Me too. I love snow. And there's football ... I'm a Manchester United fan .
[todd]	So am I. ☺
[emma]	I hate football. ☹
[suzi and abi]	So do we. And cabbage . Does anyone like cabbage?
[emma]	No.
[todd]	Yuk!



? Who hates football?

Answer: Emma, Suzi and Abi.

So and neither

- Use **so** + auxiliary verb + subject to mean 'too' or 'also'.
A: I'm a Manchester United fan.
B: **So am I!** (= I'm a Manchester United fan, too.)
A: I think winter is OK.
B: **So do I.** (= I think winter is OK, too.)
A: I hate football.
B: **So do we.** (= We hate football, too.)
- The negative is **neither** + auxiliary verb + subject.
A: I don't like it.
B: **Neither do I.** (= I don't like it either.)
- Use the same auxiliary verb after **so** or **neither** as the auxiliary verb in the original statement.
A: I **am** a football fan.
B: **So am I.**
I've never been to Spain. **Neither has** my brother.
- If there is no auxiliary verb in the original statement, use a form of **do**.
A: Nicko **likes** white chocolate.
B: **So does** Todd.
A: I **hate** football.
B: **So do** we.
- After **so** and **neither** the auxiliary verb comes before the subject.
So am I. NOT ~~So I am.~~
Neither does she. NOT ~~Neither she does.~~
- Instead of **So am I** or **So do I** we can say **Me too**. Instead of **Neither am I** or **Neither do I** we can say **Me neither**.

TIP

You can pronounce **neither** with an /aɪ/ or an /i:/ sound. The first is more common in Britain, the second in the USA.

Practice

A Match each sentence to an appropriate reply.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 I'm tired today. | a So can I. |
| 2 I'm not working this weekend. | b So was I. |
| 3 I don't come here often. | c Neither do I. |
| 4 Frank plays tennis really well. | d So has her sister. |
| 5 I haven't heard the new CD yet. | e Neither am I. |
| 6 Isabel has been to the USA lots of times. | f So does his brother. |
| 7 She can count to 20 in German. | g So am I. |
| 8 My friends were on holiday last week. | h Neither have I. |

B Suzi and Abi always agree. Write Abi's replies to what Suzi says (two replies each time).

- | <suzi> | <abi> |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 I am 16. | So am I Me too |
| 2 I chat on the website every evening. | |
| 3 I don't eat chocolate. | |
| 4 I am good at English. | |
| 5 I don't watch horror movies. | |
| 6 I hate football. | |
| 7 I'm not going out this weekend. | |
| 8 I think winter is boring. | |

C Write sentences about Suzi and Abi using the information in Exercise B.

- 1 *Suzi is 16 and so is Abi.*
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8

D Write replies to the following statements using *so* or *neither* and the subject in brackets.

- 1 A: We are ready!
B: (we) *So are we!*
- 2 A: Are your parents coming to the show?
B: No, they're not and (my friends)
- 3 A: Maria's studying medicine.
B: (her sister)
- 4 A: I didn't understand what he said!
B: (I)
- 5 A: My dad hasn't been here before.
B: (my mum)
- 6 A: I was up late last night.
B: (I)

7 A: I thought the film was great.

B: (we)

8 A: I can't see the board.

B: (I)

9 A: Mrs Jacobs isn't very polite.

B: (her husband)

10 A: They live in the city centre.

B: (my cousins)

11 A: I'm really cold.

B: (I)

12 You weren't listening!

B: (you)

MY TURN!

Complete the table with information about yourself. Which people have the same opinions? Write sentences in your notebook.

	Me	Emma	Todd	Nicko
likes cabbage		no	no	no
likes Maths		no	yes	no
is a Manchester United fan		no	yes	yes
thinks winter is boring		yes	no	no

Example: *Todd likes Maths and so do I!*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 My cat is beautiful and so my dog.
a do b does c is
- 2 A: I've never used a chatroom. B:
a So have I b Neither have I c Neither I have
- 3 A: You shouldn't say bad things about your brother.
B:
a So shouldn't you b Neither shouldn't you
c Neither should you
- 4 A: Robert isn't coming to the party.
B: Neither Paul and Jack.
a are b is c do
- 5 Emma chatted last night for four hours. So
a Todd did b did Todd c does Todd

Q&A

What do you know about your health?



1 Chocolate is bad for you, isn't it?

Not really. Chocolate has a lot of calories but this is only a problem if you eat too much of it.

2 Coffee stops you sleeping, doesn't it?

Yes, it does. The caffeine in coffee is a stimulant, so it isn't a good idea to drink coffee before you go to bed.

3 Vitamin tablets aren't necessary, are they?

No, they aren't. Taking vitamins every day is definitely not a good idea.

4 Teenagers need to sleep more than adults, don't they?

Yes, they do. A 14-year-old needs eight or nine hours sleep a night. Seven hours is fine for most adults.

5 We shouldn't sunbathe, should we?

No, we shouldn't. Not in the middle of the day. Too much sunlight can be bad for you.



Underline the correct option: It is better to drink coffee in the *morning* / evening.

ing morning

Question tags

- 1 Use question tags in conversation to check information or to check that the listener agrees with you.

Chocolate is bad for you, isn't it?

You phoned the doctor, didn't you?

It's a lovely day, isn't it?

- 2 A sentence with a question tag has a main clause (*You know Simon ...*) and the question tag (*... don't you?*). The question tag has an auxiliary (e.g. *is, do, have*) or a modal (e.g. *will, can*) + a subject pronoun.

main clause question tag

He's coming, isn't he?

They won't go, will they?

If there is no auxiliary or modal, use the correct form of *do*.

You know Dr Jones, don't you?

The doctor didn't phone, did she?

TIP

I'm in the main clause → *aren't I* in the question tag.
I'm right, *aren't I*?

- 3 Usually, if the main clause is affirmative, the question tag is negative.

She's a doctor, isn't she?

It could help, couldn't it?

If the main clause is negative, the question tag is affirmative.

You don't feel well, do you?

Mike won't be in hospital long, will he?

TIP

The intonation on the tag rises if it is a real question (i.e. if the speaker is not sure of the answer).

Canberra isn't the capital of Australia, is it?

Sydney is bigger.

The intonation on the tag falls if the speaker is sure of the answer.

You're American, aren't you? You have an American accent.

- 4 Make a short answer with a subject pronoun and an auxiliary verb.

A: You're OK, aren't you? B: Yes, I am.

A: Did you see the doctor? B: No, I didn't.

► See Units 25 and 31 for more information on short answers.

Practice

A Match the sentence beginnings to the correct tags.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------|
| 1 You don't like pizza, | a isn't it? |
| 2 It's a fact | b aren't I? |
| 3 The children know, | c won't they? |
| 4 I'm not going, | d did it? |
| 5 His mum hasn't phoned, | e do you? |
| 6 They'll remember, | f can't he? |
| 7 It didn't rain, | g has she? |
| 8 Simon can come, | h am I? |
| 9 I'm the winner, | i don't they? |

B Complete the questions with the correct tags.

- You're Mr Smith, aren't you ?
- We aren't late, _____ ?
- I'm next, _____ ?
- He's having a meeting, _____ ?
- The dog won't **bite**, _____ ?
- You had fun at the party, _____ ?
- Your wife knows, _____ ?
- The workers made a mistake, _____ ?
- It hasn't snowed, _____ ?
- You don't have a brother, _____ ?

C Write affirmative (✓) or negative (X) short answers.

- Is it 6 o'clock? (✓) Yes, it is.
- Do you know Glenda? (X) No, I don't.
- Are you ready, Simon? (✓) _____
- Is this my pen? (X) _____
- Did Dave tell you? (✓) _____
- Have you two had dinner? (X) _____
- Can your cat swim? (✓) _____
- Are the children coming? (X) _____

D Sarah is a runner. She is talking to her doctor. Complete the dialogue with the correct question tags.

- Doctor: Hello, you're Sarah, ¹ aren't you ?
- Sarah: Yes, I am. I'm not late, ² _____ ?
- Doctor: No, don't worry. Now, your back isn't feeling good, ³ _____ ?

Sarah: No, the pain is terrible. You don't have any aspirin, ⁴ _____ ?

Doctor: Aspirin won't help. You've stopped training, ⁵ _____ ?

Sarah: Almost. **Jogging** is all right, ⁶ _____ ?

Half an hour a day won't do any harm, ⁷ _____ ?

Doctor: I suppose not.

E Change these statements into affirmative or negative questions with question tags.

1



2



3



4



1 It's a dog, isn't it?

2 _____

3 _____

4 _____

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write at least six questions with tags to ask a friend about a party he / she has been to. Ask about the guests, the music, the food, the time he / she left, etc.

Example: *The food was good, wasn't it?*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- She eats a lot of chocolate, _____ ? a isn't she b don't she c doesn't she
- The doctor will tell me to do more exercise, _____ ? a won't she b she won't c doesn't she
- I'm getting very suntanned, _____ ? Maybe I'm sunbathing too much. a am not I b aren't I c amn't I
- You haven't been ill for a long time, _____ you? a do b were c have
- A: They shouldn't take vitamins every day, should they? B: No, _____ . a they should b shouldn't they c they shouldn't

A Match the questions about Rosa to the correct answers.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 Is Rosa beautiful? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> h |
| 2 When is her birthday? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Has she been to India? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 What does she like? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 What's she like? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Why does she speak English well? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 Who likes her? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 Who does she like? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 Where does she live? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 How is she? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
- a She's very nice.
 b In February.
 c We all like her. She's very popular.
 d Yes, she has.
 e Because her dad is from Scotland.
 f She likes Brad Pitt. She thinks he's cool.
 g She likes horses and dancing.
 h Yes, she is.
 i Not very well. She feels sick today.
 j In the city centre.

B Make questions by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 of / What / like / do / kind / music / you?
 What kind of music do you like? ?
- 2 book / Who / favourite / wrote / your? ?
- 3 your / are / How / parents / old? ?
- 4 you / do / computer / Whose / use? ?
- 5 are / friends / your / What / like? ?

6 visited / How / have / many / you / countries? ?

7 eyes / are / What / your / colour? ?

8 games / you / How / do / often / computer / play? ?

9 school / How / it / to / take / does / get / long / to? ?

Now answer the questions for yourself.

C Complete the dialogues, using question tags, short answers and so or neither.

- 1 A You're 15, *aren't you* ?
 B No, *I'm not* . I'm 14.
 A Really? *So am I* !
- 2 A You write poems, ?
 B No, . I write songs.
 A Do you? !
- 3 A You didn't go to Phil's party, ?
 B Yes, . But I didn't go to Helen's party.
 A Didn't you? !
- 4 A You can't speak Chinese, ?
 B Yes, . But I can't speak Korean.
 A Can't you? !
- 5 A You've lived here for eight years, ?
 B No, . I've lived here for 11 years.
 A Have you? !
- 6 A You don't like mushrooms, ?
 B Yes, . But I don't like fish.
 A Don't you? !
- 7 A Your sister is going on holiday to Peru, ?
 B No, . She's going to Chile.
 A Is she? my sister!
- 8 A Your brother has broken his arm, ?
 B No, . He's broken his leg.
 A Has he? my brother!

D Put the dialogue in the correct order. Write numbers 2–13 next to the lines.

1	a	A: Are you going to the concert tonight?
	b	B: Er ... no, I don't. Hey, the ticket has a photo of the band. Which one is your brother?
	c	A: No, he doesn't. He's a drummer. Have you heard him play?
	d	A: Because I prefer small concerts. I don't like it when hundreds of people are shouting.
	e	A: He's the one with long black hair and a big black hat. Do you think he looks cool?
	f	A: So do I. It's going to be really good. Did you know my brother is playing?
	g	A: Oh yes. He's fantastic. How many people will be there tonight?
	h	A: Heavy metal and hard rock. Do you like rock music?
	i	B: No, I haven't. Is he good?
	j	B: No, I didn't. Oh, I remember. He plays guitar, doesn't he?
	k	B: Neither do I. What kind of music does your brother play?
	l	B: Yes, I am. I love concerts.
	m	B: I don't know. Maybe 500. Why?
14	n	B: Er ... maybe.

E Complete each question with one word from Box A and one word from Box B.

A						
How	How	How	How	How	What	What
What	Which	Whose				

B						
coffee	far	kind	like	long	many	much
often	one	time				

- A: How far is it from the Earth to the Moon?
B: 384,403 km.
- A: _____ does rabbit meat taste _____?
B: It's a bit like chicken.
- A: _____ do you visit your grandparents?
B: About six times a year.
- A: _____ of computer games do you like?
B: I love fantasy games.
- A: _____ hats do you have?
B: Three. Two winter hats and a sun hat.
- A: _____ is this?
B: It's John's, he drinks about five cups a day.
- A: _____ were your shoes?
B: I paid 50 euros for them.
- A: We have four different pizzas. _____ do you want? B: Can I have that one, please?
- A: _____ is the journey from London to New York? B: About 7½ hours.
- A: _____ do you usually go to bed?
B: Between 10 pm and 11 pm.

F Read the text, then write a question for each answer.

Hi. My name's Tom and I'm 13 years old. I love computers. When I was 6 years old, I opened my mum's computer to see how it worked. She was very angry, because I couldn't put it back together. But I kept all the pieces and learnt about them, and when I was 8, I made a new computer for my mum. It was better than the old one, so she was very happy. Now I write computer games. I put my first game on my website when I was 10, and my friends all loved it. They said it was fantastic. I've written about eight games now, and they're all really good. Last week a man from a big software company wrote to me. He says he likes my new game, 'Ice Jungle', and he wants me to write games for them. So next week I'm going to London for a meeting. I'm very excited.

- How old is Tom ? He's 13 years old.
- _____ ? Computers.
- _____ ? His mum's.
- _____ ? Yes, she was. She was very angry.
- _____ ?
Because he couldn't put it back together.
- _____ ?
On his website.
- _____ ?
About eight.
- _____ ?
A man from a big software company.
- _____ ?
His new one, 'Ice Jungle'.
- _____ ?
To London.

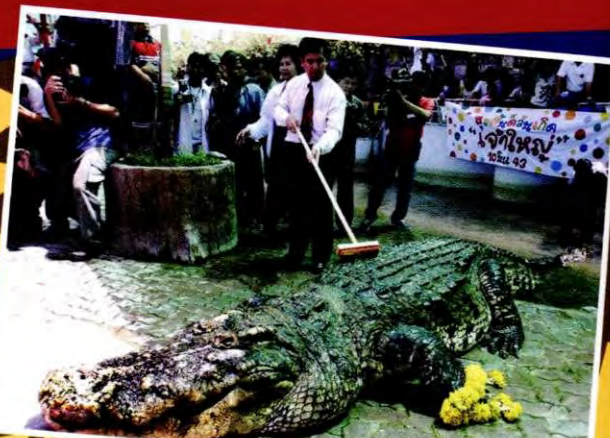
The Samutprakan Crocodile Farm (Thailand) **has got** over 60,000 crocodiles. The farm **has** a zoo, **it's got** a research centre and the shops, of course, **have** lots of crocodile souvenirs. Mr Utai **had the idea** of opening the museum in 1950. He **had some free time** yesterday to answer questions.

Question: **Does** the farm **have** any unusual crocodiles?

Mr Utai: **We've got** the biggest crocodile in the world. Come and see it **have breakfast** tomorrow morning!

Question: **Have you got** any plans for the future?

Mr Utai: I'm going to **have** a crocodile TV show. Crocodiles **haven't got** a good image. Hollywood films only show crocodiles trying to eat people! We need to **have** more information about crocodiles.



Underline the correct option: Mr Utai eats / likes / sells crocodiles.

Answer: likes

Have and have got

- 1 We can say *have* or *have got*. *Have* is more common. We can use *have got* in conversation, especially in British English.

The farm has a zoo.

It has got over 60,000 crocodiles.

Does the farm have any unusual crocodiles?

- 2 In the past and future, we can only use *have*.

I'm going to have a crocodile TV show.

In 1950 the zoo didn't have many crocodiles.

Did the shop have any crocodile T-shirts yesterday?

- 3 We can use *have* + noun for many everyday activities.

Have with activities can be in the continuous form.

He didn't have much free time yesterday.

The crocodile is having breakfast.

You can have:

*an accident / a break / a rest / a sleep / a cold
tea / coffee; breakfast / lunch / dinner; a sandwich
a chat / a discussion / a talk
fun / a good time / a nice day / a holiday
a shower / a bath / a swim / a run / a walk*

- 4 We do not use *have got* in the future or past. We use *have* instead.

I had a dog but it died. NOT ~~I had got a dog...~~

- 5 Make questions and negatives with *have* using the auxiliary verb *do*.

Do you have a pen? She doesn't have it.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / We / They	have	do not (don't) have
He / She / It	has	does not (doesn't) have

question ?	short answer ✓/✗
Do I / you / we / they have ...?	Yes, (I) do. No, (I) don't.
Does he / she / it have ...?	Yes, (he) does. No, (he) doesn't.






- 6 Make negative forms of *have got* with *not*. Make questions with *Have / Has* + subject + *got* ...?

	statement ✓	negative ✗
I / You / We / They	have ('ve) got	have not (haven't) got
He / She / It	has ('s) got	has not (hasn't) got

question ?	short answer ✓/✗
Have I / you / we / they got ...?	Yes, (I) have. No, (I) haven't.
Has he / she / it got ...?	Yes, (he) has. No, (he) hasn't.

Practice

A What do these people have? Use the information to make at least eight sentences with an appropriate pronoun and *have*, and write them in your notebook. Some sentences are negative.

					
Me	✓		x		
Me and my brother		x		✓	
Sarah			✓		x
Brian		x		✓	
Tom and Lucy	x				x

Examples: *I have a dog. We don't have a sister.*

B A crocodile keeper is talking about his work. Underline the correct option. Sometimes both options are possible.

'I ¹have / have got a great job but it's very hard! The crocodiles ²have / have got breakfast at 6 o'clock and some ³have / have got special diets. After breakfast, we ⁴have / have got a walk around the farm. Many visitors ask me, 'Do crocodiles ⁵have / Have crocodiles got fun in the farm?' I always answer, 'Of course!' They ⁶have / have got a great time in the shows and we ⁷have / have got lots of nice visitors. Last year I ⁸had / had got a holiday in England and I went to London Zoo. The zoo ⁹had / had got a lot of crocodiles but they ¹⁰didn't have / hadn't got a special crocodile research centre. ¹¹Do you have / Have you got any questions?'

C Complete the sentences with the present or past of *have* or *have got* to make them true. Some sentences are negative.

- Bill Gates doesn't have / hasn't got a university degree.
- The English alphabet 26 letters.
- Princess Diana a daughter.
- Penguins wings.
- Water vitamins.
- The Romans a big **empire**.
- Cats nine lives.
- A beach volleyball team two players.

D Write sentences with *have (got)* in the present, past or future. Some are negatives or questions.

- I have a dog; it's very nice.
- We haven't got an uncle but we've got an auntie.
- Did you have a cold last week?
- She green hair. It looks strange!
- All my friends mobile phones but I don't.
- James couldn't run because he a broken leg.
- France a King or Queen now.
- I want to a holiday in Thailand.
- Sharon your new phone number?
- We a chat about it last night.
- Are you going to a swim?
- We time to coffee because we were late.
- A: your new house a garden?
B: Yes, it

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write at least six questions, using *have* and *have got*, that you would like to ask a famous person.

Example: *Have you got a big house?*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- How many teeth? a has a crocodile b has a crocodile got c a crocodile has got
- When he was a child, he a baby crocodile as a pet. a had b has got c had got
- A: Have crocodiles got cold blood? B: Yes, they a do b have got c have
- They fish for breakfast. a usually have b usually have got c have usually got
- a nice time at the farm? a Have you got b Are you having got c Are you having

Are you a good friend?

maybe

no

yes

Read our questionnaire and answer the questions.

a You **get a text message** from a friend. Do you reply immediately?

yes

no

maybe

b Your friend has **made a cake**, but it tastes horrible. Do you tell him or her?

yes

no

maybe

c Your best friend has **done something really stupid**, and tells you about it. Do you tell your other friends?

yes

no

maybe

d You helped your friend **do her homework**, and she **gets a good mark**. Do you tell the teacher?

yes

no

maybe

e Your friend uses your phone and **makes a lot of calls**. Do you **get angry**?

yes

no

maybe

f Do you always **get your friends a present** on their birthdays?

yes

no

maybe

Find out your score! a yes 5, maybe 3, no 0; b yes 0, maybe 3, no 5; c yes 0, maybe 0, no 5; d yes 0, maybe 0, no 5; e yes 3, maybe 3, no 5; f yes 5, maybe 3, no 3
KEY: 24-28 = You're a GREAT FRIEND! Your friends are lucky to know you.
13-23 = FAITHFUL FRIEND. You're a good friend, and you always think of others first. (But it's a good idea to tell your friends what you need, too.)
0-12 = You're NO FRIEND! (and soon you'll have no friends.)



What do you think? Are you a good friend?

Make, do and get

- 1 Use **make** to talk about producing something.
make a cup of coffee, make a cake, make a meal

When we say who we are making it for, we can say:

I made my dad a cake. OR I made a cake for my dad.

She makes them lunch. OR She makes lunch for them.

► See Unit 37 for more verbs with two objects.

- 2 Use **do** to talk about work and activities (which often end in -ing). You can do:

an exam the shopping

exercise the washing

(your) homework the washing-up

- 3 **Make** and **do** are used in a number of expressions.

You can **make**:

the bed a mistake a plan sure

a decision money a phone call a promise

friends a noise

You can **do**:

your best nothing well / badly

- 4 **Get** can have different meanings. Use **get** + object to mean 'receive' or 'obtain'. You can **get**:

a bad / good mark

a letter

some milk from the shops (= buy)

a present

a text message

- 5 Use **get** + adjective to mean 'become'.

angry cold late

better dark older

bigger

- 6 We can use **get** in other expressions. You can **get**:

on / off (a bus)

dressed

up

to (= arrive)

back (= return)

lost

a bus / train (= travel on)

married

TIP

We say **get to school** but **get home** (without to).

Practice

A Write each word / phrase from the box under the correct verb.

breakfast a dress an exam exercise homework
a job a paper plane a salad the shopping the washing

do	make
	breakfast

B Match the sentence beginnings to the most appropriate endings.

How to be a good friend ...

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 Text messages are fun but it's better to make | a friends. |
| 2 Don't be jealous if a friend makes new | b a phone call. |
| 3 Be happy when a friend does | c mistake. |
| 4 And listen to her when she has done | d your best. |
| 5 Talk to your friends before you make an important | e well. |
| 6 Say sorry if you make a | f money. |
| 7 Nobody is perfect – just do | g badly. |
| 8 It's more important to make friends than make | h decision. |

C Complete the sentences using a form of *get* and words from the box.

angry ~~a really bad mark~~ better dressed
late lost married some milk older
any text messages up

- I'm going to stay home and study tonight.
I got a really bad mark in my Maths exam.
- My friend has been in hospital but she is slowly
- It's OK to if you talk about it later.
- It's We should go home.
- My mobile phone isn't working. I don't like it when I don't
- My brother is in February.
Lots of people are coming to the wedding.
- You will probably need to wear glasses when you
- Could you me
..... from the shop, please?
- I didn't take a map and I soon
- I late this morning. I
..... and had breakfast in ten minutes!

MY TURN!

Make up the questions for a questionnaire and write them in your notebook. Use the options in brackets and *do*, *make* and *get*.

- Your mum is feeling very tired. (a cup of coffee or a sandwich?)
Do you make her a cup of coffee or make her a sandwich?
- You're hungry but the fridge is empty. (a pizza or the shopping?)
- It's a sunny Sunday in the summer. (up early or up late?)
- Your younger brother is really hungry but your mum and dad are not at home. (a snack or some lunch?)
- You are late for school. (the bus or to school late?)
- It's the summer holidays soon but you don't have any money. (a job or nothing?)

Now answer the questions.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- It's my best friend's birthday, so I'm going to
a make a card her b make a card to her
c make her a card
- When you meet new people, is it easy to friends with them?
a make b do c get
- My friend doesn't always get good grades, but he always his best.
a does b makes c gets
- I'm sorry I'm late. I lost, and I couldn't find the café.
a made b did c got
- Our plane was late, and we at midnight. It was terrible.
a got to home b made home c got home

My Test answers: 1c 2a 3a 4c 5c

FOOD FACTS

Look at a menu in a restaurant in the United States and you'll find *French fries*. But don't **ask for** *French fries* when you go to France. The French call them *pommes frites* which means 'fried potatoes'.



Do you **worry about** too much salt in your **diet**? Then listen to this – you need a little salt. Your body **depends on** salt for healthy **blood pressure**.



Think about it! Salmon **belongs to** a group of fish which have Omega-3. Omega-3 helps you think!



Why is salt good for you?

Answer: Your body needs it for healthy blood pressure.

Prepositional verbs

- 1 Prepositional verbs have two words. The two words are: verb + preposition.

Think about it!

Don't ask for French fries.

I'm listening to some music.

Other verbs include:

(dis)agree with	depend on	learn about	suffer from
believe in	get off	look after	talk about
belong to	get on	look at	wait for
come across	go with	look for	worry about
consist of	laugh at	pay for	

- 2 Sometimes the meaning of the verb + preposition is very different from the meaning of the verb on its own.
I didn't get many birthday presents.
Get off the bus at the next stop.

- 3 Some verbs can be followed by a different preposition to give a different meaning.
Look at the menu.
I'm looking for my glasses – have you seen them?
We looked after my neighbour's dog last weekend.

- 4 Questions which begin with a *Wh-* word and use prepositional verbs often finish with the preposition.
What are you looking at?

► See Units 26 and 27 for more information on forming questions.

Practice

A Complete these food facts with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

come across consist of depend on
go with look after suffer from

- Rosemary is the perfect herb to go with all kinds of meat.
- Pineapples** came to Europe in 1493 when Christopher Columbus discovered them in the Caribbean.
- An apple **floats** in water because it contains 25% air.
- Exercise your body – eat at least five portions of fruit or vegetables every day.
- A lot of people in my family suffer from high blood pressure.
- Half of the world's population eat rice in their diets.

B Underline the correct option.

- The politician agreed with / on everything the journalist said.
- I want to go skiing this weekend, but it depends on / of the weather.
- I'll ask for / to some help.
- My parents are always worrying in / about something.
- I was looking for / after my keys when he came in.
- I'm not waiting to / for Flavia. She's always late.
- I was just thinking about / on you.
- He suffers from / of a lot of headaches.
- That dog belongs to / in the waiter.
- In this morning's History class we learnt about / of The Cold War.

C Complete the sentences with the correct verbs from the box.

believe come depend get get go look look

- We don't get off here. It's the next station.
- Do you believe in ghosts?
- Nurses have to depend after some difficult people.
- Go on the train! It's leaving!
- Look at this photo in the paper.
- That shirt doesn't go with your trousers.
- I've just found across some old photos at the back of the cupboard.
- Julia visits my grandparents every day. They really care on her.

MY TURN!

Write appropriate questions for these replies. Use the verbs from the box in the correct tense.

agree with belong to laugh at listen to look at pay for
talk about think about

- A: What are you thinking about? B: Nothing much. I'm just really tired.
- A: Who agrees with Joe? B: Me. We always like the same films.
- A: What do you think of my new CD? B: My new CD.
- A: What did you say? B: Colin just told me a really funny joke.
- A: What's that jacket? B: That jacket in the window.
- A: What are you doing? B: Oh, everything – their friends, their families, their jobs.
- A: What did you forget? B: Me. I forgot to take it home last night.
- A: What's your brother like? B: My brother. He's got lots of money!

Now use the verbs to make up your own questions and answers (at least five) about your friends. Write them in your notebook.

MY TEST!

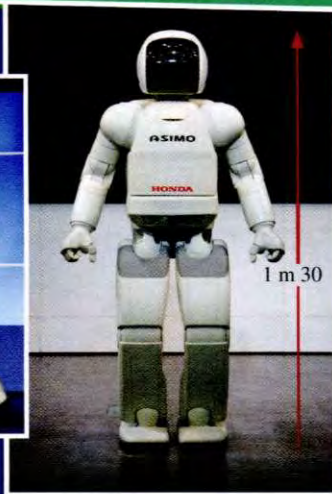
Circle the correct option.

- I'm looking for the salt, but I can't find it. Have you seen it? a at b after c for
- A: What are you waiting for? B: You. We didn't want to start eating without you.
a are you waiting for b you are waiting for c for are you waiting
- A: Who does this 'Food Facts' book belong to? B: It's Alan's. a depend on b consist of c belong to
- I don't worry in diets. I think they're a waste of time and money. a believe b agree c worry
- Sorry – I've forgotten my money. Could you pay for me? a for me pay b me pay for c pay for me

Do you need a friend to welcome you home, **wash up** and **tidy up** your room? And never **tell you off** or need to **lie down**? Sadly for you, that's still just a dream. But things could get better with ... Asimo.

Just some of the things Asimo can do:

- turn lights on
- carry things
- **wave**
- recognise ten different faces
- climb steps
- run (without falling over – not easy for a robot!).



Honda's Asimo is the most advanced humanoid robot in the world. One day Asimo may help people or work in places which are dangerous for humans.

FACT

But it's not all good ...

You need to **charge up** Asimo after only one hour. Each Asimo robot costs nearly \$1 million to make.



What can Asimo not do?

- a wave b run
c work all day d go upstairs

Phrasal verbs

- 1 Phrasal verbs have two words. The two words are: verb + adverb particle. Some phrasal verbs have an object and some don't.

Asimo can't **tidy up** your room.

Asimo doesn't need to **lie down**.

- 2 Some phrasal verbs which we often use without an object are:

break down	get up	run away	wake up
find out	hurry up	sit down	wash up
get back	lie down	stand up	

- 3 Some phrasal verbs which we commonly use with an object are:

charge up	put on	throw away	turn off / on
look up	take back	tidy up	
pick up	tell off	turn down	

- 4 There are some verbs we can use in both ways, e.g. **give up**, **take off**, **turn up**.

He's **given up** smoking.

Never **give up**!

Sometimes the verb has a different meaning in each case.

The plane has just **taken off**. (no object = leave the airport)

Take **off** your shoes, please. (with object = remove)

They **turned up** late. (no object = arrive)

Can you **turn the music up**? (with object = make louder)

- 5 If the phrasal verb takes an object, it can usually go before or after the adverb particle.

Asimo can **turn lights on**.

Asimo can **turn on lights**.

But the object always comes before the adverb particle if it is a personal pronoun.

Asimo can **turn them on**.

NOT ~~Asimo can turn on them.~~

TIP

We often use prepositional and phrasal verbs in informal speech and writing and one-word verbs in more formal contexts. For example, *We returned in the evening* is more formal than *We got back in the evening*.

TIP

Some verbs mean the same if they are used as one-word verbs, but then they sound more formal, e.g. **wake** = **wake up**, **tidy** = **tidy up**, **lie** = **lie down**, **sit** = **sit down**.

► See Unit 35 for more information on prepositional verbs.

Practice

A Complete the text using the phrasal verbs from the box in the correct tense.

break down find out get back lie down
hurry up ~~run away~~ take off wake up

I hadn't seen Jason for six weeks. He ¹ ran away after the fight with his brother. I got a postcard from New York and that was all I knew. Where was he? Was he OK? I had to ² On the last night in November I ³ late. I ⁴ on the sofa and fell asleep right there. When I finally ⁵, it was 10 o'clock the next morning. For a moment I couldn't think what day it was. And then I remembered – it was Sunday and today I was going to find Jason. ⁶, Jack, I said to myself. 'The plane mustn't ⁷ without you.' It was icy cold outside. I threw my bags in the car and started the engine. The car jumped forward and stopped. I couldn't believe it. This was not a good time for the car to ⁸

B Rewrite each phrasal verb sentence using an appropriate noun object instead of the pronoun. Rewrite each sentence in two different ways.

- My mum says I can't go out until I have tidied it up.
My mum says I can't go out until I have tidied my room up / until I have tidied up my room.
- Take them off! The sun isn't shining in the house.
.....
- The beach is really dirty. People should pick it up when they go home.
.....
- It's too dark in here. Turn them on!
.....
- I can't ring Louie. I need to charge it up first.
.....
- Let's have a party! Turn it up!
.....
- They were writing on the wall. The policeman told them off.
.....
- When you sit in a car, you need to put it on.
.....
- You can't leave. I've locked the door and thrown it away.
.....

C Complete the dialogues using the verbs in the box and appropriate adverb particles. Use the structure: verb + pronoun + adverb particle.

give look put ~~take~~ tell throw turn turn

- A: I bought these shoes but they're too small.
B: Take them back!
- A: What do you think of this hat?
B: It's great! Why don't you?
- A: I don't know what this word means.
B:
- A: The music is too loud.
B: Why don't you?
- A: The little girl was really rude to me!
B: Why didn't you?
- A: We've had these biscuits for weeks.
B:
- A: The TV is boring.
B: Why don't you?
- A: I don't enjoy learning to play the piano.
B: Why don't you?

MY TURN!

What activities would you like a robot to do for you? Write at least five sentences in your notebook using verbs from page 88.

Example: I'd like it to tidy up my bedroom.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- I always leave my dirty clothes on the floor. Asimo and washes them.
a picks them up **b** them picks up **c** picks up them
- Asimo can clean your shoes, but you have to them off first.
a turn **b** take **c** tell
- This robot is broken, so I'm going to take to the shop.
a it back **b** back it **c** back
- Asimo my T-shirt. He thought it was rubbish!
a ran away **b** broke down **c** threw away
- Asimo always after a meal.
a looks up **b** picks up **c** washes up

My Test answers: 1a 2b 3a 4c 5c

ARE YOU ASSERTIVE?

Answer the questionnaire to find out.

- 1 You lend your friend €80, but she doesn't give it back. Do you ...

a ask for the money back?
b never lend money to her again?
c forget about it?

- 2 Your uncle gives you a book for your birthday. You already have it. Do you ...

a tell him the truth?
b take it and give it away?
c say thank you and keep it?

- 3 A classmate sells your young sister his bike. It doesn't work. Do you ...

a ask for your money back?
b ask for a little money back?
c buy your sister a new bike?

- 4 A friend sends an email to some classmates. You see it. There is some information about you which is not true. Do you ...

a make sure your friend tells your classmates the truth?
b send an email to your classmates?
c not go to school for a week?

Mostly a answers:
you're very assertive. No one worries you.

Mostly b answers:
you're a diplomat, but is that always the best thing?

Mostly c answers:
life is not easy for you. How can you change this?



What do you think? Are you assertive?

Verbs with two objects

- 1 Some verbs have two objects. Examples include *bring*, *buy*, *get*, *give*, *lend*, *make*, *offer*, *read*, *sell*, *send*, *show*, *tell*, *throw*.

subject	verb	direct object	to	indirect object
You	lend	€80	to	your friend.
She	sends	an email	to	some classmates.

- 2 We can also put the indirect object first and take out *to*.

	verb	indirect object	+ direct object.
You	lend	your friend	€80.
NOT You lend to your friend €80.			

TIP

With the verb *tell*, we prefer to say:*I told him the truth.* NOT ~~I told the truth to him.~~

- 3 Use *for* not *to* with *buy*, *get* and *make*.

*She bought lunch for me.**She got some milk for him.**We made a cake for our parents.*

Again, we can put the indirect object first.

She bought me lunch. NOT ~~She bought for me lunch.~~*She got him some milk.**We made our parents a cake.*

Practice

A Rewrite the questions without *to* or *for*.

- 1 Your friend has a new haircut. It doesn't look good. Do you tell the truth to your friend?
Do you tell your friend the truth ?
- 2 You were playing with your sister's phone and now it's not working. Do you get a new phone for your sister? ?
- 3 Your cousin wants to go out on Saturday night. You don't want to go. Do you phone or send a text message to him? ?
- 4 An old woman gets on the bus. There are no seats. Do you offer your seat to the old woman? ?
- 5 Your mum is not feeling well and doesn't want to make lunch. Do you make lunch for your family? ?
- 6 Your Maths teacher talks very fast and you don't understand the lessons. Do you tell the problem to her? ?
- 7 You want to learn to drive, but you have no money. Does your dad give driving lessons to you? ?

B What are the people doing? Use the words in brackets and make sentences similar to the example.



He is showing the teenager / her the CDs.
(show the CDs)



(lend his jacket)



(make a cake)



(give some flowers)



(throw the frisbee)



(buy some balloons)

C In your notebook, write at least six different sentences using these words.

the woman
me
her
the boy
I

a cup of tea
a new bike
a present
a message

to
for

made
sold
gave
sent

Example: *The woman gave me a cup of tea.*

MY TURN!

What can you do for these people? In your notebook, write suggestions using the verbs in brackets.

- 1 It's your mum's birthday. (buy)
Buy her a present. / Buy a present for her.
- 2 Your little cousins are bored. (read)
- 3 A poor man needs help. (give)
- 4 Your little brother is hungry. (make)
- 5 I'm thirsty. (bring)
- 6 A friend doesn't know the answer to 12 x 12. (tell)
- 7 A friend needs to make a phone call. (lend)

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 Do you remember? I lent last week.
a €80 you b to you €80 c you €80
- 2 Why did you tell ?
a her my secret b to her my secret
c my secret her
- 3 I think you've got my phone in your bag. Can you show, please?
a me to it b it for me c it to me
- 4 I've these earrings for you. Do you like them?
a made b given c lent
- 5 When you go to the shop, you can buy
a to me a present b for me a present
c me a present

My Test answers: 1c 2a 3c 4a 5c

Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive; like and would like

Learn to speak any language in two weeks!

Do you like travelling? Do you enjoy meeting people? Do you want to communicate with people easily? Would you like to speak other languages? If your answer is 'yes' to any of these questions then we have the product for you – **Super Lingo!**

Learn to speak any language in two weeks with our new **Super Lingo!** system. Yes, two weeks! And thanks to your big vocabulary, you won't need to carry a dictionary around with you.

If you decide to try **Super Lingo!** then telephone 095 973 2593 or send an email to i.smith@superlingo.net. We promise to give your money back if you're not happy.

We hope to hear from you soon!



Underline the correct option: Super Lingo! is a dictionary / a study programme / a language school.

Answer: a study programme

Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive; like and would like

- Some verbs, e.g. *enjoy*, take another verb with *-ing*.
I enjoy learning English.
I finished talking.
- Some verbs, e.g. *want*, take another verb with *to-infinitive*.
I want to learn English.
I decided to try the course.
- Some can take either *-ing* or *to-infinitive*.
I like helping people.
OR *I like to help people.*

Only -ing	Only to-infinitive	-ing or to-infinitive
avoid	decide plan	begin
enjoy	hope promise	continue
finish	intend refuse	hate
mind	learn wait	like
suggest	need want	love
	offer	prefer
		start

TIP

Very much is an adverb, so it cannot go between the verb and the object.

I like playing tennis very much.

NOT *I like very much playing tennis.*

► See Unit 56 for more information on the word order of adverbs.

TIP

When you learn a new verb, learn what comes after it.

decide /dɪ'saɪd/

► **verb 1** **E** [I OR T] to choose something, especially after thinking carefully about several possibilities: *They have to decide by next Friday.* ○ *I don't mind which one we have – you decide.*
○ [+ to INFINITIVE] *In the end, we decided to go to the theatre.*

- Would like** (short form: 'd like) is one way of saying *want* or *might want*. The negative is *would not* (short form: *wouldn't*). Use *Would you like* + *to-infinitive* for a polite invitation.

I would like to learn Greek one day.

You wouldn't like to be in a strange town without any money.

Would you like to come to the cinema with me?

Practice

A Complete the sentences using the verbs in brackets in the **-ing** or **to-infinitive** form.

- Do you promise to tidy your room this weekend (tidy)?
- I've always wanted a dog (have).
- Would you mind the window, please (open)? It's too hot here.
- Dogs don't enjoy at home all day (be).
- Philip refused to my advice (listen).
- Did the hotel offer your room (change)?
- Children love to the circus (go).
- We don't need an umbrella with us (take).
- You should avoid too many sweet things (eat).
- The workers finished the house (paint).

B Rewrite these sentences using the correct forms of **like** and **would like**.

- Do you want a banana?
Would you like a banana?
- I enjoy playing tennis.
- My dream is to be a chef.
- Do you want to see my paintings?
- Going to the theatre is interesting for us.
- Can I get you a drink?

C Underline the correct option.

Most teenagers like ¹spend / spending time in front of the TV, but is this a good thing? Is TV just a way of avoiding ²to do / doing something more useful? Some people think that most TV programmes are not right for teenagers. 'Teenagers need ³to have / having better programmes,' agrees TV producer Erica Johnson. 'Our TV company promises ⁴to make / making educational programmes which teenagers will enjoy ⁵to watch /

watching.' Erica suggests ⁶to create / creating a special channel for teenagers. 'Teenagers want ⁷to be / being different, so a different channel is a good idea. TV is a great way of learning. Teenagers can learn ⁸to understand / understanding the world through television.' What do teenagers think? Emily, 13, said, 'It's a bad idea. We have enough channels already. I wouldn't like ⁹to see / seeing one more.' Erica said, 'We are planning ¹⁰to show / showing the first programme on this new channel next spring.'

D Complete the email with the verbs from the box. The verbs should be **-ing** or **to-infinitive** forms.

buy **complain** get hear learn listen spend
study teach write

To: i.smith@superlingo.net

I want ¹ to complain about Super Lingo. My wife and I decided ² Super Lingo because we needed ³ Arabic very quickly for a business trip. You promised ⁴ us Arabic in two weeks. We started ⁵ a month ago and finished ⁶ to all the CDs last week. And now? We know nothing! Super Lingo is useless! The course was very difficult and boring. We certainly didn't enjoy ⁷ hours translating poems from Arabic into English.

I was very angry, so my wife suggested ⁸ this email to you. Please give us back our money immediately; we'd like ⁹ it this week. We hope ¹⁰ from you soon.

Jane & Peter Stevens

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write at least six true sentences about yourself using the verbs on page 92.

Examples: I want to be a doctor.
My uncle likes skiing very much.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- If you want to learn a language, you need for years and years. a study b studying c to study
- I've to learn Russian. a finished b decided c enjoyed
- I studying every day. a don't mind b don't want c don't need
- The Super Lingo! system didn't work, but they refused me my money back. a to give b to gave c giving
- like to buy my Super Lingo! system? a Do you would b You would c Would you

39

State verbs

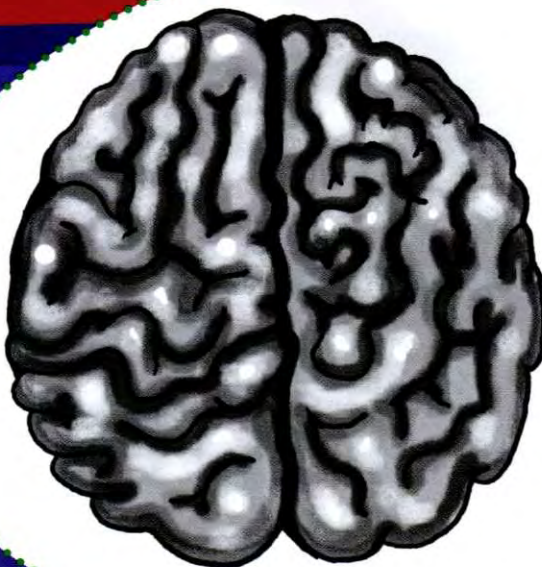
Imagine a story.

Do you **know** that your brain is actually divided into two halves?

Scientists today **believe** that the two halves of your brain **have** different functions. When you **remember** things like words, numbers or lists, you are exercising the left side of your brain. When you **see** colours, **hear** the **rhythm** in your favourite song or **imagine** a story, you are using the right side of your brain.

When you are using only one side of your brain, it is similar to walking on only one leg. It **seems** learning is easier when you use both sides of your brain.

LEFT
words
numbers
lists



RIGHT
colours
rhythm
imagination



True or False? The left and right sides of the brain are the same.

Answer: False

State verbs

- 1 State verbs usually describe a state and not an action. We usually use them in the simple form, not the continuous.

When you **see** colours ... NOT ~~When you are seeing~~...

- 2 Other state verbs include:

verbs of thinking and knowing

forget
imagine
know
mean
realise
recognise
remember
understand

verbs of the senses

feel
hear
see
smell
sound
taste

verbs of feeling

believe
doubt
feel
hate
like
love
prefer
want

verbs of possession

belong
own

other

appear
be
seem

agree
promise

contain
fit
include

depend on
need

- 3 Some common state verbs can have a continuous form with a different meaning.

He **has** two brothers. (state verb = own / possess)

He **is having** a good holiday. (activity)

That cake **looks** nice. (state verb = seem)

I'm **looking** at these photos. (activity)

I **think** it's a great idea. (state verb = have the opinion)

I'm **thinking** about tomorrow. (activity)

TIP

We often use the verbs of sense (see, smell, hear, taste) with **can**.

I **can** smell coffee.

He **can't** hear you.

- ▶ See Unit 20 for more information on **can**.
- ▶ See Unit 28 for more information on verbs of the senses.

Practice

A Match the beginnings to the correct endings.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 Humans have | a the brain has two halves. |
| 2 The brain is | b colours. |
| 3 The left and right sides of the brain have | c oxygen to survive. |
| 4 Scientists think | d 75% water. |
| 5 The brain needs | e words and numbers. |
| 6 With the right side of the brain, you see | f different ways of working. |
| 7 With the left side of the brain, you recognise | g a very complex brain. |

B Underline the correct option.

- I promise / am promising I won't tell anyone.
- I don't know this word. What does it mean / is it meaning?
- I saw your daughter yesterday. She's growing / grows up fast.
- I disagree / am disagreeing completely with what you are saying.
- Don't talk to Dad. He watches / is watching TV!
- My parents don't understand / are not understanding why I want to stop piano lessons.
- Do you remember / Are you remembering that day we spent in Capri?
- Do computers become / Are computers becoming more difficult to use?
- It seems / It's seeming a shame not to go.
- I don't doubt / am not doubting that you are right.
- Are you OK? You don't listen / are not listening to me.
- He believes / is believing everything she says.

C Do these sentences describe states or activities? Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- We don't have very much money. (have)
- A: Hi, Stan. You look worried!
B: I am worried about tomorrow's meeting – that's all. (think)
- Where is Carlo? He is taking a shower. (have)
- That food is great. (look)
- They are having a baby. He is six months old. (have)
- My dad thinks the party is a good idea. (not think)
- What are you looking at? (look)

MY TURN!

Use your imagination to answer the questions with full sentences in your notebook. Use your own ideas or words from the box.

alone birds bitter dry sand excited
flowers frightened hard the horizon
insects nothing smooth soft
sweet the wind

You are in the jungle.

- How do you feel? I feel excited.
- What can you smell?
- What can you hear?

You pick an exotic fruit.

- What does it feel like?
- How does it taste?

You are in the desert.

- What can you smell?
- What can you hear?
- What can you see?
- How do you feel?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- This song is really beautiful. Who is the singer? a is sounding b sounding c sounds
- A: You're using the wrong side of your brain. B: Sorry. am not understanding
a I don't understand b I'm not understand c I'm not understanding
- A: You're very quiet, Tom. B: Yes, sorry. am thinking about my holiday. a I think b I'm thinking c I'm think
- It's very noisy here, and am not hearing you. a I'm not hearing b I don't hear c I can't hear
- You're very good with colours and stories. are probably using the right side of your brain.
a That's mean b That means c That's meaning

A Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings.

- 1 He used to play the violin but he had to give
- 2 Please turn the music
- 3 Please pick
- 4 I asked my mum
- 5 My teacher told me
- 6 She never stops talking
- 7 My phone was broken,
- 8 I wake
- 9 The plane took
- 10 I lent him
- 11 I phoned the theatre to find
- 12 I have to tidy up

- a my pen, but he didn't give it back.
- b off because I didn't do my homework.
- c off at 7 pm, three hours late.
- d up at 6 every morning, I hate it!
- e so I took it back.
- f out what time the show starts.
- g my room before I go out.
- h down, I'm trying to concentrate.
- i up your clothes from the floor.
- j about her daughter.
- k for some money, but she said 'No'.
- l it up when he broke his arm.

1 l 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

B Make full sentences from the words.

- 1 I / love / listen / music.
I love listening to music.
- 2 Yesterday / David / suggest / go bowling tonight.
.....
- 3 My mum / decide / throw away / my old trainers / yesterday.
.....
- 4 We / want / make / a birthday card / Sharon.
.....
- 5 Last night / I / finish / study / 10 pm.
.....
- 6 I / not mind / wait / you.
.....
- 7 She / promise / take / me / cinema
.....
- 8 Last week / Duncan / offer / buy / me / a ticket.
.....
- 9 I / need / speak / Jo / now.
.....
- 10 Alison / refuse / pay / her dinner.
.....

C Make questions from the sentences using the words in brackets.

- 1 Your sister would like ? for her birthday. (What ... ?)
What would your sister like for her birthday?
- 2 Steven has ? brothers. (How many ... ?)
.....
- 3 I'm worried about ? (What ... ?)
.....
- 4 This guitar belongs to ? (Who ... ?)
.....
- 5 We've got a ? house. (What kind of ... ?)
.....
- 6 The plane took off at ? (What time ... ?)
.....
- 7 This word means ? (What ... ?)
.....
- 8 Pauline would like to go ? (Where ... ?)
.....
- 9 This sandwich tastes ? (What ... like?)
.....
- 10 They were waiting for ? (Who ... ?)
.....

D Complete the text using the words in the box.

bought getting getting ~~got~~ got had laughed looked made
make offered planned prefer sat turned wait wanted

Yesterday I ¹ got really angry with Wendy. We ² to meet at 3 pm at the shopping centre. I ³ to buy some new shoes, and Wendy ⁴ to help me choose. I always ⁵ shopping with a friend, because I can never ⁶ a decision. Last time I went shopping alone I ⁷ a mistake and bought a very ugly hat, and all my friends ⁸ at me. I started ⁹ worried about her when she still wasn't there at 5 pm. It was ¹⁰ dark, but I couldn't phone her because her phone was broken. When she ¹¹ up she ¹² terrible. She ¹³ down and explained. 'Sorry I'm late. I ¹⁴ on the wrong bus. Then the bus ¹⁵ an accident and I had to ¹⁶ for the police. It was terrible.' So I ¹⁷ her a coffee and she told me the whole story.

E Complete the advert. Use one word in each gap.

Salsa Club

Do you love dancing? Do you want to get some exercise? Would you like to learn something new? Do you want to make friends? Do you enjoy listening ¹ to Latin American music? Then come ² our Salsa Club!

Do you think you can't dance? Do you think people will laugh ³ you? Don't worry ⁴ that! You don't have to be a good dancer – just come and have fun. We can help you to be a great dancer, but it depends ⁵ YOU! Just do your best and you'll do well. The course consists ⁶ 20 lessons, so you have lots of time to get better and better.

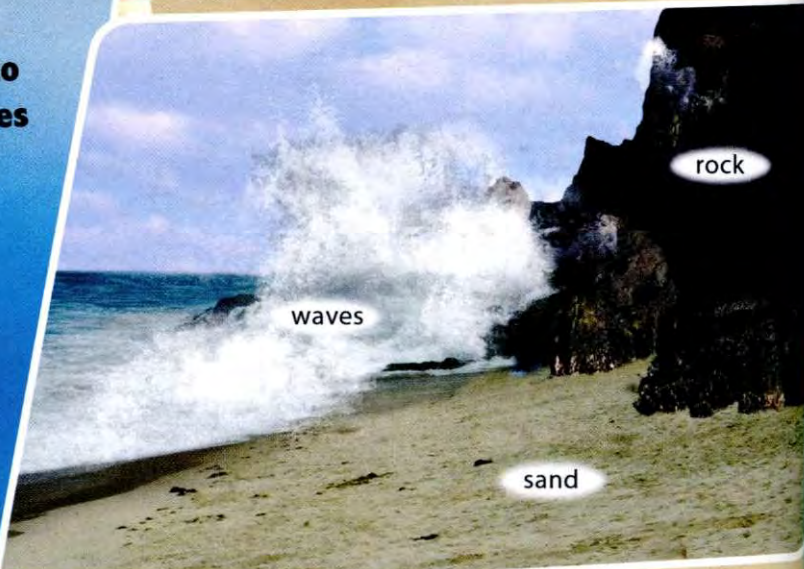
So what are you waiting ⁷? Put ⁸ your dancing shoes and come to Salsa Club!

F Cross out all the wrong options.

- 1 She ~~had~~ / is having / ~~is got~~ a good time at the moment.
- 2 We ~~had got~~ / is having / ~~had~~ an accident on the way home last night.
- 3 What time did you get by / ~~from~~ / to work?
- 4 He's looking up / ~~after~~ / like his baby brother while his parents are at work.
- 5 We looked after / ~~up~~ / at the long word in a dictionary.
- 6 She ~~is look~~ / is looking / looks like her grandmother.
- 7 Did you look at / ~~for~~ / after your keys in the kitchen?
- 8 I'd like / ~~liking~~ / liked to go out for dinner tonight.
- 9 They like to / ~~are liking~~ / like swimming in the lake.
- 10 Think of / Think about / Think coming with us tomorrow.
- 11 When did your visitors finally turn over / up / down last night?
- 12 The music was too quiet so I turned it down / turned up it / turned it up.

G rains of sand are really very small pieces of rock. It takes a long time to change rock into sand. On beaches, waves hit the rock and break it up. The salt in the sea water also attacks the rocks. Rain, ice and wind are important too.

The sand on the beach can be many different colours. Tropical white sand usually comes from white limestone rock. Red sand means there is iron in the rocks. Sand from **volcanic** rock can be black or even green.



Name three things that break up rock and make sand.

Answers: waves, salt in the sea, rain, ice, wind

Countable and uncountable nouns

- 1 Countable nouns are nouns we can count. They have singular and plural forms. Use the articles *a* or *an* before a singular noun.

a beach, an apple, a wave

Use words like *some*, *many*, *twenty* or nothing before a plural noun.

some beaches, many rocks, two apples, waves

- 2 Uncountable nouns often refer to liquids, materials, general concepts and abstract qualities. Uncountable nouns are singular – they don't usually have plural forms.

The homework is easy. NOT *The homeworks are easy.*

Don't use *a* or *an* before uncountable nouns; use words like *some*, *any*, *no* or no article.

some sand, no rain, furniture, time

- ▶ See Unit 45 for more information on *some*, *any* and *no*.
- ▶ See Unit 47 for more information on *many*.

TIP

Some nouns which are uncountable in English may be countable in your own language. In English, these nouns are uncountable:

accommodation	furniture	knowledge	music	traffic
advice	homework	luggage	news	transport
fruit	information	money	pasta	

Can I have some information? NOT *Can I have some informations?*

- 3 Some nouns can be both countable and uncountable with a difference in meaning.



rock (uncountable = the material)



a rock (countable = a piece of rock)



coffee (uncountable = the substance)



a coffee (countable = a cup of coffee)



hair (uncountable)



a hair (countable = one hair)

- 4 Uncountable nouns can be countable if we use expressions such as:

a piece of advice / fruit / information / news
a slice of bread / toast / cheese
a bar of chocolate
a cup of coffee / tea
a grain of sand
a glass of water

Practice

A Which of these words can be used in the plural?

accommodation bag beach bread car cotton
cup furniture happiness job luggage melon
piece room table traffic wave work

can be used in the plural: bag,

can't be used in the plural: accommodation,

B Complete the text by writing *a, an* or *-* (= no article).

Where does ¹ - chocolate come from?
Next time you buy ² a bar of chocolate, think about
where it came from. Did you know that it is made from
³ a cocoa butter? This butter comes from the beans
of ⁴ a cacao trees. They grow mainly in South
America and Africa.

Amazing Chocolate Facts

- ★ The Aztecs thought ⁵ a cocoa beans were very
important. They believed that the beans brought
⁶ a wisdom.
- ★ The Aztecs and the Maya used the beans to make
⁷ a hot drink.
- ★ The word 'chocolate' comes from ⁸ a word in the
Aztec language, *xocoatl*.
- ★ The Spanish brought ⁹ a cocoa to Europe in the
16th century. They mixed the beans with ¹⁰ a
sugar.
- ★ There is ¹¹ a iron in cocoa.
- ★ There are 5 mg of caffeine in 25 g of milk chocolate.
In ¹² a cup of coffee, there are about 100 mg of
caffeine.

C Underline the correct option.

- 1 Did you show your homework / homeworks to Miss Elliot?
- 2 The woman gave me some useful information / informations.
- 3 Let's make some cheese sandwich / sandwiches.
- 4 Black sand come / comes from volcanic rock.
- 5 Can you give me some advice / advices?
- 6 He has long hair / hairs and dark eye / eyes.
- 7 Spaghetti is / are my favourite food.
- 8 There are a lot of bus / buses in the city centre.
- 9 Good luck / lucks in your new job.
- 10 The news is / are not very good.

MY TURN!

Complete the sentences using the words from the box.
Use the countable nouns in either the singular or plural form.

car food friend good looks knowledge
love money music weekend work

Examples:

Work is important to me.

A car isn't important to me.

Friends are important to me.

- 1 important to me.
- 2 I cannot live without
- 3 the best!
- 4 not essential in life.
- 5 all you need.
- 6 last forever.
- 7 Everyone needs
- 8 beautiful.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 When I came home from the beach, my socks were full of
a red grain of sand b red grains of sand c a red grain of sand
- 2 I found on the beach, so I picked it up and took it home.
a beautiful rock b a beautiful rock c some beautiful rocks
- 3 I didn't eat my bar of because it fell on the sand. a bread b chocolate c pasta
- 4 I always listen to Paul when I need some good a informations b advice c knowledges
- 5 Could I have, please? a two coffees b two cup of coffees c two coffee

He ate 47 sandwiches in ten minutes.

Amazing people

Ron Hill (England) has run 115 **marathons**. He has run more than 290,000 **kilometres** – five **times** around the world.

Susan Baker (Australia) loves the colour orange. Her house is full of orange **things**, everything from **cups** and **knives** to **dresses** and **pyjamas**.

Joey Chestnut (USA) can eat 47 cheese **sandwiches** in ten **minutes**.

Mulai Ismail (Emperor of Morocco) had a lot of **children**. **Records** for 1703 show he had 342 **daughters** and 525 **sons**.

Enid Blyton (England) wrote more than 800 **books** and short **stories** for young people. You can read **translations** of her books in almost 90 different **languages**.



Match the numbers to the plural nouns:

?

- | | |
|-------|--------------|
| 1 47 | a marathons |
| 2 90 | b sons |
| 3 115 | c languages |
| 4 525 | d sandwiches |

Answers: 1d 2c 3a 4b

Plural nouns

- 1 There are countable and uncountable nouns. Countable nouns (e.g. *chair, apple*) can be in the plural (e.g. *chairs, apples*). Uncountable nouns (e.g. *advice, information*) cannot usually be in the plural (*advices, informations*).

- See Unit 40 for more information on countable and uncountable nouns.

In the plural we usually add -s.

banana → *bananas*, *cat* → *cats*, *garden* → *gardens*

If the word ends in -s, -ch, -sh, -x, we add -es.

dress → *dresses*

sandwich → *sandwiches*

wish → *wishes*

box → *boxes*

Many words ending -f(e) end in -ves in the plural.

knife → *knives*, *loaf* → *loaves*, *wife* → *wives*

If the word ends in consonant + -y, we change the -y to -ie.

story → *stories*, *city* → *cities*

But if the word ends in vowel + -y, we just add -s.

day → *days*, *monkey* → *monkeys*

Some words ending in -o take -s, but some take -es.

piano → *pianos*, *photo* → *photos*,

potato → *potatoes*, *tomato* → *tomatoes*

- See page 183 for more spelling rules.

- 2 Some common nouns have special plurals.

child → *children*

fish → *fish*

foot → *feet*

man → *men*

mouse → *mice*

person → *people*

sheep → *sheep*

tooth → *teeth*

woman → *women*

- 3 Some nouns only have a plural form, e.g. *glasses, jeans, pyjamas, scissors, trousers*. We can use *a pair of* before these nouns to mean one item, then we treat it as a singular.

Susan wears orange pyjamas.

Can I have the scissors, please?



There are some glasses on the table.



There is a pair of glasses on the table.

TIP

When talking about things in general, use a plural noun and no article.

Enid loved children.

Ron doesn't run marathons now.

- See Units 42 and 43 for more information on articles.

- 4 Some nouns, e.g. *staff* and *police*, look singular but we use them like plural nouns.

How many staff work in this school?

The police are here.

- 5 Some nouns which refer to groups of people, e.g. *team, family, company*, can be singular or plural.

Her family lives / live in Verona.

Practice

A Write the plurals.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1 a dog - <u>dogs</u> | 2 a girl - _____ |
| 3 a table - _____ | 4 a person - _____ |
| 5 a leg - _____ | 6 a beach - _____ |
| 7 a tomato - _____ | 8 a bike - _____ |
| 9 a country - _____ | 10 a sheep - _____ |
| 11 a fox - _____ | 12 a photo - _____ |
| 13 a family - _____ | 14 a wish - _____ |

B Complete the sentences using the plurals of the words in the box.

bag bus child piano ~~runner~~ sandwich tooth
wife wolf woman

- There are four runners in a 4 x 100 m team.
- You'll need some _____ to carry the shopping.
- She has two _____: a boy and a girl.
- King Henry VIII of England had six _____.
- Humans usually have 32 _____.
- We need two _____ for the concert.
- There are bears and _____ in the forest.
- No _____ or trains go to town on Sundays.
- The decathlon is for men, the heptathlon is for _____.
- They had cheese _____ for lunch.

C Underline the correct option.

- I think snakes is / are very nice pets.
- My house has / have mice.
- Sheep eat / eats grass.
- Your pyjamas is / are in the cupboard.
- One of the students come / comes from Venezuela.
- There is / are a pair of scissors on the desk.
- Do / Does children learn Italian in England?
- Not many people understands / understand my jokes.
- Jack and Jill's best friend live / lives next to me.
- Is / Are your jeans dirty?

D Complete the text with the plural forms of the nouns in brackets.

Peter Olsen from Aarhus in Denmark is an amazing collector. He collects everything! Peter started his collection with toy ¹ cars (car) and he now has 870 different ² (model). They fill two ³ (room) of his house. Then Peter began to collect ⁴ (clock) and ⁵ (watch). He is never late for ⁶ (meeting)! Peter has many collections but his favourite is probably his smallest: he owns 21 plastic Christmas ⁷ (tree). Peter's two ⁸ (child) think their dad is great. Tomas, 9 years old, says, 'Not many ⁹ (person) understand Dad but we do. OK, the house is full of ¹⁰ (box) and ¹¹ (shelf) but we don't mind.'

MY TURN!

Do you like these things? Why (not)? Write your answers in your notebook, then write four sentences about other things you like / don't like.

- mouse I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them.
- Monday
- black jeans
- cheese sandwich
- butterfly
- hip-hop music
- orange furniture

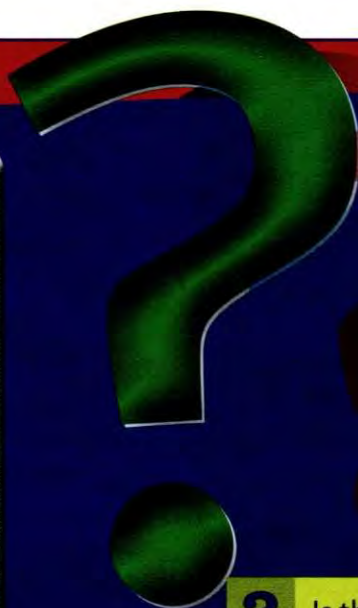
MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Mulai Ismail didn't know the names of all his _____. a wives and baby b wives and babys c wives and babies
- I'm hungry. Can you make me some _____? Just 40 or 50, please.
a sandwiches with cheese and tomatoes b sandwicks with cheese and tomatoes c sandwiches with cheese and tomatos
- I need to cut this paper. Do you have _____? a a pair of scissor b a scissors c a pair of scissors
- _____ very small teeth. a Mouse have b Mouses have c Mice have
- While he was stealing the car, the _____ filming him. a polices were b police was c police were

What happened?

Romeo and Juliet are in a room. They are in the middle of the room, on the floor. They are dead. Next to them there is some glass. The glass is broken. In the room you can also see an open window. It isn't a hot day but the window is still open. How did Romeo and Juliet die?



Is there an answer to the puzzle?

Answer: Romeo and Juliet are fish. The glass is from a broken fish bowl. A hungry cat came in through the window. The cat broke the bowl. A man heard the noise and came in the room. The cat ran away.

Articles 1

- 1 Articles (*a*, *an* or *the*) go before nouns. Sometimes, there is no article before a noun.
I saw a cat outside.
I gave some fish to the cat.
I like cats.
- 2 Names of people and places usually have no article.
Romeo and Juliet lived in Verona.
- 3 We don't use articles when we are talking about things in general with plural or uncountable nouns (e.g. *houses*, *information*).
I like puzzles.
Cats drink milk.
- 4 We use *a* or *an* with singular countable nouns when we are talking about only one person or one thing.
Juliet had a brother.
Do you want an apple?
- 5 Use *a* or *an* to talk about which job somebody has.
My mum is an engineer.
Shakespeare was a writer.
- 6 Use *a* before a consonant sound (/b/, /t/, /s/, etc.) and *an* before a vowel sound (/e/, /o/, /u/, etc.).
There is a room.
You can see an open window.

TIP

h is a consonant, so use *a* with words which begin with *h* in sound and spelling.

It isn't a hot day.

A hungry cat.

You say *an hour* and *an honour* because *hour* /'aʊə/ and *honour* /'ɒnə/ start with vowel sounds.

- 7 Use *the* before singular and plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns.

The window is open.

What's the news?

- 8 Use *the* when the speaker and listener both know what is being talked about.

The glass is broken. (= the glass was mentioned in the previous sentence)

I saw the cat. (= the cat we both know)

The bank is closed. (= our bank)

TIP

Note the difference:

I have an idea. (= but I haven't told you what it is yet, so you don't know)

I like the idea. (= we both know which idea we're talking about)

► See Unit 40 for article use with countable and uncountable nouns.

Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- 1 I get a same bus / the same bus / same bus every morning.
- 2 John is a nurse / the nurse / nurse at Hope Hospital.
- 3 I'm busy. I'll feed a cat / the cat / cat later.
- 4 There are a lot of students in a Manchester / the Manchester / Manchester.
- 5 What is a tomato / the tomato / tomato? Fruit or vegetable?
- 6 Please give me a scissors / the scissors / scissors.
- 7 My dog loves a chocolate / the chocolate / chocolate.
- 8 Frankenstein is a horror story / the horror story / horror story by Mary Shelley.
- 9 Did you see a game / the game / game last night?
It was great.
- 10 A sport / The sport / Sport is important.
- 11 I have an older brother / the older brother / older brother.
- 12 Where is a Post Office / the Post Office / Post Office? I can't find it.

B Complete the puzzle with a, an, the or – (= no article).

This puzzle is about ¹ a town called ² Darkville. It is ³ an old town with ⁴ a university and ⁵ a history museum. ⁶ A tourists often visit it. Now ⁷ a dog is walking down ⁸ the main road of ⁹ a town. It is ¹⁰ a black dog. There is no moon and ¹¹ a weather is bad. No lights are on in ¹² the streets. All ¹³ the shops in ¹⁴ a town are closed. Now ¹⁵ a man is driving quickly from ¹⁶ a airport. ¹⁷ The headlights of his car are not on. He almost hits ¹⁸ a dog. There is nearly ¹⁹ a accident but he stops ²⁰ a car. Luckily, ²¹ a dog survives. It doesn't die. It is ²² a miracle – how did ²³ a man see ²⁴ a dog? You know, ²⁵ a life is sometimes very strange ...
(See ²⁶ the bottom of the page for ²⁷ a answer to ²⁸ a puzzle.)

C Make full sentences from the words, adding articles if necessary. Then mark them True or False.

- 1 Shakespeare / was / actor
Shakespeare was an actor. True.
- 2 colours / of / English / flag / are / red / and / blue
.....
- 3 cats / have / nine / lives
.....
- 4 there / is / town / called / Moscow / in / America
.....
- 5 'musicals' / are / plays / or / films / with / singers / and / dancers
.....
- 6 mile / is / longer / than / kilometre
.....
- 7 Elvis / Presley / played / concert / in / London
.....
- 8 original / name / of / New York / was / New Rome
.....

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write six sentences about what you can see around you now.

Example: I can see a cat. The cat is climbing a tree.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

A man and his son loved climbing ¹ a mountains. One day, they were climbing ² a mountain when ³ a son fell and cut his head. The boy looked terrible – he had ⁴ a blood on his face, his hair and his clothes – but he felt OK. The man phoned for help, and after about ⁵ a hour, a helicopter came and took the boy to hospital. The man had to stay on the mountain. At the hospital, a doctor started to clean ⁶ a blood from the boy's face. Suddenly the doctor said, 'Oh no! This is my son!'
How is this possible?

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 a the b an c a d – | 2 a the b an c a d – |
| 3 a the b an c a d – | 4 a the b an c a d – |
| 5 a the b an c a d – | 6 a the b an c a d – |

Blogspot

The most famous guitar in the world is the Fender Stratocaster (Strat).

An American Standard Stratocaster is **a** classic guitar. **The** colour is beautiful. **The** sound is perfect.

People play guitars for many reasons: fun, money, interest. There is one reason why I play **the** Stratocaster: love.

What is happiness? Take **a** Strat, put it in **a** rucksack, go to **the** train station, buy **a** ticket to **the** seaside and stay there for **a** month. Play music on **the** beach, swim and watch **the** birds every day. This is happiness.



Why do people play guitars?

a fun b money c interest d all of these things

Answer: d

Articles 2

- 1 Use **the** before things in the world that we all know about. Examples are: *the desert, the mountains, the river, the sea and the town.*

Swim in **the** river.

The country is quieter than **the** town.

- 2 Use **the** before things that are the only ones around us, or that are unique.

Look at **the** moon. (There is only one moon we can see.)

She's **the** best singer in **the** world. (There is only one world.)

- 3 Use **the** with streets and hotels.

Walk across **the** road carefully.

- 4 Use **the** before superlatives (*smallest, most interesting, etc.*).

The most famous guitar in the world.

It is **the** best.

- 5 Only use **the** with uncountable nouns (*music, air, furniture, etc.*) if they are specific things we know about. Note the difference:

Money does not bring **happiness**. (= money in general)

Where is **the money**? (= physical money you can touch)

Coffee is bad for you. (= all coffee)

Put **the coffee** on the table. (= this cup of coffee)

TIP

We can talk about specific types and examples of things with **the** and a singular countable noun.

The guitar is very popular today. (*the guitar* = a type of musical instrument)

Marconi invented **the** radio. (*the radio* = an example of technology)

- 6 Use **a** or **an** with nouns to talk about something that the listener doesn't know about yet.

There is **a** concert tonight.

Listen to this, it's **a** true story.

- See Unit 42 for the basic rules for articles.
► See Unit 40 for countable and uncountable nouns.

Practice

A Complete the sentences with *a*, *an* or *the*.

- Do you play the guitar?
- It's second house on the left.
- Esperanto is language.
- longest river is in Brazil.
- When I was young I had dog.
- Wear dress you bought last week.
- I love sea.
- That is interesting idea.

B Match the pairs.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 I can see | a money. |
| 2 Everyone needs | b the money. |
| 3 Turn on | a the light. |
| 4 Plants die without | b light. |
| 5 The bread | a is easy to make. |
| 6 Bread | b is in the kitchen. |
| 7 I want to study | a music. |
| 8 Listen to | b the music. |
| 9 Football | a is in the car. |
| 10 The football | b is a sport. |

C Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order. Add *a*, *an* or *the* if necessary.

- in / I / mountains / live
I live in the mountains.
- where / tomorrow / is / party / ?
.....
- night / was / it / exciting
.....
- most / is / beautiful / who / ?
.....
- animal / is / horse
.....
- hot / nice / is / milk / on / cold / day
.....

7 car / full / is / park / again.


8 music / need / people.




D Cross out the pictures in this story and write the correct words with *a*, *an*, *the* or - (= no article).






Billy wanted to play ¹  because he loved ² .

But there was a problem. He had no money to buy one.

He lived near a big forest and every day he walked in

³  and dreamed about a guitar. One day Billy sat

under ⁴  and listened to ⁵ . They sang beautifully. ⁶  was shining. Billy was thinking.

'Guitars are made of ⁷ . I can make ⁸ !' He walked back to ⁹ , went home and got ¹⁰  and some string. He went back to ¹¹ . Billy made his guitar. The birds sang and Billy played. He was happy now.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, answer these questions with *a*, *an*, *the* or - (= no article) and the noun.

- What is a carrot? A vegetable.
- What musical instrument would you like to play?
- Where can you swim in salt water?
- What do you put in coffee?
- What was the Titanic?
- What object can you see in the sky at night?
- What plastic thing can you use in a shop?
- Money cannot buy ...?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- I'm sorry. I've broken your Stratocaster. I was playing music on the beach and it fell in sea. a a b the c -
- most expensive Stratocaster costs about \$12,000. a A b An c The
- I usually play, but sometimes I play it for money.
a guitar for the fun b the guitar for a fun c the guitar for fun
- My friend has just bought old guitar. It's 40 years old and it sounds fantastic. a an b the c -
- Who invented electric guitar? a an b the c -

Review: nouns and articles

A Write the plurals of these nouns.

- 1 boy – boys 2 child – children 3 dog – 4 man –
5 shoe – 6 tomato – 7 box – 8 table –
9 computer – 10 mouse – 11 tooth – 12 banana –
13 knife – 14 house – 15 dictionary –

B Change the sentences into the plural. Be careful with words like *a*, *the*, *some* and *this*.

- 1 This boy has found a key.
- 2 That lady has a pretty baby.
- 3 The man is going to buy a new watch.
- 4 The woman found a mouse under the piano.
- 5 That girl stole a glass.
- 6 This bus has a broken window.
- 7 The child is eating a potato.
- 8 That farmer is buying a sheep and a fish.

These boys have found some keys. / These boys have found keys.

C Put the nouns from the box in the correct places in the table.

advice air chair city family feeling
fun furniture game garden help
ice cream information luggage
music problem soap soup tree
trip ~~water~~ work

[illegible]

D Underline the correct option.

- 1 Jill jumped into *a / some* water.
- 2 I have just read *any / a* book about it.
- 3 He did *a / some* good work.
- 4 He did *a / some* good job.
- 5 *A / Some* people like it.
- 6 Mr and Mrs Brown don't have *any / some* children.
- 7 Have you lost *any / a* money?
- 8 The police now have *some / an* information.
- 9 Would you like to come on *some / a* trip?
- 10 Please give me *some / an* advice.

E Match the pairs.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 We need to talk about your plans for the future. Do you have _____ | a time? |
| 2 I've forgotten my watch. Do you have _____ | b the time? |
| 3 Do you often eat _____ | a a pizza? |
| 4 Do you want to eat _____ | b pizzas? |
| 5 I want to be a teacher because I love _____ | a children. |
| 6 Dinner's ready. Please go and tell _____ | b the children. |
| 7 Her house is in the middle of _____ | a a forest. |
| 8 I love walking in _____ | b the forest. |
| 9 Marconi invented _____ | a a radio. |
| 10 My mobile phone doesn't have _____ | b the radio. |
| 11 My sister never drinks _____ | a milk. |
| 12 Ugh ... this coffee's disgusting. There's something wrong with _____ | b the milk. |

F Write a, an, the or – (= no article) in each space.

Last year we went to Wales for ¹ a holiday and we stayed in ² old house.
³ family of ⁴ mice was living in ⁵ house too. We never saw
⁶ mice, but we knew they were there, because they used to eat our bread.
 On ⁷ last day of ⁸ holiday we decided we wanted to see ⁹
 mice, so we bought ¹⁰ smelly cheese. That night, we put ¹¹ cheese in
¹² bowl and put ¹³ bowl on ¹⁴ floor of ¹⁵ living
 room. We sat in ¹⁶ dark and waited for ¹⁷ mice to come. After
¹⁸ two hours of waiting, I was feeling hungry, so I went to ¹⁹ kitchen to
 make myself some ²⁰ tea and ²¹ sandwich. I remembered there was some
 bread on ²² table. When I turned on ²³ light I saw ²⁴ mouse.
 It was sitting on ²⁵ kitchen table and eating ²⁶ bread.

G Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use two to four words including the word in brackets.

- a She teaches English at our school. (teacher)

b She's an English teacher at our school.
- a He's a violinist in an orchestra. (violin)

b He _____ in an orchestra.
- a I want a relaxing beach holiday this year. (beach)

b This holiday, I want to relax _____.
- a We had some cheese in the fridge this morning, but now it's gone. Who's eaten it? (all)

b Who's eaten _____ from the fridge? It was here this morning.
- a Kenny is Tom's only brother. (of)

b Kenny is _____ Tom.
- a I'm going out now. I'll be about 60 minutes. (hour)

b I'm going out now. I'll be back in _____.
- a Sorry I'm late. I had a meeting with my bank manager. (bank)

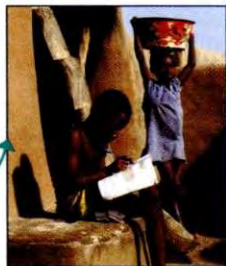
b Sorry I'm late. I went to _____ meeting with the manager.
- a She needs to travel to Italy on business. (trip)

b She needs to go _____ to Italy.

Hello – I'm Anusibuno and I live in Ghana.

These children are studying at school. We learn Kasenankani, one of the languages of Ghana, and also English at school.

This is me at home. When I grow up, I want to be a photographer. I'd like to take photos of the people and children in my country. **That's** my dream.



I live in the north of Ghana where it's very dry. But not all of the country is dry. **This** photo is of the port of Accra, and **those** are fishing boats.



True or False? Anusibuno speaks English as her first language.

False. She speaks Kasenankani. She learns English at school.

This, that, these, those

- 1 Use **this** or **that** with a singular noun.
this photo, that girl
- 2 Use **these** or **those** with a plural noun.
these friends, those hills
- 3 We usually use **this** or **these** for people and things which are near.
*This photo is of the port of Accra.
Are these your children?*
- 4 We usually use **that** or **those** for people and things which are not near:
*Who's that girl over there?
Those are fishing boats.*
- 5 Use **this** for things which are happening now or will soon happen.
*This TV programme is really interesting. (= the TV programme I am watching now)
You'll laugh when you hear this story. (= the story I am about to tell you)*

TIP

On the phone, we usually use **this is** to say who is speaking.
Hello. This is Fatima.

- 6 Use **that** for things which happened in the past or have just finished.

*That was a great holiday.
What was that noise?*

- 7 Use **that** to say more about something that someone has just said.

I want to be a photographer. That's my dream.

A: She wants to be a photographer.

B: Really? I didn't know that.

- 8 We can also use **this, that, these** and **those** on their own.

This is me. (= This person in the photo is me.)

These are my friends. (= These people in the photo are my friends.)

Who's that? (= Who's that person in the photo?)

TIP

The short form of **that is** = **that's**. **This is, these are** and **those are** do not have short forms.

Practice

A Complete this letter with *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.

1 This is me at home with my family.
2 is our lunch. We are eating yams.
3 are our animals you can see outside.



You'll like 4 photo. 5 is me again and 6 are my friends. The photo shows the first day of school. 7 was a special day. We are wearing our school uniform. 8 building behind us is the school.



C Complete the speech bubbles using *this*, *that*, *these* or *those*.



B Underline the correct option.

- Can you give me this / that book on the top shelf, please?
- Can you hold this / that for me? I need to put my hat on.
- Come and look at these / those photos.
- A: David failed his exam.
B: Really? I didn't know this / that.
- Hello, this / that is Alice. Can I speak to Abe?
- Look what I found! Do you remember this / that photo?
- This / That film was amazing. Did you see it last night?
- I love the painting over there in the corner. Just look at these / those flowers! I can't believe they're not real.

MY TURN!

Find a photo which includes you or someone you know and write a description of what you can see, using *this*, *that*, *these*, *those*, in your notebook.
Example: *This is me and my cousin, Pavel.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- A: Did you know they speak Kasenankani in Ghana? B: No, I didn't. interesting.
a It's b This is c That's
- Look at mountains! They're so far away, but they look really beautiful. a that b those c these
- A: I lived in Ghana for eight months when I was a student. B: Really? I'm sure was an amazing experience.
a this b that c those
- Mmm, food is delicious. Do you want to try some? a this b that c those
- Can you help me with bags, please? They're really heavy. a this b those c these



Do you have **any** plans for your vacation? **None**?

Good, then ...

Visit Knoydart!



Knoydart is a beautiful place in Scotland. It's perfect for a holiday. You won't find **any** pollution in Knoydart and there are **no** cars. There are **some** boats to Knoydart but **none** of them carry cars. Don't worry, there are **some** roads but you'll have plenty of exercise because there are **no** trains or buses!

Knoydart has a post office, a school and **some** small hotels. The hotels are very nice but **none** of them are very big and **some** are only open in summer. Do you have **any** questions? The website at the bottom of the page has **some** useful information.



Underline the correct option: Knoydart is a good place for people who like: *quiet holidays / driving / big luxury hotels*.

Answer: quiet holidays

Some, any, no, none

- 1 Use **some** and **any** to talk about a limited quantity of something. Use **not ... any**, **no** and **none** when there is nothing there.



You can see **some** birds.

The beach doesn't have **any** cafés.

There are **no** tourists.

Are there **any** people swimming? No, **none**.

- 2 Use **some** and **any** with countable plural nouns and uncountable nouns.

Some people like quiet holidays. (people = plural noun)

Do you have **any** news? (news = uncountable)

I need **some** information. (information = uncountable)

- ▶ See Unit 40 for countable and uncountable nouns.

- 3 We often use **some** in statements.

Knoydart has **some** roads.

- 4 We usually use **any** in negative sentences. We also use **any** in questions instead of **some**.

There isn't **any** pollution.

Do you want **any** milk with your coffee?

- 5 We can use **some** in questions when we expect the answer 'yes', especially for offers, requests and suggestions.

Do you have **some** good ideas? I'm sure you do!

Would you like **some** help? (offer)

Can I have **some** sugar? (request)

Shall I take **some** photos? (suggestion)

- 6 We can use **any** in statements to mean 'it doesn't matter which one'.

Use **any** colour.

- 7 We can use **some** and **any** without a following noun when it is clear what **some** and **any** are referring to.

There are hotels but **some** are only open in summer.

We have time for **some** questions. Do you have **any**?

- 8 Use **no** with countable plural nouns and uncountable nouns. **No** is often more emphatic than **not any**.

There are **no** trains.

- 9 **None** = not any.

I wanted **some** water but there was **none**.

- 10 We can use **of** after **some**, **any** and **none**, before **the** or a pronoun.

I read **some of** the website.

Do **any of** you speak English?

... **none of** them are very big.

Practice

A Make sentences about Susie's shopping bag using *some*, *any* or *no*.



- 1 She has some chocolate.
- 2 She doesn't have any fish. / She has no fish.
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

B Underline the correct option.

- 1 I'm lucky, I have some / *any* good friends.
- 2 It's a small room and there aren't *some* / any windows.
- 3 Sundays are quiet; there is *no* / none traffic on the streets.
- 4 I'd love *some* / any chocolate cake, please.
- 5 Bring some water because there is *no* / none here.
- 6 I'm afraid there's *no* / none beach.
- 7 Sheila doesn't need *no* / any help.
- 8 We need help because *some* / none of us understand.
- 9 There aren't *some* / any questions.
- 10 *Some* / None tourists prefer to travel by train.

C In your notebook, rewrite these dialogues with *some*, *any* or *none* to make them more natural. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 1 A: Can I have six or seven potatoes?
B: Sorry, we don't have them.
A: Can I have some potatoes?
B: Sorry, we don't have any.
- 2 A: Have you got a small amount of American dollars with you?
B: Yes, I've got a small amount.
- 3 A: Would you like a little bit of help?
B: I don't need help, thanks.
- 4 A: I need three or four biscuits.
B: I'm sorry, we don't have three or four biscuits. We don't even have one biscuit!
- 5 A: Do you understand one or more of the questions?
B: No, not one.
- 6 A: Yes, we've got three or four. Which do you want?
B: It doesn't matter.

D Complete the sentences using the words in the box and *some*, *any* and *no*.

Some people like Knoydart for these reasons:

beautiful walks delicious seafood noisy factories
friendly people money traffic

- 1 The roads are very quiet. There is no traffic.
- 2 live in the area.
- 3 There aren't
- 4 The hotel restaurants serve
- 5 There are through the **country**.
- 6 You don't need to enjoy the fresh air.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write five good reasons to visit your town or village, using *some*, *any* and *no*.

Examples:

- 1 It has some interesting museums.
- 2 There aren't any expensive hotels.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 You'll have to walk because the island doesn't have taxis. a some b no c any
- 2 I invited all my friends to come with me to Knoydart, but them wanted to come. a none of b no c any of
- 3 A: Does Knoydart have casinos? B: No, I don't think so. a any of b some of c any
- 4 Could I have more information about the hotel, please?
a no b none c some
- 5 A: How many people live on Knoydart? B: I have idea. a none b no c any

My Test! answers: 1c 2a 3c 4c 5b

When you have **nothing** to say, say **nothing**.
(Charles Caleb Colton)

Anyone can catch your eye, but it takes **someone** special to catch your heart. (Anon)

He knows **nothing** and he thinks he knows **everything**. That clearly points to a political career. (George Bernard Shaw)

Learning is a **treasure** that will follow its owner **everywhere**.
(Chinese proverb)



Which of these quotes do you like best?

Something, everywhere, nobody, anyone

- 1 Use the pronouns *anything* or *something* to talk about a thing or an idea.

Use the pronouns *anybody*, *somebody*, *anyone* or *someone* to talk about a person. (The words ending in *-body* or *-one* are the same in meaning.)

Anyone can catch your eye.

Use the pronouns *anywhere* or *somewhere* to talk about a place.

- 2 *Everywhere* (= all places), *everybody* or *everyone* (= all people), *everything* (= all things)
Nowhere (= no place), *nobody* or *no one* (= no person), *nothing* (= no thing or not anything)
He knows nothing and he thinks he knows everything.

- 3 We usually use *something*, *somewhere*, *somebody* and *someone* in statements.

It takes someone special to catch your heart.

We often use *anything*, *anywhere*, *anybody* and *anyone* in negative sentences and questions.

I can't see anything.

Is anybody at home?

- 4 We can also use pronouns beginning with *any-* in statements to mean 'all' when it doesn't matter who, what or where.

Anyone can catch your eye. (= all people; it doesn't matter who they are)

He can go anywhere he wants. (= He can go to all places; it doesn't matter where.)

- 5 Use *nothing*, *nowhere*, *nobody* and *no one* in statements and questions.

He knows nothing. Why is no one here? He has nowhere to live.

TIP

We don't have two negative words in one sentence.

I didn't hear anything. OR I heard nothing.

NOT *I didn't hear nothing.*

- 6 We usually use *everything*, *everywhere*, *everybody* and *everyone* in statements.

Everybody says it's true. *I met everyone.*

TIP

everyone / everybody / everything + singular verb

Everybody was there. NOT *Everybody were there.*

Practice

A Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Anything that can go wrong, | a someone to talk to. |
| 2 Worrying | b lasts forever . |
| 3 Try something | c perfect. |
| 4 Nothing | d will go wrong. |
| 5 If you have hope, | e won't help anyone. |
| 6 Nobody's | f new today. |
| 7 Everyone needs | g you have everything. |

B Underline the correct option.

- Let's go somewhere / everywhere special.
- She doesn't have anything / nothing nice to wear.
- I think there's something / anything strange about him.
- I have nothing / anything new to read.
- Look in the fridge if you're hungry. You can have anything / something you want.
- This music is boring – I want to listen to something / everything different.
- I've met someone / anyone special.
- Everybody / Everything loves a good story.

C Complete the sentences with an appropriate pronoun. Sometimes there is more than one right answer.

- A: Have you seen the dog?
B: No, I've looked everywhere.
- I've got _____ in my eye.
- You must come to the party – _____ is going to be there.
- There's _____ at the door.
- Has _____ seen my watch?
- My cousin is very shy – she never says _____!
- I need to buy _____ for dinner.
- Can _____ come to the party or do you need a ticket?
- She lives _____ in France.

D Write sentences which mean the opposite.

- She doesn't have anywhere to live.
She has somewhere to live.
- I could see no one.

- I told the police officer everything.

- The woman told me something interesting.

- Everyone is happy.

- Nobody knows.

- There was nothing unusual about her.

- He hasn't been anywhere.

MY TURN!

Complete each sentence with an appropriate pronoun.

- No one knows the answer.
- There's _____ in the garden.
- _____ says it's true.
- I can't see him _____.
- Do _____ and _____ will happen.
- _____ loves a happy ending.
- _____ is always right.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Please tell me _____ about your family. a something b anywhere c everyone
- A: What do you want for your birthday? B: _____. I don't mind. I'll be happy with something small.
a Everything b Anything c Something
- I didn't know _____ at the party, so I went home again. a nobody b anybody c no one
- _____ mistakes. a Everyone makes b Anybody make c Everybody make
- A: I can't find my keys _____. B: Where have you looked? A: Everywhere. a somewhere b anything c anywhere



Do tourists at Port Stephens usually see dolphins?

Answer: Yes. There are not many trips where you don't see a dolphin.

The Eco-Blog Read what our eco-tourists say about travelling in Australia.

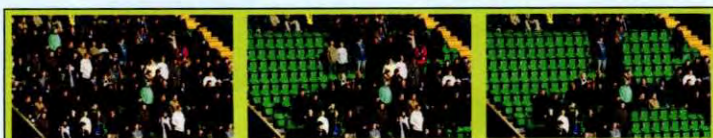
A lot of fun! by Kelly, 24th October

I've been on dolphin-watching trips before and often you only get **a little** time with the dolphins ... but this was different. Port Stephens on the coast of New South Wales is the perfect place to watch dolphins. I saw **lots** of dolphins jumping over the waves ... fantastic!

There are **not many** trips where you don't see a dolphin. But if you are unlucky and only see a dolphin for **a few** moments, the **captain** will give you a free ticket for another trip.

And the best thing is – it doesn't cost **much**. What are you waiting for? Buy your ticket today!

Much, many, a lot of, a little, a few



many, a lot of,
lots of

some

not many, a few



much, a lot of,
lots of

some

not much, a little

- 1 Use **much** with singular uncountable nouns and **many** with plural countable nouns.
*We do not have **much** time.*
*There are not **many** trips.*
- 2 Use **a lot of** or **lots of** with both singular uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.
*It was **a lot of** / **lots of** fun.*
*I saw **a lot of** / **lots of** dolphins.*
- 3 We use **a lot of** or **lots of** in statements and negative sentences and in questions.
*There is **a lot of** marine life in the Port Stephens bay area.*
*Not **a lot of** tourists know this place.*
*Are there **a lot of** different types of dolphin?*

- 4 We usually use **much** and **many** in negative sentences and questions.
*We do not have **much** time.*
*Are there **many** dolphins in the Port Stephens bay area?*
- 5 We don't usually use **much** in statements – we prefer **a lot of** or **lots of**
*It was **a lot of** fun! NOT ~~It was much~~ fun!*
- 6 We sometimes use **many** in formal statements.
*Scientists have discovered that **many** female dolphins live in groups of six or eight animals.*
- 7 **A lot of** or **lots of** are more common in informal statements.
*I saw **lots of** dolphins jumping over the waves.*
- 8 Use **a little** with singular uncountable nouns and **a few** with plural nouns.
*You only get **a little** time with the dolphins.*
*You only see a dolphin for **a few** moments.*

TIP

You can leave out the noun after **much, many, a little, a few, a lot of** and **lots of**.

*It doesn't cost **much**.* (= It doesn't cost much money.)
*How much time do we have? Only **a little**.* (= Only a little time.)

*It doesn't cost **a lot**.* (= It doesn't cost a lot of money.)
*How much money do we have? **Lots!***

Practice

A Complete the sentences with **much** or **many**.

- There aren't many days before the exam.
- Not much snow has fallen in the Alps this winter.
- Many people are surprised when they first see the dolphins.
- Do the boys have much homework tonight?
- Did many children come to the party?
- There won't be many hotel rooms at this time of year.
- Do you eat much meat?
- Did you get many presents for your birthday?
- Maria didn't give me much good advice.
- There are many different plants, animals and insects in the rainforest.

B Complete each of these sentences in two different ways, using phrases from the box and appropriate forms of the verb.

	love
	knowledge
	arguments
a little	bad marks
a few	salt in your food
	sweets
	rain
	days off

- A little rain is } a good thing.
A few days off are
- _____ } not bad for you.
- _____ } better than none.
- _____ } nothing to worry about.

C Complete the blog using **a lot of**, **lots of**, **much**, **many**, **a little** or **a few**.

Kuranda Train and Skyrail, Australia
by Ido, 4th July



This is a great day trip. Take the train through the mountains and come back by Skyrail. The train trip was beautiful – we went past ¹ a lot of waterfalls and through ² many tunnels! We wanted to see the traditional markets at Kuranda, but there weren't ³ many good shops – just shops selling tourist souvenirs – so you won't need ⁴ much money. ⁵ A few hours in town should be enough for most people. You can visit the **Butterfly** Sanctuary – if you want to – but there are ⁶ lots of butterflies flying around you for free! You don't need ⁷ a little time to get to the Skyrail. Skyrail is a cable car that travels only ⁸ a few metres above the top of the rainforest. Unfortunately we only had ⁹ a little time. I wanted to stay all day!

MY TURN!

Answer the questions in your notebook using **a lot**, **not much**, **some**, **only a little**, **not many** or **only a few**.

- How much time do you spend on your homework every evening? A lot!
- How much time do you spend watching TV every week?
- How many plants do you know the names of?
- How many different butterflies do you know?
- How much money do you have in your pocket?
- How many hours' sleep did you have last night?
- How much snow was there last winter?
- How many times have you been on a plane?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- We travelled around Australia with _____ friends. There were about six of us. a a little b a few c much
- We didn't have _____ time in Port Stephens – only a few days. a many b a lot c much
- We had a _____ free time at the end of our trip, so we did some shopping. a few b lot c little
- A: Did you see _____ other animals? B: Yes, lots. a many b much c a lot
- A: How much did it cost to fly to Australia? B: _____. It was very expensive. a Much b A lot of c A lot

I don't know them and they don't know me.

I'm Susan. Simon is my husband. **We** live in Green Street. **It** is a big street and our house is in the middle of **it**. John lives next to **me**. **He's** a doctor and **I** like **him** a lot. His wife Jane is noisy. **She** sings in the shower very loudly. Sometimes **we** tell **her** to be quiet but **she** doesn't listen to **us**. My other neighbours are Mr and Mrs Strange. **They** are very quiet. **I** don't know **them** very well. **We** have two sons. **They** know a story about Mr and Mrs Strange. **We** don't believe **them** but **you** will read about **it** in Exercise E.



? True or False? There are four people in Susan's family.

Answer: True

Subject and object pronouns

1 We can replace nouns with pronouns.

*I have two neighbours. **They** are nice. (they = two neighbours)*

*This is Jane. **She's** my wife. (She = Jane)*

2 There are different forms for subject pronouns and object pronouns, but **you** and **it** stay the same.

subject	verb	object
I	like	him
She	likes	me

I'm Susan.

***She** sings in the shower.*

*Sometimes **we** tell **her**.*

3 Use object pronouns after prepositions (e.g. **to**, **in**, **at**, **around**).

*John lives next to **them**.*

*Look at **me**!*

*The story is about **her**.*

subject pronoun

object pronoun

I

me

you

you

he

him

she

her

it

it

we

us

they

them

TIP

In English, a full sentence needs a subject. The subject can be a noun or a pronoun.

I want an apple. NOT ~~Want an apple.~~

It's eight o'clock. NOT ~~Is eight o'clock.~~

► See Unit 51 for more information on **it** as a pronoun.

Practice

A Underline the subject pronouns and circle the object pronouns.

- 1 I know him.
- 2 It is my birthday.
- 3 She likes them.
- 4 Where is he?
- 5 Can you see me?
- 6 Give it to us.
- 7 You don't understand her.
- 8 We're with you.

B Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns.



- 1 I am the winner!
- 2 _____ likes chocolate.
- 3 _____ can't sing very well.
- 4 _____ go first, please.
- 5 _____ smell very nice.
- 6 _____ costs a lot of money.

C Complete the sentences with the correct pronouns.

- 1 She's our new neighbour. Do you know her?
- 2 _____ are going to visit John. Will you come with us?
- 3 Your bags are heavy. I'll carry _____.
- 4 Listen, boys, can _____ be quiet, please?
- 5 Mr Jones isn't ill. I saw _____ this morning.
- 6 Where are my glasses? I can't find _____.
- 7 Dolphins are very intelligent. _____ have their own language.
- 8 Susan needs the book. Give _____ to _____ now, please.
- 9 I don't understand the instructions. Please explain _____ to _____.
- 10 Hello? It's _____, we're back.

D Complete the text with the correct pronouns.

Neighbours is an Australian soap opera.

1 It is now famous around the world.

Kylie Minogue started her career in *Neighbours*.

2 _____ married Jason Donovan in the show and

3 _____ both became pop stars. When Kylie left

Neighbours, thousands of people wrote to 4 _____.

wanted Kylie to stay in the show. 5 _____ all love

Kylie, please don't leave 6 _____! wrote many sad *Neighbours*

fans. Kylie left, but *Neighbours* continued. Today you can watch

7 _____ in many countries including Uganda, Ukraine and Laos.

Of course, the actors and characters change. 8 _____ are not

the same today, but fans still love 9 _____ all.



E Replace the nouns in the text with pronouns to make the story more natural.

Mr and Mrs Strange are my neighbours.

They Mr and Mrs Strange live in a very old house. The very old house has a big garden but most people don't know that the big garden is a magic garden! Mr and Mrs Strange have a daughter, Mary Strange. Last summer, my brother and I saw Mary Strange outside. Mary Strange had a golden key. Mary Strange took the golden key, went to the gate of the garden and opened the gate of the garden. Quietly, my brother and I followed Mary Strange inside. My brother and I saw Mr and Mrs Strange. Mr and Mrs Strange were sitting in a tree. Mary flew to Mr and Mrs Strange. A bird in the tree spoke to Mary and Mary answered the bird. My brother and I ran away.

MY TURN!

Do you like these things / people? Use pronouns in your answers and write them in your notebook.

- 1 English I like it.
- 2 Swimming I don't like it.
- 3 Red shoes
- 4 Jazz
- 5 Your doctor
- 6 Basketball
- 7 Jennifer Lopez
- 8 Brad Pitt
- 9 Your neighbours

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 He is my neighbour. I like _____ likes me.
a him and he b them and they
c he and him
- 2 Please visit _____ soon.
a us b we c they
- 3 I spend a lot of time with _____.
a it b them c they
- 4 That's me in the picture. _____ an old picture.
a Is b He's c It's
- 5 Can I give _____ a message?
a her b he c she

My Test answers: 1a 2a 3b 4c 5a



My name is Joe. I live in Philadelphia in the United States. I work in my **father's bakery**.

My great-grandfather, Emilio, came here from Italy in 1902. **Emilio's brother** arrived two years later. At first, my great-grandmother, Rosa, did not want to leave her **parents' home** in Italy. But she loved getting my **great-grandfather's letters**, and finally she decided to come. She came in 1905 with their young children. The family was happy to be together again.

The family had little money. **Emilio's first jobs** were selling fruit and building roads. They worked very hard to save money, and in 1915 they bought their first little home. They were happy that their **children's future** was more certain.



Where is Joe from?

Answer: Joe is from the United States, but his great-grandparents came from Italy.

Possessive 's

- 1 Add 's to a singular noun to mean 'belongs to'.
my father's bakery
Emilio's brother
- 2 After a plural noun which ends in -s, just add '.
her parents' home
- 3 Add 's to irregular plural nouns (which do not end in -s).
their children's future
- 4 We can use 's without a following noun, for example when we answer questions with *Whose?*
A: Whose bakery is it? B: It's my father's.

► See Units 26 and 50 for *Whose?*

TIP

We often use 's without a noun to talk about shops, businesses or someone's house

My aunt stayed at Rosa's. (= Rosa's house)

We had a great pizza at Mario's. (= Mario's restaurant)

- 5 When there are two nouns, we usually add 's to the second noun.

It's my mother and father's bakery. (The bakery belongs to both my mother and father.)

TIP

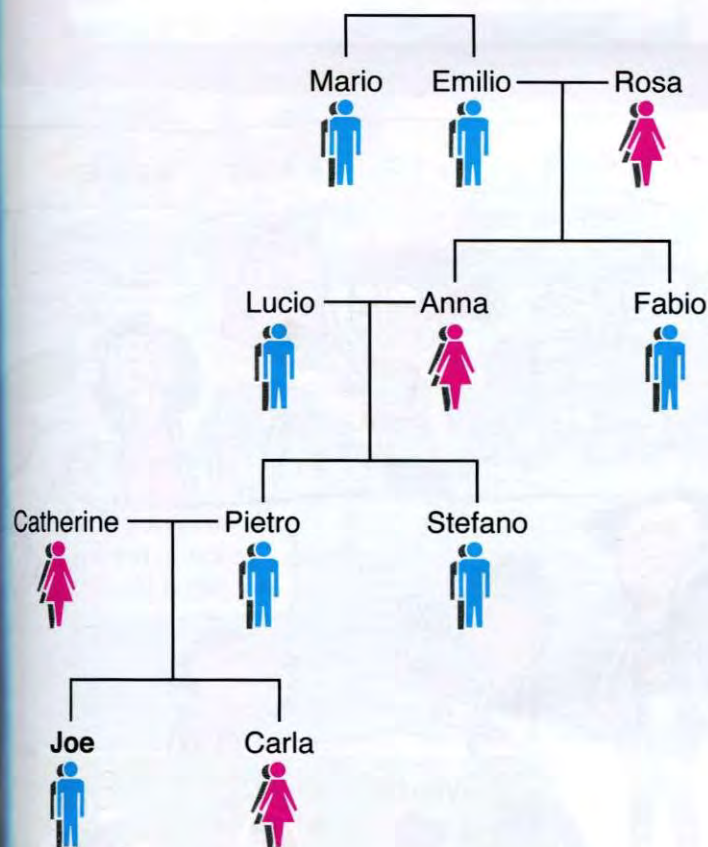
's can mean:

- 1 possessive: *Emilio's letters*
- 2 is: *he's poor*
- 3 has: *he's worked* (he has worked)

- 6 When a name ends in 's we still add 's.
Lois's house.







Practice

A Look at Joe's family tree and complete the sentences.



- 1 Emilio is Joe's great-grandfather.
- 2 is Emilio's wife.
- 3 is Mario's brother.
- 4 Emilio and Rosa have two children. The children's names are
- 5 are Lucio and Anna's sons.
- 6 is Emilio's great-grandson.
- 7 Fabio is Stefano and Pietro's uncle.
- 8 Lucio
- 9 Catherine
- 10 Stefano
- 11 Carla
- 12 Joe and Carla

B Complete the sentences using the correct names.

- 1  This is Rosa's hat.
- 2  These are boots.
- 3  This is stick.
- 4  This is baby.
- 5  These are shoes.
- 6  This is house.

C Add ' or 's in the correct places.

- 1 The president's son is coming this afternoon .
- 2 Jack daughter is taking her exams this summer .
- 3 Could you get this man coat for him, please ?
- 4 Women football is becoming more popular .
- 5 There was a managers meeting last week .
- 6 Young people diets are not always very healthy .
- 7 What does your country flag look like ?
- 8 My parents apartment is in San Francisco .
- 9 A: Is this your card?
B: No, it's my husband .

MY TURN!

Write sentences about your family in your notebook.
Use the words in the box.

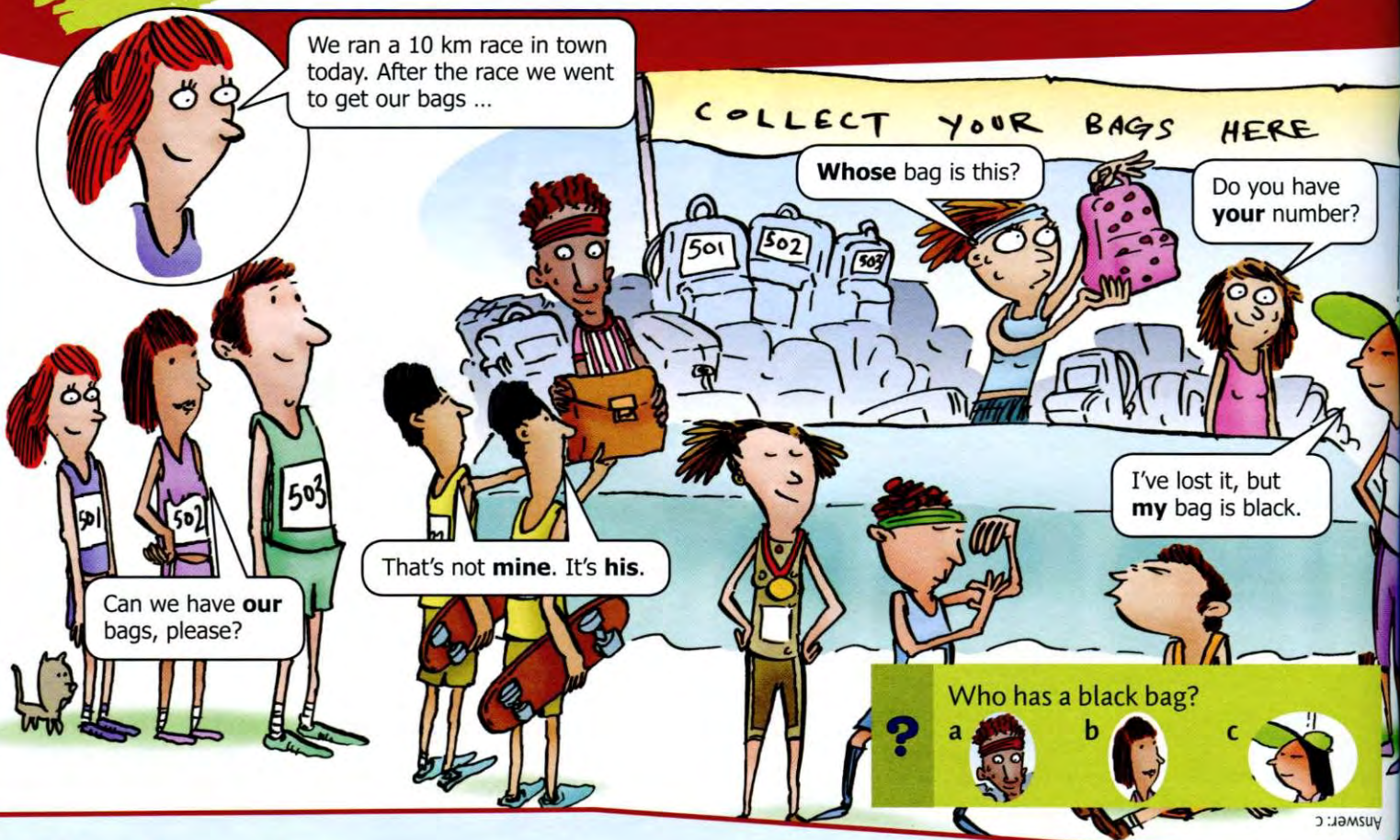
birthday hobby home job name room school
favourite sport

Example: My grandfather's name is Emilio.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 stayed in Italy. a Rosa parents b Rosa's parents c Rosa's parent's
- 2 children came to Philadelphia in 1905. a Emilio's and Rosa b Emilio and Rosa's c Emilio and Rosa
- 3 In the 1900s, many hats were very beautiful. a womans' b women's c womens'
- 4 lived in Philadelphia all his life. His name's Pietro. a Joe's father's b Joes fathers' c Joe's fathers
- 5 We always buy our bread at He has the best bakery in town. a Pietro's b Pietros c Pietros'



Whose?, my, mine

- 1 Use **Whose?** to ask who something belongs to.

A: **Whose** bag is this? B: It's Julie's.

► See Unit 26 for questions with **Whose?**

- 2 Use **my, your, his, her, our, their** with a noun.

My bag is black.

Do you have **your** number?

The boy doesn't have **his** bag.

The woman has lost **her** number.

Can we have **our** bags, please?

That's **their** little girl.

TIP

We don't use **a, an** or **the** before **my, your, his, her, our** or **their**.

I went to the cinema with **my** new friend, Luke.

NOT ... with **a my** new friend, Luke.

His first day at school was good.

NOT **The his** first day...

- 3 Use **mine, yours, his, hers, ours, theirs** without a noun.

That's not **mine**.

Do you have **yours**?

The boy doesn't have **his**.

The woman has lost **hers**.

Can we have **ours**?

That's **theirs**.

I	my bag	It's mine.
You	your book	It's yours.
He	his skateboard	It's his.
She	her number	It's hers.
It	its name	—
We	our house	It's ours.
They	their car	It's theirs.

TIP

It's is different from **its**.

It's a dog. (= it is)

What's **its** name? (= What's the dog's name?)

Practice

A Complete the letter with *my, your, his, her, our* or *their*.



Dear Jez,
This is a photo of ¹ my family. We are just finishing the run. This is ² dad. He was really pleased with ³ time. He ran 10 km in 55 minutes. This is ⁴ mum. She's wearing ⁵ race number. This is ⁶ dog. The dog's wearing ⁷ medals. Do you and ⁸ family do any sports together?
Love, Stacey x
PS In the photo you can also see ⁹ friends, Hari and Jay. They always do the race on ¹⁰ skateboards.

B Underline the correct option.

- 1 She lives at the end of our / *ours* street.
- 2 A: Is that Claudia's bike?
B: No, that's her / *hers* over there.
- 3 A: My / *Mine* new computer is really fast.
B: Lucky you! My / *Mine* is really slow!
- 4 My grandparents live in this village. That's their / *theirs* flat on the top floor.
- 5 A: Is Stella OK?
B: No, I think she has hurt her / *hers* arm.
- 6 My / *mine* eyes are blue and your / *yours* are brown.
- 7 I went to San Gimignano on holiday. It's / *Its* a very beautiful town.
- 8 The Black Pharaohs ruled Egypt for 75 years. Until recently, we did not know much about their / *theirs* history.
- 9 Welcome to the museum, everybody. Please leave your / *yours* bags at the desk.

C Complete the sentences using an appropriate possessive form.

- 1 Do these sunglasses belong to you?
No, they're not mine.
- 2 I've just seen Teresa. She was with husband.
- 3 A: How is Luke getting home?
B: parents are coming to collect him.
- 4 We would like to have the Olympic games in country.
- 5 A: Are your parents in?
B: No, they've gone to visit a friend of
- 6 I had a phone call from my brother yesterday. It was great to hear news.
- 7 The company is having a meeting for all members on Friday.
- 8 That's Mrs Stanley, my doctor. And that's big house.
- 9 A: Does that blue car belong to your friends?
B: No, is red.
- 10 A: We're staying in this hotel. room is on the ground floor.
B: So are we! But is on the top floor.
- 11 That's Michael's bag, but those boots aren't
- 12 A: Mum, me and Jack have had an idea
B: I'm just going to finish my lunch and then you can tell me about that idea of

MY TURN!

Answer the questions truthfully in your notebook. If the answer is no, use an appropriate possessive form in the answer.

- 1 Do you have black jeans?
Yes, I do. / No, mine are blue. / No, my jeans are blue.
- 2 Do you have a pink mobile phone?
- 3 Does your teacher have a sports car?
- 4 Does your friend have a white bag?
- 5 Is your family home very large?
- 6 Do your parents have a fast computer?
- 7 Do you have a tidy bedroom?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 bag is black and red. That's it under your table. a My the b The my c My
- 2 This little girl can't find running shoes. a she's b her c hers
- 3 A: Whose medals are these? B: They're I saw those boys winning them. a theirs b their c their's
- 4 My dog has lost bone. Is it here? a it's b its' c its
- 5 My sister and I love running with parents. a our b ours c our's



There's a very unusual book in Cincinnati University library. It's only 0.99mm². It's very small but it's a real book: there are 30 pages and there are three colour pictures. We asked the librarian Mark Palkovic some questions about the book:

'Is it an interesting book?'

'Yes, it is. It's a story by the Russian author Chekhov.'

'Is it in Russian?'

'No, it isn't. It's a translation into English.'

'Are there any other copies?'

'Yes, there are 99 other copies. They're in different museums and libraries. Our copy is in very good condition. For example, there aren't any missing pages. It's beautiful.'

'Can I see it, please?'

'No, it's too small!'



True or False? The book has pictures but no words.

Answer: False

There and it

- Use **there + be** to show that something is present or exists.
There is an unusual book in the library.
- Use **there is** with singular subjects and **there are** with plural subjects. We often use **there + be** with **a, some** and **any**.
There isn't a Post Office but there are three shops.
A: Are there any flowers? B: Yes, there are some here.
- See Unit 45 for **some** and **any**.
- Use **there is** with uncountable nouns and with a series of singular and uncountable nouns.
There is milk in your coffee.
There's an apple, some bread and a bottle of milk.
- We can use **there** in different tenses.
There was a problem but there won't be tomorrow.
- In conversation, the short form **there's** is used. Don't use **there's** in questions or short answers.
A: Is there a computer I can use? B: Yes, there is.
- Use **it + be** with a singular or uncountable noun (e.g. *Monday, information*) or adjective (e.g. *big, red*) to identify or describe something or someone.
It's a library, not a museum.
It is quiet in Cincinnati.
Look Lisa, it's David!
- Use **it + be** to describe days, dates, times and weather.
It's Monday.
It's two o'clock.
It isn't cold.
- Use **it + be** for nouns which have already been mentioned or which are already known to exist.
A: Is there a cafe here? B: Yes, but it's not open.
A: What's that? B: It's a mouse!

statement ✓	negative ✗
It is ... (It's ...)	It is not ... (It isn't ... / It's not ...)

question ?	short answer ✓/✗
Is it ...?	Yes, it is. / No, it isn't.

TIP

Use **It's** to introduce yourself on the phone.
Hi Jane. It's Simon here.

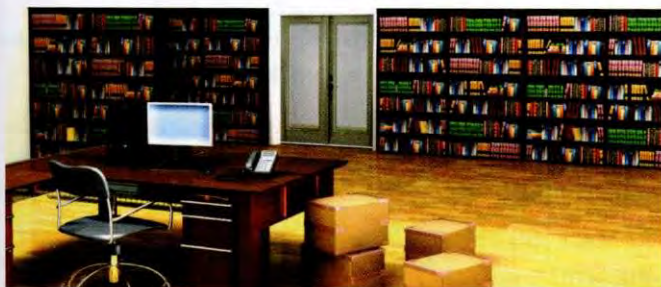
► See Unit 2 for more information on **be**.

	statement ✓	negative ✗
singular	There is ... (There's ...)	There is not ... (There isn't ... / There's not ...)
plural	There are ...	There are not ... (There aren't ...)

question ?	short answer ✓/✗
Is there ...?	Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
Are there ...?	Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.

Practice

- A** Look at the picture for one minute, then cover it. If the things in the box were in the picture, write sentences in your notebook beginning *There's ... / There are some ...*. If the things were not in the picture, write sentences beginning *There isn't ... / There aren't any ...*.



books boxes clock computer ~~door~~ lamp
people pictures telephone windows

Examples: *There aren't any windows. There's a door.*

B Underline the correct option.

- 1 I'm happy. *There's / It's* Friday and I love Fridays.
- 2 *There isn't / It isn't* a lesson today.
- 3 *There is / It is* white bread if you don't like brown bread.
- 4 *Is there / it* five o'clock already?
- 5 I like Norwich. *There's / It's* a great city.
- 6 *There / It* is next to the bank.
- 7 Listen, *there is / it is* something I need to tell you.
- 8 Here's a letter. *There's / It's* for you.
- 9 *There isn't / It isn't* my book.
- 10 Oh no! *Is there / it* closed?
- 11 *Is there / it* any more news?

C Put the words in the correct order and add *there* or *it* and *was* or *were*.

- 1 you / to / a / next / pen
There was a pen next to you.
- 2 birthday / my / yesterday
- 3 you / to / see / lovely / again
- 4 of / a / people / lot
- 5 in / once / bears / England
- 6 time / bed / for / almost
- 7 bottle / the / in / water / some
- 8 long / three / kilometres

D Complete the text with the correct forms of *there + be* and *it + be*. (Some are negatives.)

The Three Sisters is a famous play by Anton Chekhov.

1 *It isn't* a small book but 2 very famous.
3 three sisters. They live in a boring town at the beginning of the 20th century. 4 nothing to do in this town. They want to live in Moscow because 5 the capital. 6 more opportunities in Moscow. However, 7 a long way to Moscow and 8 many trains. 9 easy to move from a small town to the capital. So, the sisters never go to Moscow. *The Three Sisters* is a classic play and 10 translations into many languages.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write two sentences about each item in the left-hand column using words in the right-hand column. One sentence should begin *There's ...* and one sentence should begin *It's ...*.

a bus	on the website
a good programme	really interesting
a door	on television
some information	for you
a text message	open
	at the bus stop
	in the wall
	from Susie
	very late!
	really funny!

Example: *There's a door in the wall. It's open.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 a lot of information on the website.
a There are b There's c It's
- 2 I like our library. very good and there are a lot of useful books. a Its b There's c It's
- 3 very cold in our library.
a There's b It's c Is
- 4 There any colour pictures in the book.
a isn't b hasn't c aren't
- 5 A: Is there a copy in the library? B: Yes,
a there is b there's c it is

A Replace the underlined words with pronouns to make this story more natural.

Hi. My name's Will. I live in a house with ¹Will's parents and brother, Tom.
²Will's family's house has a nice big garden where my brother and I like playing football.

One day, ³Will kicked the ball over the garden wall and into ⁴Will's family's neighbours' garden. The neighbours are called Mr and Mrs Stark and ⁵the neighbours are not very nice people. ⁶The neighbours don't like ⁷Will's family and ⁸Will's family don't like ⁹the neighbours.

¹⁰Will and Tom asked ¹¹the neighbours for ¹²Will and Tom's ball back, but Mrs Stark didn't give ¹³the ball to us. Mrs Stark said ¹⁴The ball is in ¹⁵Mr and Mrs Stark's garden so ¹⁶the ball is ¹⁷Mr and Mrs Stark's.

Later that day, Mrs Stark came to ¹⁸Will's family's house. ¹⁹Mrs Stark had ²⁰Will and Tom's ball. 'Sorry. Here's the ball,' ²¹Mrs Stark said to me. 'I need ²²Will's help. Today a bird took ²³Mrs Stark's gold watch and dropped ²⁴the watch in ²⁵Will's family's garden. Can ²⁶Will give ²⁷Mrs Stark the watch back, please?'

What do you think ²⁸Will said?

B Answer the questions with sentences beginning *there or it*.

- How many people are in your class?
There are 26.
- What is the time?
.....
- What colour is your country's flag?
.....
- What can you see outside the window?
.....
- Does your town have a lot of tourists?
.....
- Who is your best friend?
.....
- What wild animals live in your country?
.....
- What day was your birthday on last year?
.....
- What was on TV last night?
.....
- What was the weather like yesterday?
.....

C Put apostrophes (') in the correct places in these sentences.

- Robert's got some new trousers, but they're not very nice.
- My brothers friend is very kind but hes not very clever.
- Samanthas baby brother sleeps in her parents bedroom.
- Its good that she isnt angry.
- My friends computer doesnt work.
- Ill do my work and you can do yours.
- My sister likes my brothers friends but he doesnt like hers.
- The childrens rooms are very dirty.
- Marias horses names are Daisy and Rosy.
- Terrys parents took his keys and he took theirs.

D Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use two to four words including the word in brackets.

- a Who does this phone belong to? (is)
b Whose phone is this?
- a Barry and Gary have a house by the sea. We stayed there last summer. (in)
b We stayed house by the sea last summer.
- a My dad owns these skis. (are)
b These skis
- a You can use my dictionary. Have you lost yours? (lend)
b Have you lost your dictionary? I'll
- a Al and Paula live near a lake. They're very lucky. (house)
b Al and Paula are very lucky. near a lake.
- a She talks but he never listens. (to)
b He never when she talks.
- a Can I have a new bike, please? (give)
b Can a new bike, please?

E Complete this report. Write one word from the box in each space.

a any anything everybody few little lot of lots
many many many much much nobody of

A ¹ few days ago I interviewed 25 students about their cinema habits. Here are the results of my survey.

Question 1: How ² times do you go to the cinema every month?

- ³ in the class goes to the cinema sometimes.
⁴ people go to the cinema once or twice a month.
⁵ few people go three, four or five times.
⁶ goes more than five times a month.

Question 2: How ⁷ cola do you usually drink at the cinema?

- ⁸ of people buy cola at the cinema, and some ⁹ them say they drink a ¹⁰ cola (1 litre or more) while they are watching a film. Seventeen people say they drink a ¹¹ cola (less than 1 litre). A few people never drink ¹² cola.

Question 3: How ¹³ food do you usually buy at the cinema?

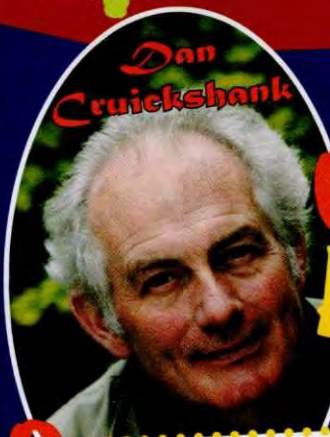
People in my class don't buy ¹⁴ snacks (sandwiches, hot dogs, etc.) at the cinema. Four people in the group never buy ¹⁵ at the cinema because it is very expensive.



Number of visits to cinema every month

F Underline the correct option.

- Alison: Hello. ¹ That / This / Here is Alison. Is ² that / you / there, Sally?
- Sally: Yes, it is. Hi, Alison. Where are you?
- Alison: I'm camping ³ anywhere / nowhere / somewhere in the forest. I'm here with ⁴ some / any / a little of the girls from my class.
- Sally: ⁵ That / This / Those sounds nice.
- Alison: Yeah, it's great. It's so big – we can walk a long way in ⁶ any / this / no direction and we never see ⁷ any / an / no other people. But we've seen ⁸ that / an / lots of animals.
- Sally: Really? Have you seen ⁹ a / much / any bears?
- Alison: No, none. We've heard ¹⁰ a few / few of / a few of, but we haven't seen ¹¹ any of / any / none. We have seen ¹² some / lots / a few of rabbits. We've even seen ¹³ any / a little / a few snakes.
- Sally: That's fantastic. What's ¹⁴ the / a / - weather like?
- Alison: Well, we've had ¹⁵ some / a / a few nice weather, but we've also had ¹⁶ a few / a few of / a lot of rain. Last night we all got wet while we were coming home. ¹⁷ A little of / Much of / A few of the girls got sick.
- Sally: That doesn't sound like ¹⁸ many / much / a fun. Are you going ¹⁹ nowhere / anywhere / everywhere today?
- Alison: No, ²⁰ somewhere / nowhere / anywhere. We're going to stay at the campsite and wait for the doctor.
- Sally: Oh no.
- Alison: Listen, I have to go. I'll see you soon.
- Sally: OK, bye. Have ²¹ any / a / - fun!



Dan Cruickshank

is a TV presenter of travel and history programmes. He travels a lot. We asked him some questions.

Q You've been to Ethiopia. What was it like there?

A I was very **happy** to visit Ethiopia. It's a **wonderful** place. The north of the country is not **dry** – it's very **green**. It has an **interesting** history.

Q What about the people? What are they like?

A The **Ethiopian** people are **beautiful** and **kind**.

Q What don't you like about travelling?

A I don't like airports – they're **boring**!

Q Do you have a **favourite** city?

A I have two favourite cities: Damascus and Calcutta. They are both **ancient** cities. Calcutta has some **great** palaces and it seems very **safe**.



? What places does Dan Cruickshank talk about?

Answer: Damascus, Calcutta and Ethiopia.

Adjectives

- 1 An adjective describes a noun or a pronoun.
It's a wonderful country. They are beautiful.
- 2 Put the adjective before the noun.
It has an interesting history.
NOT *It has a history interesting.*

TIP

There are a few adjectives which we only use after the noun or pronoun. For example: *afraid, alive, alone, asleep, awake, glad*. We prefer to use *ill* and *well* (= healthy) after the noun, too.

The baby is awake. NOT ... *the awake baby* ...
The man is ill. NOT ... *the ill man* ...

- 3 We use adjectives after the verbs *be, feel, look, seem, smell, sound, taste*.
It is safe. They seem beautiful and charming.
- 4 A number of adjectives end in -y.
ugly, funny, happy
-ful at the end of an adjective often has a meaning similar to 'full of'.
careful, useful
-less often means 'without'.
careless, useless

TIP

Adjectives don't change in the plural.
ancient cities NOT *ancients cities*

- 5 We can use words like *very, quite, a bit* and *a little* with adjectives. Use *quite, a bit* and *a little* after the noun or pronoun.
He's quite tall. (= not tall, but not short)
NOT *He's quite tall man.*
The weather's a bit cold. The weather's a little cold.
NOT *It's a bit cold weather.*

Very can be used before or after the noun or pronoun.
She's a very kind person. OR *She's very kind.*

We don't use words like *a bit* or *really* in front of all adjectives. For example, we say *He is married*, but NOT *He is quite married*. We say *It is delicious*, but NOT *It's very delicious*. Other examples are: *dead, enormous, exhausted, impossible, perfect*.

- 6 Sometimes we use another noun instead of an adjective.
shoe + shop = a shoe shop
dog + food = dog food

Practice

- A** Find at least ten pairs of adjectives and nouns that go together and write them in your notebook. (Some adjectives may go with more than one noun.)

ancient careless city cold day empty face
glass great information man terrible
time weather worker ugly useful young

Example: *young man*

- B** Put a noun from box A with a noun from box B to make words which match the definitions.

A bed book CD credit
post taxi tooth train

B brush card driver man
player room shop station

- 1 You buy books here. *a book shop*
- 2 You can use this if you don't have any money.
- 3 You can use this to listen to music.
- 4 You clean your teeth with this.
- 5 You sleep here.
- 6 You go here to travel to a different place.
- 7 This person brings your letters.
- 8 This person takes people to other places.

- C** Make sentences by putting the words in order, then suggest who or what each sentence is about.

- 1 stories / writes / wonderful / he / think / I
I think he writes wonderful stories. (Pablo Coelho)
- 2 from / far / it / not / is / here
- 3 was / busy / very / it / place / a
- 4 well / very / doesn't / she / look
- 5 these / lovely / smell / flowers

- 6 friendly / very / not / she / does / seem
- 7 it / idea / not / is / good / a
- 8 actor / my / he / favourite / is
- 9 do / nice / taste / they / not
- 10 always / is / he / asleep!

- D** Complete the sentences using *a bit*, *a little*, *quite* or *very* where possible.

- 1 *My dad is quite* tall.
- 2 impossible.
- 3 nice.
- 4 enormous
- 5 tired
- 6 short.
- 7 small.
- 8 perfect.
- 9 happy.
- 10 cold.

MY TURN!

Answer the questions about your favourite city in your notebook. Use an adjective in each answer.

- 1 Do you have a favourite city?
- 2 When you first arrived in this city, how did you feel?
- 3 Think of one place every visitor must see. What is it? Tell us something interesting about it.
- 4 Imagine you are flying over the city in an aeroplane. What does the city look like?
- 5 What are the people like there?
- 6 What is the city like at night?
- 7 What do you miss about this city?

- 1 *My favourite city is Prague. It's a beautiful city.*

MY TEST!

- Circle the correct option.**

- 1 Istanbul and Barcelona are both a beautiful cities b beautiful cities c cities beautifuls
- 2 He has met many people. a afraid b awake c interesting
- 3 I am I often lose things. a quite careless man b quite careless c quite careful
- 4 The king's palace is very a old b enormous c perfect
- 5 I spend a lot of time in a airport's restaurants b airport restaurants c restaurant airports

The **International Olympic** Museum in Lausanne, Switzerland has many unique exhibits. Here are some examples:

The **original wooden** torch from Montreal (1976).



The **wonderful golden** shoes of the brilliant 100 m **sprinter**, Carl Lewis.



A **fascinating short** film clip of the first modern Olympics (1896).



An **ancient Greek** vase from Olympia (450 BC).



An **interesting small** stamp from London (1948).



Which country were the 1976 Olympics in?

Answer: Canada

Order of adjectives

- 1 When there is more than one adjective before a noun, the adjectives usually go in a specific order.

an interesting old museum NOT *an old interesting museum*
a popular British sport NOT *a British popular sport*

- 2 Opinion adjectives (e.g. *nice, terrible, strange*, etc.) go before factual adjectives (e.g. *old, green, plastic*, etc.).

the wonderful golden shoes
a brilliant educational experience

- 3 The usual order of adjectives is:

opinion	size	quality	age	shape	colour	origin	material
lovely	big	clever	old	round	red	Italian	paper
strange	long	happy	recent	square	black	African	stone

an ancient Greek vase (age + origin)

a small square stamp (size + shape)

a big strong wooden box (size + quality + material)

my lovely warm new green jumper (opinion + quality + age + colour)

- 4 If there is an adjective phrase with numbers before a noun, we often use hyphens (-) to separate the words.

We stayed in a five-star hotel.
A horse is a four-legged animal.

Practice

A Write these adjectives in the correct column.

amazing Asian big brown cheese dirty enormous
famous glass golden handsome happy modern new
quiet Roman short Swiss white

opinion	size	quality	age	colour	origin	material
	big					

B Describe the pictures using one word from each column.

amazing enormous	golden Kenyan	basketball discus
heavy long	new slim silver	golf marathon
tall tired	70-metre	Olympic 100-metre



- 1 an enormous golden golf cup
- 2 a medal
- 3 a runner
- 4 a really record
- 5 a player
- 6 a really throw

C Complete each sentence with the correct adjective.

- 1 It's a red English teapot.
(English / small)
- 2 I got a new poster for my birthday. (football / beautiful)
- 3 Paint a square house.
(big / brown)
- 4 It's a Japanese boat.
(real / fishing)
- 5 The police are looking for a blonde girl. (tall / French)
- 6 It was a round ball.
(plastic / hard)
- 7 Do you really need silver shoes? (expensive / golf)
- 8 I bought a red car. (fast / family)

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write six phrases describing the nouns in the box using three adjectives. Don't use any adjective more than once.

armchair bear dress footballer friend
sandwich shoes watch window

Example: a big brown Russian bear

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 Lausanne is a a beautiful Swiss-town b beautiful Swiss town c Swiss beautiful town
- 2 We saw medal at the museum.
a an ancient gold incredible b a gold ancient incredible c an incredible ancient gold
- 3 The winner of the race was a young girl. a amazing b small c Chinese
- 4 They are building stadium in the city.
a an enormous new Olympic b a new Olympic enormous c an Olympic new enormous
- 5 The ancient Romans loved a horses race b horse races c horses races

Are you looking for a really different skiing holiday?

Try Sochi, Russia, location of the 2014 winter Olympics. Now it's **easier** than ever to travel to Sochi and it's **nearer** than you think. The new airport terminal is **nicer** and much **more convenient** than the old one. Things are a bit **more expensive** than in Switzerland but Russians say the snow is **whiter** and **faster**. After all that skiing you will go home **slimmer** and **fitter** than when you arrived! If you get tired of skiing, Sochi beach is close and the entertainment is even **better** there. Some tourists think the nightlife is **more interesting** than the skiing!

Try Sochi – it really is as good as we say!



Is Sochi near the sea?

Answer: Yes

Comparatives

- 1 Use the comparative form of adjectives to compare people, things, actions and events.

The airport is **smaller** but **more convenient**.
The Sochi Olympics will be **better** than the Vancouver Olympics.

- 2 To make the comparative of one-syllable adjectives, add **-er** to the adjective.

slow → slower, long → longer

- 3 Some two-syllable adjectives form comparatives with **-er**, or **more** before the adjective.

clever → cleverer, narrow → narrower,
simple → simpler

- 4 To make the comparative of long adjectives (at least two syllables) put **more** before the adjective.

intelligent → more intelligent
hard-working → more hard-working

TIP

Two-syllable adjectives ending in **-y** have **-er** endings.

The journey was **easier** last year.
I feel **happier** now.

- 5 A few comparative adjectives have irregular forms.

good → better, bad → worse, far → further / farther

TIP

further or farther

When we talk about distance, the meaning is the same.

It is 10 km further / farther.

Use **further**, not **farther**, to mean 'extra'.

There is **further** information about Sochi on the website.

- 6 To compare different people, things, actions and events in the same sentence, use comparative adjective + **than**.

Winter is **colder than** summer.

- 7 Use **as + adjective + as** to say that people or things are equal.

I'm **as tall as** you.

▶ See Unit 57 for more information on **as ... as**.

- 8 The opposite of **more** is **less**. We usually use **less** before adjectives of two syllables and more.

Are people **less happy** today?

Travelling is **less difficult** now.

We often use **not as ... (as)** instead of **less** in speaking and informal language.

Travelling is **not as difficult** now.

▶ See Unit 57 for **less** before adverbs (**less quickly**).

- 9 Don't use **very** on its own before a comparative adjective. Use **much**, **far** or **a lot**. **A lot** is more informal. If you want to say that the difference compared is small, use **a little** or **a bit**. **A bit** is more informal.

Sochi is **much hotter** than Moscow. NOT ... **very hotter** ...

Our hotel is **a little more expensive**.

Practice

A Complete the quiz questions using comparative forms of the adjectives in brackets. Then underline the answers.

- Which are higher : the Carpathians or the Rocky Mountains? (high)
- Which month is : February or March? (long)
- Which is : driving or flying? (dangerous)
- Which is : 'I want the bread.' or 'Can you give me the bread?' (polite)
- Which is : gold or silver? (rare)
- Which is : one mile or one kilometre? (far)
- Which city is : Tokyo or Seoul? (expensive)
- Which town is : Moscow or Madrid? (old)
- Who was when he died: Mozart or Shakespeare? (young)
- Which is : a kilogram of water or a kilogram of ice? (heavy)

Now check your answers at the bottom of the page.

B Use the information from Exercise A to complete these sentences using *less than* or *not as ... as*.

- February is not as long as March
- Flying
- Silver
- One kilometre
- Seoul
- Moscow

C Complete the sentences about the two hotels, using the information in the table and the adjectives in the box.

	Seaview	Pushkin
1 Atmosphere	😊😊	😊😊😊
2 Management	😊😊😊	😊😊😊
3 Price per day	100 euros	70 euros
4 Size	67 rooms	67 rooms
5 Distance from the beach	400m	15 minute walk
6 Service	😊😊	😊😊😊
7 Food	😊😊😊	😊😊😊😊
8 Check-out time	11.00	12.00

bad big expensive far good
good interesting late nice

- The atmosphere at Pushkin is nicer
- The management at Seaview is as good as the management at Pushkin.
- Seaview is 30 euros
- Pushkin is Seaview.
- Pushkin is from the beach.
- The service at Pushkin is than at Seaview.
- The food at Seaview is than at Pushkin.
- The check-out time at Pushkin is

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write sentences comparing the animals. Use *much*, *far*, *a lot*, *a little* or *a bit* and comparative adjectives.

Example: *The giraffe is much taller than the zebra.*



MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The beach in Sochi was the beach in my town.
a nicer than b nicer then c more nice than
- The mountains in Sochi are a little than the mountains in my country.
a bigger b bigger c more big
- This hotel used to be very bad, but now it's
a very better b much better c much more good
- Do you think the winter Olympics are as the summer Olympics?
a more interesting b as interesting c as much interesting
- I'm much than I was a few years ago.
a less healthier b not as healthy c less healthy

My Test! answers: 1a 2a 3b 4b 5c
Exercise A answers: 1 March 2 March 3 driving 4 Can you give me the bread? 5 gold 6 one mile 7 Tokyo 8 Madrid 9 Mozart 10 Both are the same!

Amazing facts

The **lowest** point on Earth is the Mariana Trench. It is the **deepest** part of the Pacific Ocean at 11 km down.

Antarctica has the **most extreme** climate. The temperature can be -50°C and wind speeds 200 km / hour. The penguins there live in probably the world's **most difficult** conditions.

The **biggest** tree is the Giant Sequoia, which grows in California, USA. *General Sherman* is the world's **largest** living tree and the **most famous** Sequoia. (William Sherman was one of the **most important** generals in American history.)



The shortest river is the Roe River in Montana, USA. It is only 61 metres long but it is one of the **most popular** tourist attractions in Montana.



Which is a good place for tourists? a The Mariana Trench b Antarctica c Montana

Superlatives

- 1 Use superlatives to compare people, things, actions and events.

*The **biggest** tree is the Giant Sequoia.
William Sherman was one of the **most important** generals.
It's the **best** thing I've ever seen.*

- 2 To make the superlative of one-syllable adjectives, add **-est**.

quick → quickest, low → lowest

- 3 To make the superlative of long adjectives (at least two syllables), put **most** before the adjective, e.g. **most popular**, **most famous**.

- 4 We can use **-est** with some two-syllable adjectives, and some adjectives ending in **-y**, e.g. **simplest**, **happiest**.

*Which is the **simplest**?
That was the **happiest** day of my life.*

- 5 Some superlatives have irregular forms.

good → best, bad → worst, far → furthest / farthest

- 6 The opposite of **most** is **least**.

*I bought it because it was the **least expensive**.*

- 7 We usually use **the** before superlatives.

*The **oldest** rock in the world is in Australia.*

- 8 We can use superlatives without a noun.

*My essay is not the longest, but it's the **most interesting**.*

TIP

Use **in** + the name of a group or place (*class, team, Italy, world, etc.*) after a superlative.

*He is the **most important** player **in** the team.*

NOT *...of the team.*

Use **of** + plurals after a superlative.

*This is the **hardest** question **of** them all.*

Practice

A Match the pairs of opposite adjectives and write the superlative forms.

dangerous	good	hard-working	bad	boring	dry	happy	lazy
interesting	long	old	sad	new	short	safe	weak
strong	wet						

- 1 longest ≠ shortest 2 ≠
 3 ≠ 4 ≠
 5 ≠ 6 ≠
 7 ≠ 8 ≠
 9 ≠

B Complete the sentences with the superlatives of the words in brackets.



- 1 Gran is the fittest (fit)
 2 Dad is the most tired (tired)
 3 Mum is the tallest (tall)



- 4 has ears.
 (long)
 5 has eyes.
 (big)



- 6
 (cheap)
 7
 (expensive)



- 8 has T-shirt.
 (unusual)

C Put the numbers 1–5 under each heading, then write sentences with superlatives or *least* + adjective in your notebook.

	heavy	nice	useful	interesting	fast	dangerous
elephant	1					
horse	4					
mouse	5					
dog	3					
sheep	2					

- 1 The elephant is the heaviest.

D Make sentences using words and phrases from the table and write them in your notebook.

The Roe	large	star
Mount Everest	short	continent
The Vatican City	common	mountain
The blue whale	bright	country
Antarctica	high	river
Hydrogen	deep	lake
Sirius	cold	gas
Baikal	small	animal

- 1 The Roe is the shortest river.

MY TURN!

Write superlative phrases advertising these things in your notebook.

- 1 A computer game: This is the most exciting game!
 2 A car
 3 A mobile phone
 4 A dog
 5 A flat
 6 A café

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 Moscow is the world's city for foreigners. **a** expensivest **b** more expensive **c** most expensive
 2 The Africa is Kilimanjaro. **a** most tall mountain of **b** tallest mountain in **c** most tall mountain in
 3 place in the world is El Azizia. **a** The most hot **b** Hottest **c** The hottest
 4 The interesting place in the world is my town – nothing ever happens there. **a** least **b** less **c** not very
 5 The largest the American Great Lakes is Lake Superior. **a** in **b** from **c** of



Teenagers are busy people, but eating **fast** doesn't have to mean eating **badly**. Feel good, look good, have more energy and sleep well; these are four good reasons to eat healthily.

Carbohydrates are an important part of a healthy diet. Simple carbohydrates, or sugars, give us energy quickly, but only for a short time. But you can also find complex carbohydrates in food such as bananas, rice, pasta and bread. These give us energy slowly, and for longer.

Most people don't eat enough complex carbohydrates, but you can easily eat more. For example: 1. Eat more pasta. 2. Have more potatoes and less meat. 3. Make sure you eat bread or toast for breakfast.



Which food is **not** a carbohydrate? a pasta b meat c rice d bananas

Answer: b

Adverbs of manner

- 1 Use adverbs of manner to describe how something happens.

*He eats very **healthily**. They give us energy **quickly**.*

- 2 We usually form adverbs of manner by adding **-ly** to the adjective.

bad → badly, careful → carefully

If the adjective ends in **-e**, take off the **-e**.

gentle → gently

If the adjective ends in **-y**, we usually change the **-y** to **i**.

angry → angrily

easy → easily

(un)happy → (un)happily

BUT shy → shyly

healthy → healthily

heavy → heavily

noisy → noisily

- 3 Some adjectives end in **-ly**, e.g. *friendly, lonely, lovely, silly, ugly*. We don't add **-ly** to make the adverb. We say, for example:

*He spoke to them **in a friendly way**.*

- 4 Some adverbs are the same as the adjectives, e.g. *early, far, fast, hard, high, late, low*.

*a **fast** car (= adjective), eating **fast** (= adverb)*

- 5 *Well* is the adverb from *good*.

*Sleep **well**.*

TIP

Well can also be an adjective. It means 'healthy'.

*My teacher was not at school today. He is not **well**.*

- 6 Adverbs of manner often come at the end of a sentence.

*Simple carbohydrates provide energy **quickly**.*

TIP

An adverb does not usually come between a verb and the object.

*She plays tennis **well**.* NOT *She plays **well** tennis.*

*Complex carbohydrates provide energy **slowly**.*

NOT *Complex carbohydrates provide **slowly** energy.*

► See page 183 for more spelling rules.

Practice

A Read each sentence a, then complete sentence b with a suitable adverb.

- 1 a They have a healthy diet.
b They eat healthily.
- 2 a I had a bad diet when I was a student.
b I ate when I was a student.
- 3 a I like eating fish because it is quick to cook.
b I like eating fish because you can cook it
- 4 a My little sister is noisy when she eats.
b My little sister eats
- 5 a It was easy to find the restaurant.
b We found the restaurant
- 6 a My friend prepared the meal but he was very slow.
b My friend prepared the meal
- 7 a When he put the food on the plates, he was very careful.
b He put the food on the plates very

B Complete the sentences using adverbs made from the adjectives in the box.

careful early far fast good happy **hard**
immediate late sudden

- 1 My class has studied very hard for our exam.
- 2 Where is the hotel? Do we have to go ?
- 3 My dog loves water, he will swim for hours.
- 4 I never go on motorways – I don't like driving
- 5 My aunt lives in Japan. She speaks Japanese now.
- 6 Please drive through the village.
- 7 It's only six o'clock. Why did you get up so ?
- 8 My friend invited me to stay and I said 'yes'
- 9 We were walking in the park when a man shouted at us.
- 10 He left home and had to run to work.

C Complete the sentences about the famous people using the words in the table. Choose a verb and make an adverb from an appropriate adjective.

could	dance hit paint play football play chess run sing	beautiful brilliant very good hard quick
-------	---	--

- 1 Rudolf Nureyev could dance beautifully.
- 2 Leonardo da Vinci
- 3 Rocky Marciano
- 4 Carl Lewis
- 5 The Beatles
- 6 Pelé
- 7 Garry Kasparov

Make sentences about famous people today and write them in your notebook.

Example: Cristiano Ronaldo can play football brilliantly.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write sentences about what the people are doing and how.



- 1 She is running quickly / fast.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 She always eats a her food quick b her food quickly c quickly her food
- 2 Wash your hands before cooking. a carefully b careful c carefully
- 3 She cooks really a good b goodly c well
- 4 They worked very in the kitchen. a hard b harder c hardly
- 5 He speaks when he's excited. a sillily b sillyly c in a silly way

Q Which will fall **faster**: a ball of paper or a ball of wood?

A Many people think that light objects always fall **more slowly**. But – remember Galileo – if the balls are the same size they will hit the ground at the same time.

Q In a storm we see the **lightning** before we hear the **thunder**. Why?

A Because light travels **more quickly** than sound.

Q Which runs **most quickly**: an ostrich, an emu or a 100-metre runner?

A An ostrich runs **most quickly** at around 56 km an hour. An emu runs at about 48 km an hour and a 100-metre runner at about 32 km an hour.

Q Which jumps **furthest**: a kangaroo, a frog or a flea?

A A kangaroo jumps **furthest** – about metres. But the flea jumps **best**. It jumps 200 times its own body length!



Underline the correct option. A kangaroo can jump 9 metres / 32 metres / 200 metres.

Answer: 9 metres

Comparative and superlative adverbs

- 1 Add **more** or **less** to make the comparative form of most adverbs.

Light travels **more quickly** than sound.

Light objects do not fall **less quickly**.

- 2 Add **most** or **least** to make the superlative form of most adverbs.

Which runs **most quickly**?

Which runs **least quickly**?

- 3 Many short adverbs, such as **early**, **fast**, **hard**, **high**, **late**, **long** and **soon** have comparative forms with **-er** and superlative forms with **-est**.

early → earlier → earliest, fast → faster → fastest

early → less early → least early, fast → less fast → least fast

- 4 Some common adverbs have irregular comparative and superlative forms.

well → better → best

badly → worse → worst

far → farther / further → farthest / furthest

- 5 Use **as + adverb + as** when two or more people or things are equal.

I work **as hard as** you.

- See Units 54 and 55 for comparative and superlative forms of adjectives.

- See Unit 56 for more information on forming adverbs.

Practice

A Complete the table.

	adverb	comparative	superlative
1	badly	worse	worst
2	early		
3		more easily	
4	far		
5		better	
6			most happily
7		more slowly	
8	safely		

B Underline the correct option.

- Can you explain your ideas more simply / most simply?
- The storm arrived soon / sooner than we expected.
- There are many different types of plane, but rocket planes like the X-15 fly higher / highest.
- Special cycle roads mean people can cycle more safely / most safely.
- I don't know who plays the guitar badly / worse – you or me!
- Why aren't you studying? You need to take your exams more seriously / most seriously.
- Robots can do many jobs as accurately / more accurately as humans.
- Of all the boys, he did the work more carefully / most carefully.

C Complete the sentences using the adjectives in brackets to make comparative adverbs. Circle True or False.

- A man runs more slowly than a cheetah. (slow) True / False
- A frog jumps far than a kangaroo. (far) True / False
- Dolphins swim quick than most fish. (quick) True / False
- Light travels fast than sound. (fast) True / False
- A balloon can fly high than a plane. (high) True / False
- Most plants grow good in the sun. (good) True / False
- A knife cuts easy when it's not sharp. (easy) True / False
- Most people sleep deep in the winter. (deep) True / False

D Complete the sentences using the adjectives in brackets to make superlative adverbs.

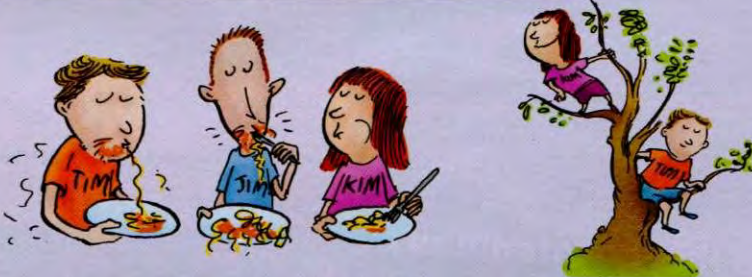
Of all the people I know ...

- My dad drives most slowly. (slow)
- draws (good)
- works (hard)
- writes (clear)
- lives from here. (far)
- sings (bad)
- sleeps (long)
- eats his / her lunch (quick)

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write at least six sentences comparing what Tim, Jim and Kim are doing or have done. Use *more*, *most*, *less*, *least*, *-er*, *-est* and adverbs made from the adjectives in the box.

fast happy high hungry quick slow tidy



Example: Tim is eating most quickly.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- My cat is great: she plays much than my big, noisy dog.
a quieter b most quietly c more quietly
- Elephants can live much than people.
a more longly b longer c more long
- The bird that flies is the peregrine falcon.
a most fastly b most fast c fastest
- Many birds fly a long way, but Arctic terns fly
a most far b farrest c furthest
- Sorry, can you please speak ? I can't understand you.
a more slowly b slower c more slow

My Test! answers: 1c 2b 3c 4c 5a

NEWS



What do teenagers really think about the world today? News, technology, the environment, politics, social problems ... Are teenagers bored with all this or do they think it is interesting? 215 Russian teenagers completed a questionnaire. Here are their answers.

	Agree (%)	Disagree (%)	Not sure (%)
Climate change is worrying .	30	17	53
The price of food today is shocking .	90	0	10
No one is interested in my opinion.	69	12	19
Politics is boring .	84	7	9
I am very worried about crime.	15	30	55
TV advertisements are annoying .	65	20	15
It is exciting to live in the 21st century.	42	25	33

Do this questionnaire in your class. What do the students in your class think?



True or False? Most Russian teenagers like politics.

Answer: False

-ed and -ing adjectives

- Many adjectives end in *-ing* or *-ed*.
an **exciting** day
The United manager was **pleased** with the result of the game.
- Adjectives with *-ed* endings describe how we feel. They show our reaction to something or somebody.
No one is **interested** in my opinion.
I felt less **worried** after listening to Bill.
- Adjectives with *-ing* endings describe what or who causes the feeling. They show the effect that something or somebody has on us.
Politics is **boring**.
Sam is **amazing** – he speaks six languages.
- Some adjectives have both *-ed* and *-ing* endings but there is a difference in meaning.
She is **tired**. Tennis is a **tiring** sport.
I am **shocked**. The news is **shocking**.
- Some examples of adjectives which end in *-ing* and *-ed* are:

amazing – amazed	frightening – frightened
annoying – annoyed	interesting – interested
boring – bored	pleased – pleasing
confusing – confused	surprising – surprised
depressing – depressed	shocking – shocked
disappointing – disappointed	terrifying – terrified
exciting – excited	tiring – tired
	worrying – worried

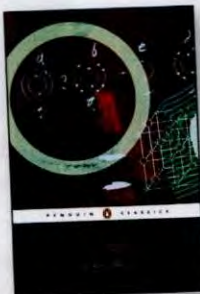
Practice

A Underline the correct option.

- 1 It was a long and very tiring / tired day for her.
- 2 I'm disappointing / disappointed that you can't come.
- 3 It's not a very interesting / interested idea.
- 4 Something really exciting / excited happened at the weekend.
- 5 Bears are terrifying / terrified when they get angry.
- 6 When you're nice and relaxing / relaxed, we can begin.
- 7 That's not surprising / surprised news.
- 8 Jack always looks very worrying / worried before a test.
- 9 Shopping is so boring / bored.
- 10 Is the boss annoying / annoyed because you were late?

B Add an -ing or -ed ending to the adjectives in the text.

Time travel is an ¹interest ing concept. It is not ²surpris that people are so ³interest in time travel because the idea is very romantic. In the 19th century, H. G. Wells wrote a very ⁴excit book called *The Time Machine*. It's a great novel and you won't be ⁵disappoint if you read it. The book also shows the dangers of time travel. The hero is ⁶shock and ⁷confus when he visits the past and future. At the end of the book he is lost in time and cannot come back to the present. This is a ⁸frighten finish to the book and readers who are ⁹bor with living in the present must read it carefully. We cannot change the past or know the future so we must live in the present. The world around us is full of ¹⁰amaz things. We don't need to visit the past or future to have an ¹¹interest life.



C Do you care about the world? Complete the questions with the correct adjectives, then tick ✓ your answers a, b or c.

- 1 You are walking down the street and see somebody drop a can on the ground. What do you think?
a) I'm not surprised (surprising / surprised) ✓
b) That's shocking! (shocking / shocked)
c) That's OK.
- 2 There is an election. What do you think?
a) Elections are very (boring / bored)
b) How ! (exciting / excited)
c) What's an election?
- 3 Do you think one day there will be too many people in the world to feed?
a) I'm not sure.
b) Yes and I'm very (worrying / worried)
c) I don't care. I'm not in the future. (interesting / interested)
- 4 Will robots do all the work in the future?
a) I hope so, I'm of work. (tiring / tired)
b) It's an thought but it won't happen soon. (amazing / amazed)
c) Perhaps.
- 5 Does technology make life better?
a) Yes, of course.
b) Yes, but too much change can be (frightening / frightened)
c) I play computer games six hours a day, which is very (relaxing / relaxed)

What do your results mean?

Mostly a: You don't care about the world and find many things boring.

Mostly b: You care about the world around you.

Mostly c: You don't know much about the world around you.

MY TURN!

Imagine you are in these situations. In your notebook, write what you feel using -ing and -ed adjectives.

- 1 You are riding an elephant.
It's exciting but I'm a bit scared!
- 2 You see a snake in your garden.
- 3 It snows in July.
- 4 Julia Roberts phones you.
- 5 You come first in the English test.
- 6 You hear a strange noise in the middle of the night.
- 7 A police officer stops you in the street.
- 8 You are waiting for your best friend. He / She is late.

MY TEST!

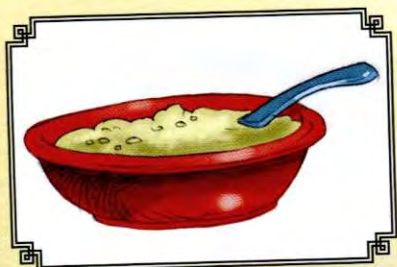
Circle the correct option.

- 1 I'm not about the future. I'm sure everything's going to be fine. a worried b pleasing c pleased
- 2 She's so when she talks about politics all the time. She thinks it's really interesting, but it isn't.
a exciting b boring c bored
- 3 People today are of giving their real opinions. a depressing b annoyed c frightened
- 4 I think all those numbers are very – I don't understand them at all. a confusing b shocked c confused
- 5 The results from the questionnaire weren't. a surprising b tiring c surprised



The lines below are from a famous children's story. What is the story?

Once upon
a time ...



There's **too much** sugar in this porridge!
There's **not enough** sugar in this porridge!
This porridge is just right!



This chair is **too** soft.
This chair is **too** hard.
This chair is just right!



This bed doesn't have **enough** pillows.
This bed has **too** many pillows.
This bed is just right ...
... She's still there!

Answer: Goldilocks and the Three Bears

Too and enough

- 1 Use **too** before an adjective or an adverb.



It's **too** big.
NOT ~~It's too~~
~~much big.~~



He's driving **too** fast!
NOT ~~He's driving too~~
~~much fast!~~

TIP

Note the difference between **very** and **too**:

It's **very** loud!



It's **too** loud!

- 2 Use **too much** before a singular (uncountable) noun.
Use **too many** before a plural (countable) noun.
*There's **too much** sugar.*
*This bed has **too many** pillows.*
- 3 We can also use **too much** as an adverb.
*She eats **too much**.*
- 4 Use **enough** before a noun.
*There isn't **enough** salt.*
- 5 Use **enough** after an adjective or adverb.
*It is good **enough**.*
*She doesn't study hard **enough**.*
- 6 We can sometimes omit the noun after **enough**, **too much** or **too many**.
*There isn't **enough**.*
A: How many pillows are there?
B: **Too many**.

Practice

A Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order. Which stories are the sentences from?

1 too / lies / He / many / told
He told too many lies. Pinocchio

2 The / small / shoe / too / was

3 were / mattresses / enough /
There / not

4 city / in / many / rats / were /
There / too / the

5 too / was / ugly / He

6 He / too / much / slept



B Complete the sentences using *too*, *too much* or *too many*.

- I don't like this weather – it's too hot.
- Why don't you sit down? You work too hard!
- A: Did you buy the shirt? B: No, it was too expensive.
- There are too many people here.
- A: Can you come out tonight? B: No, I'm too busy.
- It costs too much.
- It's too late now.
- Don't ask too many questions!
- I can't watch television – I have too much homework.

C Add *enough* in the correct places in these sentences.

- There's not enough salt. Can you buy some more?
- There are not women police officers.
- He doesn't work fast.
- I can't reach it – I'm not tall.
- Do you have money?
- There's never time for everything.
- This camera is small to fit in your pocket.

D Complete the sentences using *too*, *too much*, *too many* or *enough* and the words in the box.

butter hard money people rain
sweet sweets traffic

- I don't feel very well.
I've eaten too many sweets.
- You need 100 g to make the cake. I only have 50 g.
I don't have enough.
- The young boy pushed his brother and he fell over.
He pushed him too hard.
- It hasn't rained much this summer. The river is dry.
There hasn't been enough rain.
- There's sugar in my coffee. I don't like sugar in my coffee.
The coffee isn't sweet enough.
- The tickets are 10 euros. I have 11 euros.
I have enough.
- I like driving on empty roads. I don't like driving in the city.
In the city, there's too much traffic.
- This class is very full.
There are too many people.

MY TURN!

Complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*. Then answer using *too much*, *too many*, *not enough* or *enough*.

- How much coffee do you drink? Not enough!
- How much money have you saved? Not enough!
- How much football is there on TV? Not enough!
- How many exams do you have every month? Not enough!
- How many text messages do you receive? Not enough!
- How many sleep do you get? Not enough!
- How many weekends are there in a year? Not enough!
- How much music do you listen to? Not enough!

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- My dad prefers his porridge to be too hot. a too b very c enough
- He sat on his son's chair, but it wasn't strong enough and it broke. a strong enough b too much strong c enough strong
- She ate her porridge too quickly, and now she feels sick. a too quick b quick enough c too quickly
- I didn't have enough time for breakfast, so I just had tea. a too many time b too much time c enough time
- A: How much porridge do you eat? B: Not enough. We have it every day and I hate it! a Much b Too much c Not enough



Most adults spend 30% of their lives in bed – but how much do you know about sleep? Here are six interesting facts.

- 🐘 Elephants **often** sleep standing up.
- 🐘 Animals **usually** sleep less than humans (maybe one reason why we **normally** live longer).
- 👶 Parents of a new baby **normally** lose a lot of sleep. New babies need a lot of sleep but they **hardly ever** sleep more than three hours at a time.
- 👁 Sleep is **sometimes** possible with your eyes open. Try it!
- 👶 Teenagers don't **usually** sleep enough. They need about ten hours but they **rarely** have this.
- 👁 When we are in deep sleep, we **always** have dreams, though we **rarely** remember them. Scientists have **never** understood the real reason for dreams and they are still a mystery.



Who sleeps more, a horse or a man?

Answer: a man

Adverbs of frequency

- 1 Adverbs of frequency show how often we do things.



- See Unit 62 for time phrases.

- 2 Adverbs of frequency usually go before the main verb of the sentence.

A new baby **normally** sleeps badly.
Teenagers don't **usually** sleep enough.
Do you **often** remember your dreams?

- 3 The adverb of frequency usually goes after the verb *be*.

Sleep is **sometimes** possible with your eyes open.
The class is **usually** in room 7.

TIP

When *have* is a main verb, the adverb goes before *have*.
New babies **normally** have strange sleeping habits.
When *have* is an auxiliary, the adverb goes after *have*.
I **have often** visited them.

- 4 In negative sentences, adverbs of frequency usually go after *not*. However, *sometimes* goes before *be*, auxiliaries and modals in negative sentences.

We don't **always** dream.
We **sometimes** don't dream.

TIP

Never and *hardly ever* are negative in meaning, so we don't use negative verbs in sentences containing them.

I **never** read in bed. NOT ... ~~never don't read~~ ...

- 5 *How often ...?* questions usually need an answer with an adverb of frequency.

A: *How often* do you sleep late?
B: I **rarely** get up late.

- See Unit 30 for *How often ...?* questions.

TIP

Usually, *normally*, *often* and *sometimes* can also go at the beginning or at the end of a sentence, especially when the adverb provides the most important information in the sentence.

Usually I get up late but yesterday was different.

Practice

A Put the adverbs in the correct places in the sentences.

- I usually have eggs for breakfast. (usually)
- It snows here in winter. (rarely)
- Computers don't save time. (always)
- Dad is wrong. (hardly ever)
- Do you take the bus to school? (often)
- They go shopping together. (normally)
- We have barbecues in the garden. (often)
- The boss is on time so don't be late. (always)
- My mum doesn't understand me. (sometimes)
- Ivan has had a mobile phone. (never)

B How often does Sally do these things? Write sentences using *never*, *rarely*, *sometimes*, *often*, *usually* and *always*. (0% = 0 times; 100% = every time)

drive to work	50%
wear jeans in the office	15%
remember her boss's birthday	100%
be late	70%
work at the weekend	0%
have lunch in a café	85%

- She sometimes drives to work.
-
-
-
-
-

C Rewrite the sentences so that they have a similar meaning, using the adverbs in brackets.

- Simon does the washing-up after every meal. (always)
Simon always does the washing-up.
- Most of the time I wear jeans. (usually)
- My sister is not late very much. (hardly ever)
- Sandra phones me a lot. (often)
- My boss has very little time to go on holiday. (rarely)
- The book is useful about 50% of the time. (sometimes)
- Guests must lock their rooms every time they go out. (always)
- I have been to every European country except Portugal. (never)

MY TURN!

In your notebook, answer the questions with full sentences using adverbs of frequency.

- How often do you remember your dreams?
I usually remember my dreams.
- Do you always go to bed at the same time?
- How often do you see animals in your dreams?
- Has your dream ever come true?
- Have you ever seen anyone you know in a dream?
- How often do you wake up because of a bad dream?
- Do you tell friends about your dreams?
- Have you ever dreamed in English?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- I on planes. a sleep never b don't sleep never c never sleep
- Teenagers don't like going to bed. a usually b sometimes c never
- My little sister awake all night. a rarely is b sometimes is c is often
- Our baby slept more than four hours. a hardly ever hasn't b has hardly ever c hasn't hardly ever
- bad dreams. a I have sometimes b Rarely I have c Sometimes I have

A Complete the table with the correct forms.

	adjective	comparative adjective	superlative adjective	adverb	comparative adverb	superlative adverb
1	quick	quicker	the quickest	quickly	more quickly	most quickly
2	nice					
3	easy					
4	quiet					
5	fast					
6	sad					
7	good					
8	expensive					
9	bad					
10	far					
11	interesting					
12	friendly					

B Complete the email by writing one word in each space.

Hi Philip

I'm having a great time here in Warsaw. It's a ¹ lot nicer than I expected. The weather's been really warm – about 28°C most days. Yesterday it was too hot to go outside, so we went to a shopping centre to stay cool.

Warsaw's ² biggest city in Poland – nearly 2 million people live here. It's not as big ³ London, but it's much bigger ⁴ any other cities in Poland.

On Monday we went to the Palace of Culture. It's ⁵ tallest building in Poland. We went to the top, and we could see the whole city – it was fantastic. But little Danny didn't see much – he wasn't tall enough to see over the walls!

The Old Town is amazing – it looks really old, but in fact almost no buildings are ⁶ than about 60 years old. We wanted to eat in a restaurant in the Old Town, but it was ⁷ expensive than restaurants back home! Can you believe it? So we bought some sandwiches in the city centre – they were much ⁸ expensive than the food in the Old Town.

OK, so now it's your turn to write. You hardly ever write to me ☺.

Best wishes

Louise

C Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use two to four words including the word in brackets.

- a She has a beautiful singing voice. (sings)

b She sings beautifully.
- a Nobody in my town drives as badly as Harry. (driver)

b Harry is in my town.
- a Their house is nearer the sea than ours. (from)

b Our house is than theirs.
- a You are speaking too quietly. I can't hear you. (enough)

b I can't hear you. You aren't speaking
- a Her new sports shoes were very expensive. She bought them in America. (American, expensive, sports, new)

b She has shoes.
- a She is slower than me at learning English. (more)

b She is learning English am.
- a He did a silly dance. (way)

b He danced
- a This book isn't as interesting as her earlier one. (less)

b This book her earlier one.
- a Today is far colder than yesterday. (warm)

b Today is a than yesterday.

D Write complete sentences, putting the adjectives and adverbs in the best places. You may need to change *a* to *an* (or *an* to *a*).

- 1 We have a meal in a restaurant on Sundays. (big, expensive, usually)
We usually have a big meal in an expensive restaurant on Sundays.
- 2 I study before an exam. (always, hard, important)
- 3 Please speak. The baby is. (asleep, more, quietly)
- 4 I get up when I'm on holiday. (early, hardly ever)
- 5 You wear your coat. (blue, never, old)
- 6 I don't answer my emails. (important, quickly, sometimes)
- 7 He's a man, but he's. (a bit, boring, nice, very)
- 8 My car is than my one. (a lot, better, new, old)
- 9 She laughs and she doesn't smile. (never, often)
- 10 You eat and you don't eat vegetables. (enough, fresh, quickly, too)

E Match the pairs.

- | | |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 He's very careful. | a He always makes mistakes. |
| 2 He's very careless. | b He never makes mistakes. |
| 3 It's a bit | a windy weather. |
| 4 It's very | b windy. |
| 5 I bought an old | a big painting. |
| 6 I bought a lovely | b Chinese vase. |
| 7 He is an eleven-year-old | a today. It's his birthday. |
| 8 He is eleven years old | b boy. |
| 9 Bob is as clever | a as Mike. |
| 10 Bob is cleverer | b than Mike. |
| 11 She's the tallest in | a my class. |
| 12 She's the tallest of | b my friends. |

- | | |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 13 Alan is boring. | a He has nothing to do. |
| 14 Alan is bored. | b He always talks about football. |
| 15 They don't | a often go dancing. |
| 16 They | b never go dancing. |

F Make this story more interesting by adding adjectives and adverbs. You may need to change *a* to *an* (or *an* to *a*). Use the words in the table and/or your own ideas.

adjectives	adverbs
angry beautiful big black broken colourful dirty fat golden good happy horrible hungry magic old open poor sad silly small strange stupid thin young	angrily carefully enough happily in a friendly way kindly quickly quietly slowly sometimes strangely suddenly very usually

Once upon a time, there was a ^{silly, young} boy called Jack. He lived ^{quietly} with his mother. They were. They didn't have money.

They had clothes. They had just one cow.

One day Jack's mother told Jack to take the cow to the market in the city. Jack and the cow walked to the market. Jack heard somebody calling his name. He turned round and saw a man. The man was wearing clothes.

'Give me some gold and I'll give you some beans,' the man said.

Jack thought about it. 'I don't have any gold,' he said. 'I only have this cow.'

The man took the cow and Jack took the beans home to his mother.

When Jack got home, his mother was. 'You boy!' she said. 'You sold our cow for these beans! You are!' Jack's mother threw the beans through the window and into the garden.

61

Prepositions of place

I've left my keys at home.



? What has Jess lost? Who finds them?

Answers: Jess has lost her keys. The postman finds them.

Jess: Hi Chris! I'm **at** work, but I've left my keys **at** home. Could you bring them?
 Chris: Of course. Where are they?
 Jess: I think they're **in** my room. They're probably **in front of** you – on the table. I usually put them **next to** the photos.
 Chris: No, they're not there.
 Jess: Can you see the flowers **in** the corner?
 Chris: Yes ...
 Jess: Maybe they're **behind** them ... or **under** some books?
 Chris: Just a minute ... there's somebody **at** the door ... Hello, Jess?
 The postman found your keys. You left them **in** the door!

Prepositions of place

1 We use prepositions of place in front of a noun or a pronoun to say where something or someone is.
on the table, under some books, in front of you, next to that, at home

2 Some prepositions of place are **in**, **at** and **on**.



in the box



at the door



on the table

Use **in** to say something is inside a larger space.

in the box, in the city, in my study

Use **at** with a place or a point.

at the station, at work, at the door

TIP

The shop is **at** 42 Culver Road.

(**at** = point)

The shop is **in** Culver Road. (**in** = inside a larger space)

3 Note the following uses of the prepositions **at**, **in** and **on**:

at + place: A: Where's Jo? B: He's **at the doctor's**.
 the top / the bottom (of): Look **at the exercise at the top** of the page.
 the end (of): The post office is **at the end** of the street.

+ city / country: They live **in Paris**.

a taxi / the car: Let's go to the station **in a taxi / in the car**.

in the north / the south / the east / the west: They live **in the west** of the country.

the corner: Let's sit **in the corner**.

the centre: There are a lot of shops **in the centre** of the town.

the top / bottom shelf: The present's **on the top shelf** of the cupboard.

the bus / plane / train: The passengers are **on the train**.

on the ground / first / second / top floor: His apartment is **on the first floor**.

the left / the right: It's the second door **on the left**.

TV: There's a good programme **on TV** tonight.

4 We don't use **the** after the preposition in some expressions.
at home, at school, at college, in bed

5 Some more prepositions of place are: **under**, **above**, **below**, **opposite**, **in front of**, **behind**, **next to**, **between**, **outside**, **near**, **by** and **inside**.

under the books



above the clouds



below the clouds

opposite the house



in front of him

behind him



next to the photos



between the houses
in / inside the house



near / by the house
outside the house

Practice

A Where's Edward? Match the prepositions from the box to each picture.

above at in in front of near ~~next to~~ on opposite



- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 <u>next to</u> the man | 2 the bus stop |
| 3 his sister | 4 the old man |
| 5 his brother | 6 the window |
| 7 the cupboard | 8 TV |

B What's the opposite of ...?

- | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1 on the table | <u>under the table</u> |
| 2 in the north of the island | ..... |
| 3 at the top of the page | ..... |
| 4 below the line | ..... |
| 5 in the shop | ..... |
| 6 far from me | ..... |
| 7 in front of the building | ..... |
| 8 outside the city | ..... |
| 9 at the beginning of the film | ..... |

C Underline the correct option.

- My cousin lives at / in Sydney now.
- Be careful! There's some water in / on the floor.
- There was a clock at / in the corner of the room.
- Look out! There's a car behind / between you.
- I'm going to a party at / in my uncle's tonight.
- The castle is between / in front of the mountains and the sea.
- Are you staying at / by home tonight?
- We drove very slowly. There was a tractor opposite / in front of us.
- They live by / outside the sea.
- I've left my bag at / in the car.

MY TURN!

Answer these questions in your notebook using a preposition from the list on page 146.

- Where do you keep your keys? on the shelf
- Where do you keep your mobile phone?
- You've lost something. Where do you look for it first?
- Where did you meet your best friend?
- Where does your best friend live?
- Where were you born?
- Where do your parents park their car?
- Where are you now?

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- I think I left my bag the bedroom. Can you check? a on b at c in
- I was Lucy's flat yesterday. Maybe I left my glasses there. a at b on c next
- I think I've found your phone. It's the sofa, but I can't reach it and the sofa's too heavy to move.
a outside b between c behind
- I was bed this morning when I found my watch. It was under the pillow. a in b at c in the
- Her house is at the end of this street. It's the last house the left. a at b by c on

Prepositions of time: *at, in, on*

It happened at night.

The Hindenburg was a German airship. It exploded **on** 6 May 1937 and killed 36 people. The airship first flew **on** Monday, 4 March 1936 and it made many trips between Germany and America. **In** summer 1936 the airship was part of the opening of the Berlin Olympics. The trip **in** May 1937 was its first transatlantic trip of the year. The Hindenburg left Germany **at** night **on** 3 May and reached America **in** the afternoon **on** 6 May. The Hindenburg started to come down but **at** 7.25 there was a problem. A fire started and **in** less than a minute the airship **exploded**. No one knows why it happened.



Match the dates to the events:

?

- | | |
|----------------|--|
| 1 4 March 1936 | a The Hindenburg goes to America. |
| 2 Summer 1936 | b The Hindenburg flies for the first time. |
| 3 3 May 1937 | c 36 people die. |
| 4 6 May 1937 | d At the Berlin Olympics. |

Answers: 1b 2d 3a 4c

Prepositions of time: *at, in, on*

- Use *at, in* and *on* before time expressions.
The **tragedy** happened **in** 1937.
The story was **in** all the newspapers **on** 7 May.
- Use *at* for a point in time such as a clock time, meal time and short holidays.
At 7.25 there was a problem.
I'll see you **at** breakfast.
There are **flights** **at** New Year.
- Use *at* with '... time' and '... moment'.
There is a meeting **at** lunchtime.
I always get up **at** the same time.
She's busy **at** the moment.
- Use *in* with parts of the day (*morning, afternoon, evening*).
It reached America **in** the afternoon.
It's much cooler **in** the evening.
- Use *in* for longer time periods like months, seasons, years and centuries.
It happened **in** the spring.
President Hindenburg died **in** 1934.

TIP

A common expression is *in ... 's time*.What will air transport be like **in** 100 years' time?

- 6 *In* can also mean 'after' a future time interval.

I'll speak to you **in** an hour.

TIP

in the day, on Friday afternoon BUT at night, at the weekend

- 7 Use *on* with days and dates.
The Hindenburg Museum is closed **on** Mondays.
The Olympics began **on** 15 July.
On weekdays, I get up at 7.
- 8 We do not normally use *at, in* or *on* before *this / that / some / each / every / last / next*.
The airship landed **the next** evening. NOT ... *in the next evening*.
We go home **every** New Year. NOT ... *at every New Year*.
It will finish **next** Friday. NOT ... *on next Friday*.
- 9 We do not usually use *at, in* or *on* before the adverb phrases *later / today / tonight / tomorrow / the day after tomorrow / yesterday / the day before yesterday*.
We're going to Berlin **tomorrow**. NOT ... *on tomorrow*.
He arrived **the day before yesterday**. NOT ... *on the day before yesterday*.

Practice

A Write the time expressions from the box under the correct prepositions.

2:00 1999 breakfast 22 June midnight
Monday your birthday 13 September
the afternoon the moment the rainy season
the weekend Thursday two years' time winter

on	in	at
		2:00

B Match the pairs.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1 I was born on | a March. |
| 2 It's my birthday in | b 10 March. |
| 3 I'll see you in | a Wednesday. |
| 4 I'll see you on | b three weeks. |
| 5 Come at | a lunchtime. |
| 6 Come on | b 15 August. |
| 7 We left school in | a 2010. |
| 8 We left school at | b 5:00. |
| 9 The film starts in | a ten past three. |
| 10 The film starts at | b half an hour. |

C Write *on, in, at* or – (= no preposition).

- I play golf on Sundays.
- Is the play — next Tuesday?
- She'll be fifteen — 26 May.
- My family goes to Greece — every summer.
- It's 11 o'clock — night.
- Phone me — two days.
- Are you free — this weekend?
- It was a mistake to go — November.

D Complete the text with *on, in, at* or – (= no preposition).

Airship Tours (www.airshiptours.net) offers airship trips
1 on weekdays and 2 — the weekends. You
can travel 3 — any season, 4 — the morning,
afternoon or even 5 — night. It's a wonderful trip.
Remember, 6 — this month we have a special flight
across San Francisco. The trip starts 7 — 9:00 so you
will have plenty of time to enjoy the views. For romantic
travellers, it's not too late to book a place for the trip
8 — Valentine's Day. The perfect present for the
person you love! This trip leaves early so we hope to see
you all 9 — breakfast 10 — next February.



MY TURN!

What are your plans? Complete these sentences with time expressions.

- I'm going to watch TV at 7 o'clock tonight.
- I want to go to the cinema at —.
- I will leave school in —.
- I'd like to see my friends on —.
- I will probably go to bed tonight at —.
- My parents hope we will go on holiday in — time.
- I think I'll buy some new shoes in —.
- I'll have a really good time on —.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The fire started at —. a the day before yesterday b the morning c midnight
- I read a book about the Hindenburg on —. a yesterday b July c Tuesday
- He first flew the airship in —. a the 1930s b his birthday c last month
- A: When will you arrive in America? B: — three weeks. a On b In c At
- Two airships flew across the Atlantic — same time. a the b in the c at the

63

Prepositions of movement

Get off the boat and swim to the island.



Go **to** the island. Get **off** the boat. Walk **along** the beach and **into** the forest. Go **through** the forest, **out of** the gate and take the road **between** the mountains. Walk **up** the road and **over** the mountains. You will walk **past** two small houses. You will come **to** a big tree. Go **round** the tree and look carefully. There is a small door in the tree. Open the door, and go **through** the door **into** the tree. Look **under** a big stone. There is the treasure. Take it. Now go back **to** the beach, get **on** the boat and go home – quickly!



Underline the correct option: On the island you will not see a forest / mountains / houses / pirates.

Answer: pirates

Prepositions of movement

- 1 **Into, through, etc.** are prepositions of movement. They show where somebody or something is going.

Walk **into** the forest

Go **through** the door.

More prepositions of movement:

across	Walk across the bridge.
along	She's driving along the road.
between	The mouse ran between two chairs.
by	You will pass by some shops.
down	Jill fell down the hill.
from	Has Max come back from London?
in	Jump in the water!
off	Get off the horse carefully.
on	Spider-Man climbed on the wall.
onto	We got onto the ship.
out of	I walked out of the disco.
over	They ran over a big hill.
past	You will go past Jim's house.
round (= around)	The plane flew round the town twice.
towards	The dog came towards me.
to	Throw the ball to Simon.
under	Go under the apple trees.
up	Walk up Oxford Street for 10 minutes.

- 2 Some of these prepositions can also show position, not movement.

Walk **under** the bridge.

She's **under** the bridge.

► See Unit 61 for prepositions of place.

- 3 Don't use **to** after **arrive**. Use **arrive** before **at** (places) or **in** (very big places, e.g. cities, countries).

When you arrive **at** the hotel, ... NOT ... ~~to the hotel~~ ...

I arrived **in** Paris. NOT ... ~~to Paris~~.

Use **to** after verbs of movement like **go, walk, come, fly** and **travel**.

Don't go **to** the island.

Don't use **to** after **visit**.

I visited my brother. NOT ~~I visited to my brother~~.

Don't use **to** before **home**.

Run **home**! NOT ~~Run to home~~!

Don't use **go + to + an -ing word**.

- 4 Use **by** to show how you travel.

Go **by** train.

It is faster **by** plane.

- 5 Use **get on / onto** and **off** with trains, buses, planes, bikes, boats and animals.

Get **on** your bike.

Get **off** the boat.

- 6 Use **get in / into** and **out of** with cars (and small boats and small planes).

I got **into** my Mercedes.

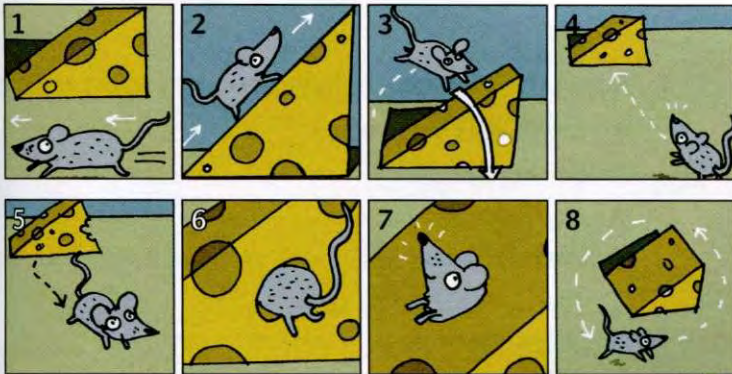
Get **out of** my taxi!

Practice

A Rewrite these sentences using different prepositions to make them mean the opposite.

- I'm flying to Nice.
I'm flying from Nice.
- Get in the car.
- Walk over it.
- Jack went up the hill.
- We got off the train.
- She is coming from Palermo.
- I walked from the park.
- We got onto the plane.
- Walk slowly away from the lion.

B Where is the mouse going? Answer using the prepositions on page 150.



- Past the cheese.*
-
-
-
-
-
-
-

C Circle the correct option.

Max,
Here are the directions to get ¹ my house. If you come ² train you will arrive ³ Central Station. Go ⁴ the station and walk ⁵ the road. You are then on North Street. Go ⁶ this street. You will walk ⁷ a supermarket and a bookshop. My house is number 61. Go ⁸ the garden – the back door will be open. If you get lost, you can always go back ⁹ the station and get ¹⁰ a taxi.
See you soon, Amelia.

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|-------------|-----------|
| 1 a in | b on | c to | d at |
| 2 a by | b in | c on | d with |
| 3 a in | b on | c to | d at |
| 4 a from | b out of | c into | d between |
| 5 a on | b back | c through | d across |
| 6 a over | b to | c along | d across |
| 7 a over | b past | c up | d at |
| 8 a between | b on | c at | d through |
| 9 a off | b by | c to | d at |
| 10 a in | b on | c at | d to |

MY TURN!

Mark X on the map to show where your treasure is. Then draw the route to the treasure using →. In your notebook, write instructions for finding the treasure.



MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The pirate ship went the ocean, from the Caribbean to Africa. a off b across c towards
- The pirates walked us. a through b past c along
- We came to the island ship, but we had to swim home. a on b in c by
- I was hiding the treasure on the beach when two pirates came the forest behind me. a under b off c out of
- When I arrived the treasure tree, the treasure had gone. a at b to c in

A Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a.

Use two to four words, including the word in brackets.

- 1 a It's 10 o'clock now – we're going to leave at 11 o'clock. (hour)
b We're going to leave in an hour, at 11 o'clock.
- 2 a There's a red house on one side of our house and another red house on the other side. (two)
b Our house is red houses.
- 3 a Walter stood behind us while we were waiting to buy tickets. (front)
b We stood Walter while we were waiting to buy tickets.
- 4 a The best time to phone is 3 pm. (at)
b You should phone the afternoon.
- 5 a We met her two days ago. (yesterday)
b We met her
- 6 a They left the shop and went home. (out)
b They came the shop and went home.
- 7 a I went to see my grandmother in New York 12 months ago. (visited)
b My grandmother lives in New York. I year.
- 8 a Sorry – I can't help you right now. (moment)
b Sorry – I can't help you

B Complete the sentences with *in*, *on* or *at*.

- 1 There's someone at the door.
- 2 He got his bike and went home.
- 3 They got up lunchtime.
- 4 She's asleep bed.
- 5 The cup is the shelf.
- 6 What happens the end of the story?
- 7 I'll see you Sunday.
- 8 She was born 1998.
- 9 I go to ballet classes Fridays.
- 10 He's still work.
- 11 We'll be there about an hour.
- 12 There's a spider the wall.
- 13 It was cold the evening.
- 14 Our house is the third the left.
- 15 She arrived the hotel very late.
- 16 They jumped the water.
- 17 What are you doing the weekend?
- 18 Put the box the corner.

C Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings.

- | | |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 My parents got married | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 She has a house | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 A tall man was sitting | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 We travelled to Spain | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 The Queen is standing | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 I'll see you | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 7 Please put those CDs | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 8 Rabbits live | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 9 I do my homework | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 10 We put the photograph | <input type="checkbox"/> |
-
- | | |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| a | on the wall above the television. |
| b | by plane. |
| c | next to the President. |
| d | into their boxes. |
| e | in five minutes. |
| f | by the sea. |
| g | in 1992. |
| h | at night. |
| i | in front of us in the cinema. |
| j | under the ground. |

D Complete the story using the prepositions in the boxes.

Scarface sat ¹ on the bed in his small room ² in the prison. ³ at midnight he got ⁴ off the bed, took the knife ⁵ out of his pocket and started cutting the metal bar in the window.

at in off
on out of

Ten minutes later, the bar was cut and he climbed ⁶ down the hole in the window. He then climbed carefully ⁷ through the wall.

down
through

When he was ⁸ behind the ground, he ran ⁹ into the corner and ¹⁰ round the prison kitchen. It was very dark. He waited ¹¹ on the door and listened carefully.

behind into
round on

There was another wall ¹² at the door of the kitchen. When he was sure no one was there, he ran ¹³ opposite the kitchen ¹⁴ towards the wall. When he arrived ¹⁵ at the wall, he stopped again and listened. He heard a noise – a guard was coming ¹⁶ towards him.

at opposite out of
towards towards

There was a car ¹⁷ near the wall, so he lay down ¹⁸ under it and waited. He heard the guard walk ¹⁹ past him and ²⁰ by the kitchen. He went back ²¹ to the wall and started to climb ²² up it.

into near past
to under up

²³ along the top of the wall he could see a car ²⁴ at him on the other side. It was his wife's car – she was waiting to take him home. He started walking ²⁵ along the top of the wall ... when suddenly he fell ²⁶ off the wall. He landed ²⁷ on the ground ²⁸ between two guards.

along at below
between off on



E Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order. The first and last words are already in the right places.

- We / the / 3 / arrived / the / at / o'clock / in / at / airport / morning.
We arrived at the airport at 3 o'clock in the morning.
- I'll / half / in / meet / in / you / of / the / an / front / hour / cinema.
I'll meet you in half an hour in front of the cinema.
- He / box / out / the / took / into / of / the / and / put / the / it / pizza / oven.
He took the pizza box out and put it into the oven.
- I'm / after / day / to / the / her / in / going / visit / hospital / tomorrow.
I'm going to visit her in the hospital tomorrow.
- They / on / eighth / an / live / apartment / in / the / floor.
They live in an apartment on the eighth floor.
- I / best / my / next / friend / sit / at / always / to / school.
I always sit at my next best friend's school.
- We / on / to / usually / by / went / by / work / train / but / Tuesday / go / we / taxi.
We went to work by train but we go by taxi on Tuesday.
- The / over / the / along / the / road / dog / jumped / ran / and / wall.
The dog ran along the road and jumped over the wall.



Look at this beach.

It **was cleaned** yesterday (it **is cleaned** every morning by hotel workers) but it is dirty again now. The beach **is covered** with rubbish. Why?

Some cans **were left** by people having a picnic.

The bags **weren't taken** to the bin.

A bottle **was broken**.

Those sweets **were brought** by some children but **they weren't eaten**.

This is a small part of a big problem. Every year 1.3 billion tons of rubbish **are produced** in Europe. **Are you shocked** by this?



Underline the correct option: The best place for rubbish is *in the bin* / *on the beach* / *in the sea*.

Answer: In the bin

Passive: present and past simple

- 1 We usually use the passive when we want to focus on the process or result rather than who or what does or did it.

*The beach **is cleaned** every day.*

*I **am not surprised**.*

- 2 Make the passive with *be* and the past participle (*cleaned, seen, driven, etc.*).

*Bottles **are** sometimes **used** again.*

*It **is made** of glass.*

► See Unit 2 for forms of *be*.

- 3 The negative and questions are formed like this:

*Most rubbish **isn't recycled**.*

*The food **wasn't eaten**.*

***Are you shocked** by this?*

***Were the hotels built** in the 1980s?*

- 4 In the past, use *was* or *were*. In the future, use *will be*.

*In the 1970s, less rubbish **was produced**.*

*Tomorrow the beach **will be cleaned** again.*

- 5 If you want to say who or what causes the action, add *by* + noun.

*A lot of money **is made by the recycling business**.*

Were the dinosaurs killed by a meteorite?

TIP

be born is only used in the passive.

*I **was born** in 1998.*

Practice

A Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings. If you don't know the answers, look on the Internet.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1 Tea was invented | a by Henry Cavendish. |
| 2 The euro is used | b on Mars. |
| 3 Hydrogen (H ₂) was discovered | c in the nineteenth century. |
| 4 The women's football world cup is held | d by over 300 million people. |
| 5 The Fiat car company was started | e in a theatre. |
| 6 <i>Dracula</i> was written | f every four years. |
| 7 Most coffee beans are grown | g in New York. |
| 8 President Lincoln was killed | h in China. |
| 9 The original hamburgers were cooked | i by Giovanni Agnelli. |
| 10 In 2002 water was found | j in Africa. |

B Complete the sentences with passive forms (present and past simple) of the verbs in brackets.

- The Olympics are watched by billions of people today. (watch)
- Nowadays the work by computer. (do)
- Now, prizes every week. (give)
- The course two years ago. (start)
- In Europe, most food in supermarkets. (buy)
- Latin still in schools? (learn)
- Gold in California in the 19th century. (discover)
- Cars all over the world nowadays. (produce)
- you any information about it? (send)
- Radio by Marconi. (invent)

C Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use no more than three words.

- a John took Cindy to the cinema.
b Cindy was taken to the cinema.
- a The cat ate the cheese.
b The cheese the cat.
- a The shop was opened by the Queen.
b the shop.
- a Somebody called the police.
b The police
- a Was it written by him?
b it?
- a This computer does not accept my password.
b My password

D Gerald is talking about his job as a dustman. Complete the text with passive forms of the verbs in the box.

ask break empty give leave
put sell shock take wake

I ¹ was asked to tell you about my job, so I'll begin. I ² up by my wife at 5 o'clock and I am at work at 5.45. We go round and take rubbish from people's bins. In my area, 6,000 rubbish bins a day ³ Often I ⁴ by what people don't need! Yesterday a new TV ⁵ next to a bin! That ⁶ very quickly, I can tell you! It ⁷ for 700 euros the same day. The job can be dangerous. Once a big bin ⁸ on the van. It fell off and my friend's leg ⁹ She didn't work for a month but she ¹⁰ some money to help her.

MY TURN!

What is done in these places? In your notebook, write at least two sentences for each place using the passive and the words in brackets.

- Your neighbourhood. (people, rubbish, streets)
Rubbish is collected. Streets are cleaned.
- A supermarket. (customers, food, money)
- A school. (children, friends, lessons)
- A cinema. (films, popcorn, tickets)
- An office. (computers, emails, work)
- A hotel. (beds, food, rooms)
- A train station. (coffee, tickets, trains)
- The Internet. (information, websites, emails)

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- The rubbish to the bin. a is take b is took c is taken
- The workers are paid hotels to pick up the rubbish. a by b through c from
- A lot of this rubbish fish or birds. a eat b is eaten by c is ate by
- These birds when they ate these plastic bags. a was kill b were killed c was killed
- How often ? a is the beach cleaned b is cleaned the beach c the beach is cleaned

Thinking About Your Future – Why Study Chemistry?

Chemistry is a good subject to study **if** you **are thinking** about your future. **You'll be able to** choose from a lot of different jobs **if** you **have** a **qualification** in chemistry. Maybe you want to find some new medicine, or solutions to pollution ...

Karin Beyer, 23
marine chemist

Peter Willcox, 37
food scientist

If you **study** chemistry, you **will understand** how many everyday things work. For example, **if** you **cut** an onion, it **makes** you cry. But did you know this is a chemical reaction? There is sulphur in onions which turns to sulphuric acid in your eyes. **If** you **cut** the onion under water, the sulphur **reacts** with the water and not your eyes.

If you **study** chemistry, you'll never **stop** learning.



Find one reason why it is a good idea to study chemistry.

Answer: You'll be able to get a lot of different jobs. You will understand how many everyday things work. You'll never stop learning.

Zero and first conditionals

- 1 Use the zero conditional to talk about things that are generally true.
If you cut an onion, it makes you cry.
- 2 In zero conditional sentences, use **if + present tense ... present tense**.
If you cut the onion under water, the sulphur reacts with the water.
- 3 Use the first conditional to talk about something that we think is possible in the future, and its result.
If I see Jack tomorrow, I'll talk to him about the problem.
- 4 The basic pattern for first conditional sentences is: **if + present tense ... will + infinitive without to**.
If you study chemistry, you'll never stop learning.
- 5 Use **might** or **could** in the main part of the sentence to indicate that something is possible and not certain.
If you have a qualification in chemistry, you might get a good job.
You could work with antibiotics if you are interested in this.
- 6 When **if** comes at the beginning of the sentence, we need a comma in the middle.
If you cut an onion, it makes you cry.
Chemistry is a good subject to study if you are thinking about your future.
- 7 We can use **unless** to mean **if ... not**.
I run every morning if it isn't cold.
OR I run every morning unless it's cold.
That plant will die if you don't water it.
OR That plant will die unless you water it.

TIP

Both parts of a first conditional sentence talk about the future, even though a present tense is used after **if**. We do not usually use **will** after **if**.

If you study chemistry next year, you will learn how lots of things work. NOT If you will study chemistry next year, ...

A Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

- 1 Ice cream melts unless you keep it in the fridge.
- 2 If you put sulphur in water, it forms sulphuric acid.
- 3 Ice melts quickly if you put salt on it.
- 4 Chillies burn your mouth if you eat them.
- 5 If you put chlorine in water, it kills bacteria.
- 6 If you put water and oil together, they don't mix.

1 I see Alice
2 you'll get cold
3 we study hard
4 the men do not leave
5 What will you do
6 I don't work very well
7 I might go to school tomorrow
8 I give you some money

a the army will attack
b the shop is closed?
c I feel better
d we will do well in our exams
e you don't put your coat on
f the TV is on
g will you pay for the tickets?
h I'll tell her to ring you

1 If I see Alice, I'll tell her to ring you.

Circle the correct option.

- 1 If you put lemon juice on a go black. **a** banana it doesn't **b** banana, it doesn't **c** banana, it don't
- 2 Water boils faster if you salt in it. **a** doesn't put **b** won't put **c** don't put
- 3 If I pass my exams, I chemistry at university. **a** might study **b** might be study **c** might to study
- 4 The chemicals in cola will be bad for your teeth unless them carefully.
a you don't clean **b** you won't clean **c** you clean
- 5 Be careful! If those sweets in your cola, the bottle might explode. **a** you put **b** you might put **c** you'll put

- 1 If you *push* this button, water
..... *comes* out. (*push / come*)
- 2 If the weather bad this
year, food prices (*be / go up*)
- 3 I phone my mum every evening. If I
..... her, she
worried. (*not phone / get*)
- 4 If I to the airport, I
..... there on time. (*drive / get*)
- 5 You can to bed if you
..... tired. (*go / feel*)
- 6 If he he
in the team. (*not practise / not be*)
- 7 Why don't you leave now? If you
..... there early, you
..... more relaxed. (*get / be*)
- 8 You very tired tomorrow unless
you working now. (*be / stop*)

You are planning to go to the beach for the day with your cousin. Copy and complete the sentences in your notebook.

- 1 If I arrive late, *he'll be angry*
- 2 If the sun's shining,
- 3 We'll stay at home
- 4 If my cousin's ill,
- 5 We'll walk
- 6 If we're tired,

I'd throw a cake at him if he didn't stop.



Tim wants a job in a restaurant.

The chef interviews him.

Chef: Now Tim, some more difficult questions. Don't worry, these are not everyday situations. **What would you do there was a fire in the kitchen?**

Tim: **I would run away if I saw a fire.**

Chef: I see. **If a waiter shouted at you, would you do anything?**

Tim: Yes, **I'd throw a cake at him if he didn't stop.**

Chef: Hmm. **If the shops were closed and you needed some eggs, where would you get some?**

Tim: **If I wanted some eggs, I'd look for a chicken.**



Well, have you decided? If you were the chef, would Tim get the job?

Answer: No

Second conditional

- 1 Use the second conditional for events and situations which are unlikely, imaginary or impossible in the present and future.

If I didn't like anything on the menu, I would go home.

(Unlikely: there is usually something you like.)

I would run away if I saw a fire. (Imaginary: Tim is imagining a fire that might happen in the future.)

If I were the chef, I wouldn't give Tim the job. (Impossible: you are not the chef.)

- 2 In second conditional sentences, use *if* + past tense ... *would* + infinitive without *to*. We can use the short forms *'d* for *would* and *wouldn't* for *would not*.

If the customer complained, I'd tell the manager.

If Tim worked here, he wouldn't do a good job.

- 3 The short form answer is *Yes, I / you / etc. would* or *No, I / you / etc. would not / wouldn't*.

A: *If you were the chef, would Tim get the job?*

B: **No, he wouldn't.**

A: *Would you run outside if there was a fire in the kitchen?*

B: **Yes, I would.**

- 4 When the *if* comes at the beginning of the sentence, we need a comma in the middle.

If the food was bad, there wouldn't be many customers.

There wouldn't be many customers if the food was bad.

- 5 Use *might* or *could* in the main clause to indicate that something is possible and not certain.

*If you ate Tim's cooking, you **might** get sick.*

*You **could** complain if you didn't like the food.*

*I **could** be a chef if I wanted.*

- See Units 20, 21 and 24 for more information on *could* and *might*.

- 6 We often use *if* + *were* instead of *was* after the pronouns *I*, *she*, *he*, *it* and singular nouns. This is more common in formal language and American English.

*If it **were** cheaper, I'd go to restaurants more often.*

- 7 We often use *If I were you ... I would (not) ...* for advice and suggestions.

*If I **were** you, I'd find another job.*

*I **wouldn't** eat here if I **were** you.*

Practice

A Complete the second conditional sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

- If I lost my phone, I would buy a new one. (lose / buy)
- If you win the race, you will be famous. (win / be)
- If I feel really bad, I will see a doctor. (feel / see)
- My sister will speak to me if I break it. (not speak / break)
- We will move to Mars if too many people live on this planet. (move / live)
- If you have more time, you will learn another language? (have / learn)
- If I like my name, I will change it. (not like / change)
- Will you run away if you see a wolf? (run / see)

B Circle the correct option.

Interviewer: You're a famous British chef but if you ¹ ... a chef, what would you do?

Chef: I would play football if I ² ... because I love it. But, I love cooking too. I ³ ... all day if my wife let me.

Interviewer: Where ⁴ ... to open a restaurant next?

Chef: If I ⁵ ... a restaurant in Paris, that would be fantastic. It would be great if I ⁶ ... shop in the markets there. If that restaurant was successful, I ⁷ ... more in France.

Interviewer: People think British food is not very good. Why?

Chef: I really don't know. If I ⁸ ... why, I would tell you. If you ⁹ ... my cooking, you would never say English food is bad. If I ¹⁰ ... you, I'd buy my new book.

- a were **b weren't** c would be d wouldn't be
- a could **b can** c will d would
- a cooked **b would cook** c didn't cook d wouldn't cook
- a do you like **b did you like**
c are you liking d would you like
- a had **b did have** c would have d might have
- a would **b might** c could d did
- a opened **b might open** c might opened d might to open
- a know **b knew** c would know d would knew
- a might taste **b wouldn't taste** c didn't taste d tasted
- a am **b be** c were d would

C Match the pairs, then make them into second conditional sentences using *could* and *might* (not) and write them in your notebook.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 watch too much TV | a become a pop star |
| 2 see a strange light in the sky | b make my family very angry |
| 3 have no friends | c my eyes get tired |
| 4 learn 700 new words today | d not want to read it |
| 5 find a book of magic | e visit Cleopatra |
| 6 travel back in time | f think it was a spaceship |
| 7 write a pop song | g join a sports club |
| 8 spend three hours in the bathroom every morning | h not remember them all |

- 1 If I watched too much TV, my eyes might get tired.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, copy and complete at least four of these sentences with *If ...*, using a comma if necessary.

- If I found some money on the street,
I'd give it to a police officer.
- I'd fly to Peru.
- I might jump out of the window.
- The world would be a happier place
- she wouldn't be very pleased.
- I would be really worried
- I'd invite all my friends to a big party.
- I couldn't get home.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- If I found an insect in my salad, I wouldn't it. a eat b ate c eating
- I'd be a chef if I better at cooking. a would be b were c am
- A: This soup tastes terrible. B: If I speak to the waiter. a were you, I'd b would be you, I'd c would be you I'd
- If the food in this restaurant were better, I eat here more often. a may b will c might
- A: If a waiter threw a cake at you, would you eat it? B: No, a I don't b he didn't c I wouldn't

A Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings.

- | | |
|---|-----------------------------|
| 1 Stonehenge was built | a by a meteor from space. |
| 2 Mickey Mouse was created | b from trees. |
| 3 Some people think the dinosaurs were killed | c by over 1 billion people. |
| 4 Champagne is made | d by snakes. |
| 5 Honey is made | e by Walt Disney. |
| 6 Chinese is spoken | f in France. |
| 7 Paper is made | g about 4,500 years ago. |
| 8 Bananas are grown | h in Central America. |
| 9 Mice are eaten | i by bees. |

B Change the active sentences into passive sentences. You don't always need to include *by*.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1 Somebody stole my phone last night.
My <u>phone was stolen last night</u> . | 5 A famous opera singer taught me to sing.
I |
| 2 They sell mobile phones in that shop.
Mobile phones | 6 Mr Hill teaches us to swim.
We |
| 3 My sister gave me this sweater.
I | 7 Uncle Brian will cook tomorrow's dinner.
Tomorrow's |
| 4 My aunt cuts my hair.
My | 8 I told you to stay in your room.
You |

C Complete these newspaper stories using the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Some verbs should be active and some should be passive.

More bikes stolen from city centre

Last weekend four bicycles ¹ were stolen (steal) in the city centre. This brings the total of bikes stolen this month to fourteen. Police ² (think) there is a gang of bike thieves. 'The thieves always ³ (use) the same methods. Every time, the chains ⁴ (cut) using metal cutters and the bikes ⁵ (put) into a big white truck. We know it's a white van because it ⁶ (film) last night by cameras.'

New element number 112 has a name

Yesterday, one of the newest and heaviest elements ⁷ (give) a name, Copernicium. The element ⁸ (discover) in 1996, but it ⁹ (add) to the periodic table only last month, because other scientists ¹⁰ (need) to check that there really is such an element. The name 'Copernicium' ¹¹ (choose) by Professor Hofmann, the man who ¹² (discover) the element.

£1 million damage caused by Wednesday's wild weather

The strong winds last Wednesday night ¹³ (cause) over £1 million worth of damage in the city. More than 40 shop windows ¹⁴ (break). Several trees ¹⁵ (blow down). Eleven cars ¹⁶ (damage) when tree branches ¹⁷ (fall) on them. Six houses ¹⁸ (lose) their roofs. Fortunately, nobody ¹⁹ (hurt).

D Complete the conditional sentences using the words in brackets. Add commas if necessary.

- If you (not understand), I (help) you.
If you don't understand, I'll help you.
- If Mick (be) taller, he (be) a great basketball player.
If _____ player.
- This computer (not work) unless you (turn) it on.
This _____ on.
- If I (know) the answer, I (tell) you.
If _____ you.
- If I (be) you, I (not wear) that hat.
If _____ hat.
- You can't come in unless you (have) a ticket.
You _____ ticket.
- Where (go) if you could fly?
Where _____ fly?
- I might win the competition if I (be) lucky.
I _____ lucky.

E Complete the sentences using the correct verb forms.

- If I met a Hollywood star, _____
I'd take a photo.
- If I go to the cinema this week, _____
- I'd buy a new MP3 player _____
- I'll take an umbrella if _____
- If my grandparents phoned me, _____
- If I got a car for my birthday, _____
- I'd phone the police if _____
- If I were invited onto a TV show, _____

F Complete the conversation using the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Sometimes there is more than one right answer.

- A: So what shall we get for Maggie's birthday?
B: I don't know. What does she want?
A: Well, if I ¹ knew (know) that, I ² _____ (not / ask) you, would I?
B: OK ... but what does she like?
C: Well, she loves tennis, of course. We could buy her a new racket.
A: Are you joking? They're really expensive. If we ³ _____ (have) more money, it might be a good idea.
C: Yes, but if we ⁴ _____ (buy) her a cheap one on the Internet, it might not be too bad ...
B: Hmm ... I think she's already got a racket.
C: But if she ⁵ _____ (have) two, she ⁶ _____ (be able to) play with her sister.
B: No ... we shouldn't buy her a racket. We don't know anything about rackets. What if we ⁷ _____ (buy) her the wrong one ...?
A: ... like a children's racket ...
C: ... or a squash racket.
B: Yeah. It ⁸ _____ (be) terrible.
A: So what do you think? How about tennis balls?
C: Maybe ... but it's a bit boring. How ⁹ _____ (you / feel) if somebody ¹⁰ _____ (give) you a tennis ball for your birthday?
A: Well, if I ¹¹ _____ (be) a tennis player, I ¹² _____ (be) happy, I think.
B: Hang on ... I've just remembered something. You can buy night-time tennis balls. They're made of some special plastic. If you ¹³ _____ (hit) them, they ¹⁴ _____ (light up).
C: Er ... why ¹⁵ _____ (she / want) a night-time tennis ball?
B: Well, if she ¹⁶ _____ (want) to play tennis outside at night, for example, and she ¹⁷ _____ (lose) the ball, she ¹⁸ _____ (be able to) find it again.
A: It sounds really useful. I think we should get it.
B: OK, so unless anyone ¹⁹ _____ (have) any better ideas, I ²⁰ _____ (try) to buy one on the Internet. If I ²¹ _____ (not can) find one, or if they ²² _____ (be) really expensive, I ²³ _____ (phone) you and we ²⁴ _____ (have to) think of something else.



Reported speech

She said she would never have a party again.



Sophie Brown's 18th birthday party was really bad. A radio station **told listeners that there was going to be a party** the next day, so many teenagers **thought the party was open to everyone**. The teenagers caused 30,000 euros of damage to the Browns' expensive house. One teenager **said he didn't know Sophie but he liked parties**. Sophie **said that she felt terrible and that she would never have another party again**. Her father **told reporters that he was thinking of getting the radio station to pay for the damage**. Sophie's mother **said she couldn't understand why the teenagers wanted to damage their lovely house**. We tried to talk to Sophie again today but her father **says she is not talking** to reporters any more.



How old was Sophie?

Answer: 18

Reported speech

- We can talk about what people said or thought by using reported speech.
Sophie said that she wanted a party.
- If the verb of saying or thinking is in the present, there is no change of tense for the words reported.
Her father says that she is ill.
- When the verb of saying or thinking is in the past, the verb in the reported speech usually moves into the past.
Sophie told her mum she was sorry.
- The verb in the reported speech does not need to change if the information is still true or relevant now.
Sophie told me that she is 18.
- That* often links the verb of saying or thinking to the reported speech. *That* can be left out, especially in speaking and informal language.
*She said **that** she wanted a big party.*
She said she wanted a big party.

direct speech	reported speech
present simple	→ past simple
'It seems strange.'	He thought that it seemed strange.
present continuous	→ past continuous
'I am staying for a few days.'	She said that she was staying for a few days.
can	→ could
'We can swim very well.'	They said that they could swim very well.
will	→ would
'It will be great!'	She thought that it would be great.

TIP

Used to and *would* do not change in reported speech.

I used to be Sophie's friend. →

She said she used to be Sophie's friend.

- Pronouns and time and place expressions may change in reported speech.

we → *they*

now → *then*

next week → *the week after*

this morning → *that morning*

tomorrow → *the next day*

here → *there*

John: 'I love parties.' →

*John said **he** loved parties.*

'There will be a party tomorrow.' →

*A radio station told listeners that there would be a party **the next day**.*

- See Unit 68 for more information on *say* and *tell*.

Practice

A Change these sentences from reported speech into direct speech.

- 1 Jim said he was tired.
Jim: *'I'm tired.'*
- 2 Cathy said she wanted to go to Sophie's party.
Cathy:
- 3 Jim said he didn't know Sophie.
Jim:
- 4 Cathy told Jim that Sophie was having a party the next day.
Cathy:
- 5 Cathy also said that everyone was invited to the party.
Cathy:
- 6 Jim said that he was surprised that everyone was going.
Jim:
- 7 Cathy said that it would be great if they went together.
Cathy:
- 8 Jim told Cathy that he would think about it.
Jim:

B Report what the people are saying or thinking. Begin each sentence with *He / She / They said / thought*.



- 1 *He said it was his ball.*
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

C Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a in reported speech. Use no more than three words.

- 1 a John: 'I come from a small town in New Zealand.'
b John said *that he came* from a small town in New Zealand.
- 2 a Felicity: 'I need it this morning.'
b Felicity said she morning.
- 3 a John: 'We have a lot to do.'
b John told her a lot to do.
- 4 a Alice: 'I am busy now.'
b Alice said that she
- 5 a Olive: 'Gary, I'll go next week.'
b Olive told Gary that she would after.
- 6 a Mike: 'I'll phone tomorrow.'
b Mike said he would phone

MY TURN!

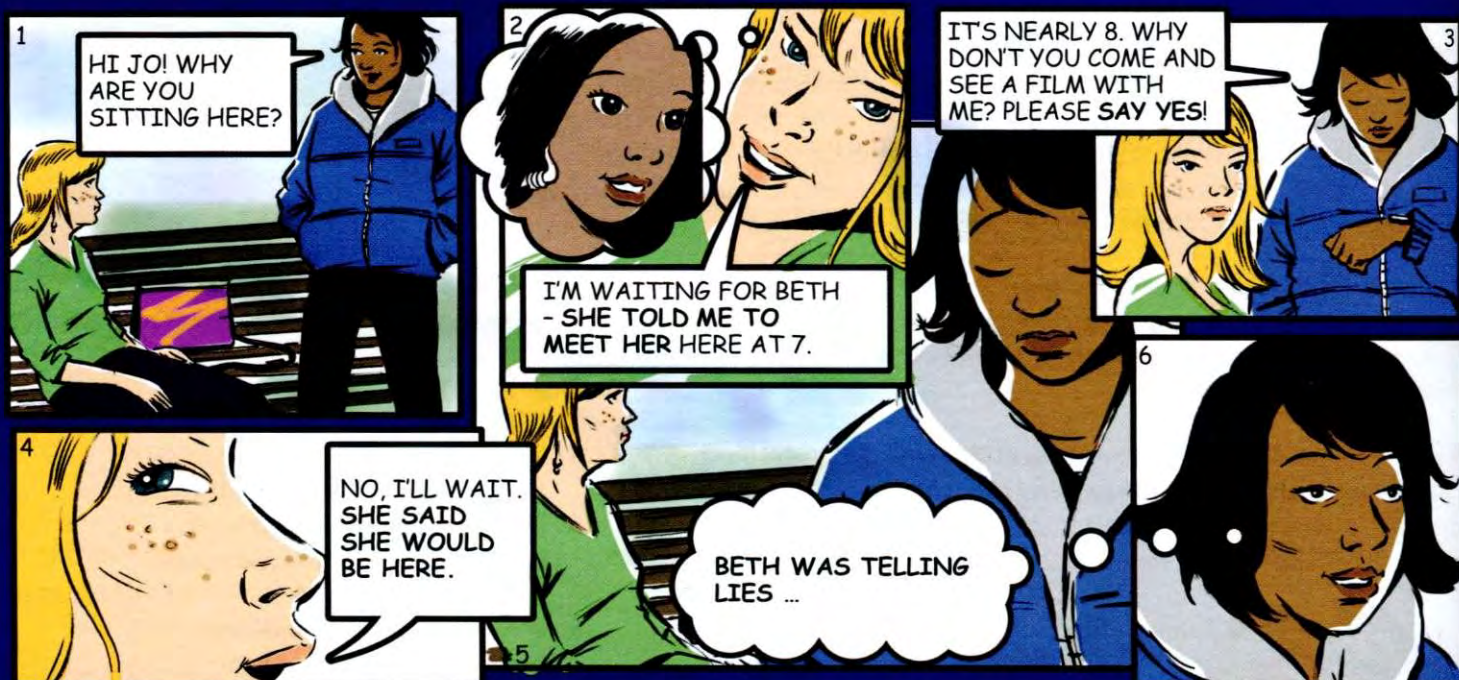
It was the morning after Sophie's party. Mr and Mrs Brown came home and found the house in a mess. What did they think and say? Write six sentences in reported speech in your notebook.

Example: *Mr Brown thought he was having a bad dream.*

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 'I like big parties': Sophie says she big parties. a likes b would like c liked
- 2 'Sophie will be 18 tomorrow': The radio station said that Sophie 18 the next day. a was b would be c will be
- 3 'You can't have a party next year': Mr Brown told Sophie that she have a party the next year.
a won't b can't c couldn't
- 4 'Sophie's helping to clean our house': Mrs Brown said that Sophie to clean their house.
a is helping b helped c was helping
- 5 'I'll come to your party tomorrow': Sophie's friend said she'd go to her party
a tomorrow b this day c the next day



What do you think happens next?

Say and tell

- 1 **Say and tell** have similar meanings.
What did he **say**?
What did she **tell** you?
- 2 Use **say** when it is not necessary to specify who is being spoken to.
What did she **say**?
She **said** (that) she would be here.
- 3 Use **tell** or **say** when you want to mention the person who is being spoken to.
Tell her your name. NOT ~~Tell to her~~ your name.
She **said to me** that she was happy.
NOT ~~She said me ...~~, ~~She told to me ...~~
- 4 We usually use **say** (not **tell**) to introduce direct speech.
'You must be home by midnight,' she **said**.
- 5 We can also use **tell** + object + **to**-infinitive to report instructions or commands.
'Phone me!' → She **told me to phone**.
The negative form is **tell** + object + **not** + **to**-infinitive.
'Don't phone!' → She **told me not to phone**.
NOT ~~She told me don't phone~~.
- 6 There are also a number of expressions using **tell** + noun. For example:
tell a joke tell a secret tell the time
tell a lie tell a story tell the truth
My mum likes **telling stories**. He **told me a good joke**.
- 7 Common expressions with **say** are:
say goodbye say something / anything
say hello say sorry
say nothing say yes / no
I hate **saying goodbye**.
Please **say yes**.

Practice

A Complete these sentences using an appropriate form of *say* or *tell*.

- 1 She looks really unhappy. What did you say to her?
- 2 He didn't that he would be late.
- 3 I'm not sure if he was me the truth.
- 4 He her to wait.
- 5 They goodbye at the station.
- 6 She's going to us everything tomorrow.
- 7 She didn't anyone she was going to the park.
- 8 She she doesn't like cheese.

B Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 please / phone / number / tell / Can / me / your / you?
Can you tell me your phone number please?
- 2 police officer / did / tell / you / What / the / do / to?
- 3 were / happy / not / said / customers / The / they
- 4 Have / problems / anyone / you / about / your / told?
- 5 She / she / get / up / would / said / early
- 6 later / will / you / about / I / the / tell / match
- 7 Passengers / platform 3 / told / go / were / to / to
- 8 very / well / said / not / My / dad / was / feeling / he
- 9 go / in / told / not / She / everyone / to
- 10 told / come / them / We / not / could / we

C Rewrite the sentences in reported speech using the pattern *tell + object + (not) to-infinitive* and the words in brackets.

- 1 'Come back in four weeks.' (The dentist / him)
The dentist told him to come back in four weeks.
- 2 'Call back later!' (He / me)
- 3 'Don't leave without us.' (We / the others)
- 4 'Wait outside.' (I will / her)
- 5 'Don't park in front of the house!' (Tell / the driver)
- 6 'Don't be late!' (I / Simon)
- 7 'Don't say anything!' (The girl / her friend)
- 8 'Don't worry!' (He / always / me)

MY TURN!

What do you think was happening? Write sentences using phrases with *say* and *tell* in your notebook.

- 1 The girl didn't believe the boy.
She thought he was telling a lie.
- 2 Everyone in the class was laughing.
- 3 The boy went red in the face.
- 4 The children were listening very carefully to the man.
- 5 The girl was speaking very quietly to her friend.
- 6 It was difficult for the boy to speak to his mother.
But afterwards he felt better.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 Jo me she was waiting for Beth. a told b told to c said
- 2 'There's a great film on at the cinema,' I a told b said her c said
- 3 I told Jo for Beth, but to come to the cinema with me. a to wait not b to don't wait c not to wait
- 4 When Beth arrived, she didn't even say for being late. a a lie b sorry c a joke
- 5 A: Hi. Are you angry with me? I thought it was still five o'clock. B: Can't you time?
a say the b tell the c tell a

My Test! answers: 1a 2c 3c 4b 5b

Defining relative clauses

A ball game that is played in many countries

Jai-alai ...

... is a team ball game **that is played in many countries**. A team has eight players **who take turns to throw the ball against a wall**. The players throw the ball from a cesta (a basket **a player ties to his arm**). The game is played in a *fronton* (a court **that has three walls**).

The sport has been popular with famous people in the USA. Paul Newman was one famous person **who played the sport**.

It is an exciting ball game **which many people think is the fastest in the world**.



True or False? Jai-alai is played in the USA.

Answer: True

Defining relative clauses

- 1 A relative clause gives us more information about a noun.

*A team has eight players **who take turns to throw the ball against the wall**. (gives more information about the players)*

*A fronton is a court **that has three walls**. (gives more information about the court)*

- 2 Many relative clauses begin with the relative pronouns **who**, **which** or **that**.

Use **who** to refer to a person.

*Paul Newman was one famous person **who** played the sport.*

Use **which** to refer to a thing, an animal or an idea.

*It is an exciting sport **which** many people think is the fastest ball game in the world.*

Use **that** instead of **who** or **which** in informal English.

*Jai-alai is a team ball game **that** is played in many countries.*

- 3 When the relative pronoun is the object of the relative clause we do not need to repeat the object pronoun.

*Handball is a game. People have played **it** for centuries. Handball is a game **which** people have played for centuries. NOT ~~Handball is a game which people have played it for centuries.~~*

- 4 We can leave out the relative pronoun when it is the object of the relative clause.

*Handball is a game **which** people have played for centuries. OR Handball is a game **people have played** for centuries.*

Practice

- A** Underline the relative clauses in this text about the game of squash.

Squash is a racket sport which boys in a London school invented in the 19th century. It is played by two players in a court that has four walls. Players hit the ball around the walls of the court. The ball travels very quickly.

Squash is a healthy sport but it is not good for people who are not very strong! It has become an internationally popular sport which many people think should be in the Olympics. But there is a problem with this. People who come to watch the matches do not always enjoy them. They find it difficult to see the ball!



- B** Complete the sentences with the relative pronoun *who* or *which*.

- That's the woman who I saw.
- The school which she goes to is outside town.
- People who arrive late have to go to Reception.
- The train which he's catching leaves in half an hour.
- The man who lives there is an actor.
- I've just seen the woman who stole your bag!
- Is that the book which your teacher told you about?
- Who Wants to be a Millionaire?* is a TV show which is very popular.

- C** Join each pair of sentences to make one sentence. Use relative clauses with *who*, *which*, *that* (or nothing).

- A spade is a thing. You use it to dig the garden.
A spade is a thing which / that you use to dig the garden.
A spade is a thing you use to dig the garden.
- Matkot is a beach game. It is played all over the world.
.....
- An ecologist is a scientist. An ecologist studies the environment.
.....
- Is that the girl? The girl you saw at the party?
.....
- A penguin is a bird. It can't fly.
.....
- I don't know the doctor. He is coming to see you.
.....
- The actress was in *Superman*. She is on TV tonight.
.....
- We're going to the hotel. It's near the beach.
.....

MY TURN!

Write definitions for the people and things in your notebook.

- | | |
|----------------|---|
| 1 A sunflower | <u>is a flower which grows very tall.</u> |
| 2 Neighbours | 3 A musician |
| 4 A chef | 5 A telescope |
| 6 An astronaut | 7 Friends |
| 8 A dinosaur | 9 A ring |
| 10 A knife | |

MY TEST!

- I** Circle the correct option.

- There are often eight players in a jai-alai game. a what play b that plays c who play
- The most important things are very strong arms and good eyes.
a that you need them b you need c which you need them
- The first player seven points is the winner. a what gets b gets c who gets
- The balls are made of rubber. a that they use b they use them c which they use them
- A very high ball down near the back wall is called a *chula*. a it comes b which comes c which it comes

Review: reported speech; say / tell; relative clauses

A Change the direct speech to reported speech in the past.

- 1 'I have to go now, Steve. The baby's crying.'
Vicky told Steve she had to go then because the baby was crying.
- 2 'You can't go out tomorrow, Frank. Your aunt is coming to stay with us.'
Frank's mum told
- 3 'Come to my house later, Zoe. I'll show you my photos.'
Sue told She said
- 4 'I can't play the guitar but I'm quite good at singing.'
John said
- 5 'We used to have a dog but now we have a cat.'
Tina said
- 6 'Please put your coats here, children. You can collect them later.'
The teacher told the and that
- 7 'I'd like to speak English as well as you, Paula.'
Greg told
- 8 'If you don't stop talking, I'll phone your mother.'
Their grandmother said that

B Read this police officer's report and change the reported speech (underlined) to direct speech.

POLICE REPORT

I was walking through the park yesterday afternoon when I saw a young man. He was speaking very loudly on a mobile phone. I told him ¹ to stop talking. The man said that ² he couldn't because he was talking to his friend. He told me that ³ his friend was angry with him. He said ⁴ he would be very very angry if he turned the phone off. I told him that ⁵ I would be very very very angry if he didn't turn the phone off. He told his friend that ⁶ he couldn't talk right then because a policeman wanted to talk to him. He turned the phone off. I told him ⁷ I was looking for a criminal. I said that ⁸ I wanted to look in his bag. He told me ⁹ I couldn't because it was full of stolen money from the bank. I laughed because I thought ¹⁰ he was joking. But then he ran away ...

- 1 'Please stop talking.'
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10

C Match the pairs.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| 1 He thinks | a she is very nice. |
| 2 He thought | b she was very nice. |
| 3 She told a | a truth |
| 4 She told the | b lie |
| 5 He said | a her that he loved her. |
| 6 He told | b to her that he loved her |
| 7 She said | a 'I'm sorry.' |
| 8 She told him | b she was sorry. |
| 9 He said | a a story. |
| 10 He told | b nothing. |

D Complete each sentence b so that it means the same as sentence a. Use two to four words, including the word in brackets.

- 1 a 'Don't be late,' Charles said to Pamela. (not)
b Charles told Pamela not to be late.
- 2 a The children listened to Bill's story. (told)
b Bill told story.
- 3 a 'I'm sorry I broke your pen, Rob,' said Adam. (said)
b said for breaking Rob's pen.
- 4 a Barry told Sylvia that he didn't like her. (I)
b Barry said, ' I , Sylvia.'
- 5 a He said he'd study the next day. (I'll)
b He said ' I'll '.
- 6 a I'll say something to you, but you mustn't tell anybody. (you)
b I'll say secret.
- 7 a 'I used to live here,' he said. (that)
b He said that live there.
- 8 a She lied to me about her age. (told)
b When I asked her about her age, she told.

E Combine the pairs of sentences into one sentence, using which or who.

- 1 The shop closes at 7.00. We want to visit it.
The shop which we want to visit closes at 7.00.
- 2 The photo is terrible! You took the photo of me.
I took the terrible photo of me.
- 3 The student is from China. I'm teaching her.
I'm teaching the Chinese student.
- 4 Where did I put that book? I was reading it.
I was reading the book where I put it.
- 5 I met someone. He went to primary school with you.
I met someone who went to primary school with you.

6 Was the doctor nice? You saw her.

7 The bus doesn't stop here. It goes to the town centre.

8 The people live next door. They have eight cats.

9 Was the present expensive? You gave the present to me.

10 People are usually healthy. They run every day.

F Match the sentence beginnings to the correct endings, then write them below. Add the relative pronouns who or which only if they are necessary.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 A tie is something | a many people enjoy. |
| 2 A shopaholic is a person | b has six legs. |
| 3 An insect is an animal | c flies a plane. |
| 4 A pet is an animal | d writes poems. |
| 5 Mercury is a planet | e you wear with a shirt. |
| 6 Oxygen is a gas | f we need to live. |
| 7 A pilot is someone | g you look after at home. |
| 8 A poet is someone | h loves shopping! |
| 9 Yoga is a type of exercise | i is very close to the sun. |

- 1 e 2 g 3 c 4 d 5 a
6 f 7 h 8 b 9 i

1 A tie is something you wear with a shirt.

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

Linking words: *and, but, or, so, because*

What is 6,700 km long and made of stone?

The Great Wall of China is 6,700 km long **and** it goes from the east to the west of China. The Wall was started more than 2,500 years ago, **but** the biggest part was built in the Ming dynasty (1368–1644).

The Mings needed the Wall **because** enemies were coming from the north. Millions of people – free people **and** slaves – built the Wall **or** guarded it. They worked day **and** night. They **guarded** the Wall during the day **and** built it at night. They didn't build in the morning **or** afternoon **because** it was often very hot **and** uncomfortable in the day.

The Wall is very old, **so** some of it is broken, **but** there are still many beautiful sections.



Underline the correct option: The Mings were *builders / emperors / slaves*.

Answer: emperors

Linking words: *and, but, or, so, because*

- 1 Use *and, but, or, so* and *because* to link two or more words, sentences, or parts of sentences.

day **and** night

the morning **or** afternoon

It was hot, **so** people worked at night.

- 2 Use *and* to add information.

I left my hotel **and** walked to the Wall.

a warm **and** beautiful night

TIP

In a long list, separate the items with commas (,), but remember to put *and* before the last item.

Chinese, Japanese, Thai **and** Korean

- 3 Use *but* to contrast information.

I love China **but** I don't like the food much.

nice **but** expensive

- 4 Use *or* to show alternatives.

Do you want to see the old town **or** go to the beach?

Don't shout **or** scream.

- 5 Use *so* to show the result of something.

The Wall is very old, **so** some of it is broken.

They worked all night, **so** they were tired in the morning.

- 6 Use *because* to show the reason for something. *Because* usually goes in the middle of the sentence.

The Chinese needed the Wall **because** they had enemies.

If you put *because* at the beginning of the sentence, you need to use a comma.

Because you speak Chinese, you can buy the tickets.

Practice

A Match the pairs.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1 I sat down | a so I was tired. |
| 2 I ran five km, | b because I was tired. |
| 3 I want to go out | a and it's raining again. |
| 4 It's Monday | b but it's raining again. |
| 5 Did you finish the test | a and did you pass? |
| 6 Did you fail the test | b or did you pass? |
| 7 Sarah looks older | a but she is in the same class as me. |
| 8 I know Sarah | b because she is in the same class as me. |
| 9 We can go for a meal | a but we can have a coffee. |
| 10 I don't have much time | b or we can have a coffee. |

B Complete the sentences using *and*, *so*, *but*, *or*, *because*.

- It's very late, so go to bed.
- Please come visit us in the summer.
- Do you want to stay here do you need to get home?
- It's a big house my bedroom is small.
- We're ready, let's go.
- John finished university got a job.
- Lucy was happy she got a present.
- We can watch it at the cinema buy the DVD. You choose.

C Join each pair of sentences using linking words and write them in your notebook.

- Sally went to bed. She felt tired.
Sally went to bed because she felt tired.
- Felix is friendly. His sister is really nice.
- My dictionary is very small. The word isn't in it.
- The party was OK. I felt a bit bored.
- Have you been to Italy before? Is this your first time here?
- I opened the bag. I saw the money.
- Trevor can't sleep. He drank a lot of coffee.
- We heard a strange noise. I phoned the police.

D Join some of the sentences in this story using linking words.

This is an interesting story. ^{so you} You will like it. Shen-Nung was an Emperor. He lived in China. One day he went into the garden. He sat under a tree. It was a beautiful day. It was too hot. It was too dry. Shen-Nung was thirsty. He asked for a drink. Shen-Nung could drink something cold. He could have a cup of hot water. The Emperor chose hot water. It was his usual afternoon drink. He waited. The servant brought the hot water. Shen-Nung closed his eyes. He felt tired. He felt sleepy. Some leaves fell from the tree. They went into his cup of water. Shen-Nung woke up. He took his cup. He drank the tea. He didn't notice the leaves. The new drink was unusual. The new drink was very tasty. He made another cup of hot water with leaves. Shen-Nung is now famous. He invented tea.

MY TURN!

Copy these sentences into your notebook and complete them using *and*, *or*, *so*, *but* and *because*.

- At the weekends I go shopping or see my friends.
- This morning I got up
- I like the place where I live
- is difficult for me
- When I leave school I might or
- made me angry
- I want or for my birthday.
- English is important for me
- Pollution is a problem
- Two things I need for happiness are

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Some people say you can easily see the Great Wall from the moon, it's not true. a or b but c so
- You can't see the Wall from the moon it's only 9 metres wide. a and b so c because
- Some people use the Wall's stones for building, parts of the Wall are broken. a and b but c so
- I want to go to China to visit Beijing visit the Great Wall. a because b and c so
- Nobody wanted to destroy the Wall build a road. a or b but c so

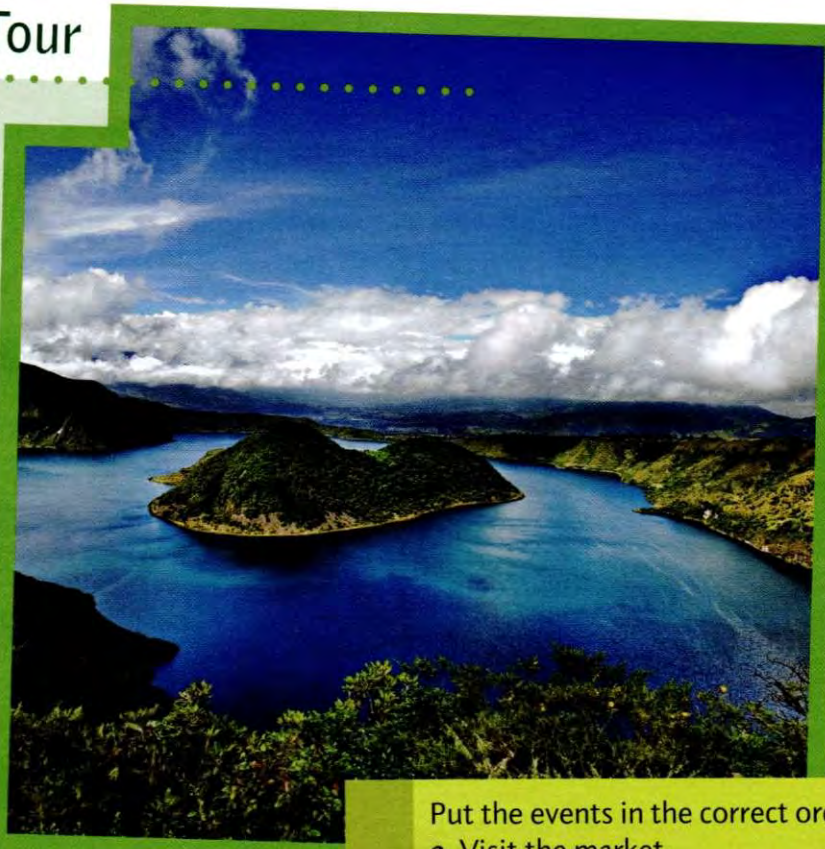
Time and sequence adverbs: *first, then, afterwards*

After lunch we visit the Peguche waterfall.

Ecuadorian Andes Tour

The two-day tour of the Ecuadorian Andes starts from a five-star hotel in Quito. **First**, we'll take you on a beautiful drive, **then** for lunch at a local restaurant on the San Pablo lake. **Next**, we'll take you to the volcanic lake of Cuicocha. At night we will stay at a 17th-century hotel.

The next morning you are free to visit the market in Otavalo. **Afterwards**, we'll visit the Peguche **waterfall**, and **finally**, we'll have a lovely drive back to the five-star hotel in Quito.



Put the events in the correct order:

- a Visit the market.
- b See the waterfall.
- c Drive back to the hotel.
- d Have lunch at the restaurant.



Answers: d, a, b, c

Time and sequence adverbs: *first, then, afterwards*

- 1 Use these words to describe the order of events:
first, next / then, afterwards, finally
- 2 Other phrases similar to *afterwards* include *after that* and *after + noun*.

The next morning, you are free to visit the market in Otavalo.

Afterwards / After that / After lunch, we visit the Peguche waterfall.

TIP

We don't usually use *after* as an adverb.

After the class we are going to the museum.

NOT *After we are going to the museum.*

- 3 When we describe a process, we can also use ordinal numbers to describe each stage, e.g. *first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth*. We can use *finally* for the last part of the process. We usually use commas after these words.
First, turn the machine on. Second, take a cup. Third, choose water or juice. Finally, press the green button.

Practice

A Complete this postcard using the words in the box.

afterwards finally
first - next then



I'm having a great time in Sicily! We arrived at the airport this morning and ¹ then we had a tour of Palermo. In Palermo, ² we visited the cathedral, ³ the Church of Martorana and ⁴ we travelled to Monreale. We are staying in a hotel tonight. Tomorrow morning we are visiting the theatre in Taormina. ⁵ we are going to the Palazzo Corvaja. Our last visit is to the top of Mount Etna in a coach. See you soon!

B Describe the process of taking money out of a cash machine. Use time and sequence adverbs and the words in the box.

bank card pin code amount of money wallet



- 1 First, put your bank card in the machine.
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6

C Complete the sentences using *first*, *second*, *then*, *after that* or *finally*. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 1 Do your homework. Then you can go out.
- 2 , listen to all the instructions. Then write your answers.
- 3 We're not ready to leave yet. , we need to check the bikes. , we need to repair the tent and we need to buy some food.
- 4 Put the sugar in a bowl and add the eggs.
- 5 We had breakfast early. we went to the beach.
- 6 It was a good class. we learnt about rivers. we saw a film and we talked about river pollution.
- 7 The best advice I can give you about money is to save first and spend.

MY TURN!

Think of a food or drink you know how to make, e.g. a cake, a cup of coffee. Write sentences describing how to make it in your notebook. Use time and sequence adverbs in your description.

Example: First, cut two slices of bread.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- 1 When you arrive at the airport, first, collect your bags. , go through Passport Control. Third, go to the Arrivals hall and look for a man with 'Super Peru Tours' on a sign. a Two b Second c After
- 2 breakfast in Cuzco, we'll drive you to Pisac. a Afterwards b After that c After
- 3 After , we'll take you to your hotel in Yucay. a then b that c this
- 4 The next morning we'll take the early train to Machu Picchu for a tour. We'll have a two-hour tour, and you will have some free time. a then b second c after
- 5 , we'll return to the hotel in Cuzco. That's the end of the holiday. a Finally b After c Second

My Test answers: 1b 2c 3b 4a 5a

Both, either, neither

They both live in a fantasy world.

The *Golden Compass* is a story of **both** magic and adventure.

Lyra and Roger are friends. **Both** children enjoy playing **and** having fun but **neither** Lyra **nor** Roger is an ordinary child. **Both** of them live in a fantasy world. **Neither** child understands how dangerous this world is.

The strangeness of their world doesn't worry **either** of the children. But then other children around them start to disappear. **Neither** of them knows why and **both** are frightened.

One day even Roger disappears. There are two things Lyra can do. She can **either** stay at home **or** travel to the terrible North to find her friend. **Both** options are dangerous. What will Lyra do?



Underline the correct option: Lyra is Roger's daughter / friend / wife.

Answer: friend

Both, either, neither

- 1 **Both** = A and B. **Neither** = not A and not B. **Either** = A or B.

Both compasses show north.

Neither is working.

Don't use either.



- 2 Use **both** either before or after nouns, but only after pronouns.

Lyra and Roger both feel afraid.

OR *Both Lyra and Roger feel afraid.*

We both like fantasy books.

- 3 Use **both of** before plural personal pronouns: **both of us / you / them**.

Both of us read it.

They will find both of them.

- 4 Use **either** and **neither** before singular nouns.

Either day at the weekend is fine.

Neither child understands.

- 5 Use **either of** and **neither of** before plural nouns and pronouns.

Do either of you understand?

Neither of them knows why.

- 6 We can use **both ... and**, **either ... or**, **neither ... nor** to join nouns, other kinds of words, phrases and even sentences.

... a story of both magic and adventure.

The children neither know nor care.

... either take the train or the bus.

- 7 We can use **both**, **either** and **neither** on their own as pronouns.

A: *Do you want a sandwich or a pizza?*

B: *Both! I'm hungry!*

C: *Either! One of them – it doesn't matter which.*

D: *Neither! I don't like sandwiches or pizzas! I want a hot dog.*

Practice

A Underline the correct word.




- There are two nice cakes. Both / Neither are delicious.
- Either / Both Russia and Korea are next to China.
- A: Do you want an apple or a banana?
B: Both / Neither. I'm not hungry.
- We saw both / both of them at the station.
- I'm not busy on Monday and Tuesday. Either / Neither day is good to meet.
- We didn't pass the exam, so either of / neither of us is happy.
- I have a sister. We both / neither like football.
- My computer is slow. It's either / neither broken or it's very old.







B In your notebook, compare Lyra and Roger using *Both / Neither* of them ... and *Both / Neither* Lyra and / nor Roger ...

	Lyra	Roger
1 Where do you come from?	Oxford	Oxford
2 Do you like Oxford?	No	No
3 Can you use a compass?	No	No
4 Do you feel afraid?	Yes	Yes
5 Have you been to the North?	No	No
6 Would you like a map?	Yes	Yes
7 Do you know where the children are?	No	No

- Both of them come from Oxford. / Both Lyra and Roger come from Oxford.

C These symbols are used in computer logic. Make sentences using *both ... and*, *either ... or* and *neither ... nor*.

 = both ... and  = either ... or  = neither ... nor

- A computer is  on / off.
A computer is either on or off.
- Programming is  a science / an art.
- Computer logic is  difficult / boring.
- The symbols are  clear / useful.
- The software is  free / very cheap.
- You need  a monitor / keyboard.

D Complete the dialogue using *both (of)*, *neither (of)* or *either (of)*.

- Andrew: Hi, Clare. Have you seen those two DVDs I bought? I can't find ¹ either of them.
- Clare: They are ² on the coffee table. You should take them back to the shop. ³ them will play.
- Andrew: Really? I watched ⁴ on Tuesday and they were OK.
- Clare: Well, they don't work now. Take them back to the shop. You can ⁵ exchange them or get your money back. I didn't like ⁶, anyway.
- Andrew: I thought ⁷ films were good. ⁸ you like those kinds of films or you don't.

MY TURN!

In your notebook, write sentences about you and your best friend using *both (of)* and *neither (of)*. (Think about your favourite things; what you do every day; your family and friends; what you can / can't do and have / don't have.)

Example: We were both born in 2000.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- I love *The Golden Compass*. I enjoyed the film and the book. a neither b both of c both
- Lyra travels between her world and ours, but she doesn't feel comfortable in
a neither of b either c either of
- Neither Lyra's mother her father understands her.
a or b nor c neither
- Both Lyra and Roger leave Oxford, but will ever come home again?
a either them b they either c either of them
- A: Who wrote the book? Was it JK Rowling or Lemony Snicket? B: It was Philip Pullman.
a Nor b Neither c Either

Evening Times, 25 July

News in Brief

Police are looking for the driver of a car which hit a tree **by the side of the M79** motorway. The car was found **earlier today**.

The Fire Service was called to a fire in **Rexbrook town centre** yesterday. The fire started in some rubbish **in Kelly Road at about 9.10 pm**.



Last night Fogmouth port was closed because of strong winds. There were long lines of trucks **outside the port today**. 'I have been here for ten hours,' one driver told us **angrily**.

Answer the questions.



- 1 When was the car found?
- 2 When was Fogmouth port closed?
- 3 Where did the fire start?

Answers: 1 earlier today 2 last night 3 in some rubbish in Kelly Road in Rexbrook town centre

Word order

1 Common expressions of time:

in the winter	today	early
in the afternoon	tomorrow morning	again
on Sunday	next week	now
on Mondays	last month	then
at the moment	yesterday	recently
at 9 o'clock	daily	these days
at lunchtime	every year	at this time
for ten years		

2 Common expressions of place:

here	in the town centre
there	at the bank
upstairs	at the end of the street
in Italy	near the church
in Milan	outside the fire station
in Ford Street	

3 We usually put expressions of time and place and adverbs of manner at the end of a sentence. Sometimes we put them at the beginning.

The Fire Service was called to a fire **in Rexbrook town centre**.

The police came **immediately**.

Last night Fogmouth port was closed because of strong winds.

If there is more than one of these at the end of a sentence, the order is usually: manner, place, time.

There were long queues of trucks **outside Fogmouth port today**. (place + time)

She brushed her teeth **carefully at bedtime**. (manner + time)

He ran **quickly to school in the morning**. (manner + place + time)

► See Unit 56 for more adverbs of manner.

TIP

An adverb does not usually come between a verb and the object.

They closed the port yesterday.

NOT ~~They closed yesterday the port.~~

► See Unit 1 for more information on word order.

Practice

A Underline the expressions of time and place in these short news stories and mark them either t (time) or p (place).

- Police are looking for three men who stole money from a restaurant in Market Place. The robbery happened at Tony's Diner at 8 pm on Monday.
- There are plans for new buildings at the Barton Hospital. Work will start on the old people's buildings in the summer.
- Rory Wright could play for Barton Football Club again. The club hopes the 23-year-old player will return next month.
- The headteacher of Stoke Fields Primary School has retired at the age of 65. Ian Fletcher has worked at the city centre school for 18 years. Mr Fletcher owns a house in Florida. He plans to move there.

B Complete the dialogues by putting the words in the correct order. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- A: What time do we leave in the morning?
B: We need to leave early. (we / early / leave / to / need)
- A: Have you been to the holiday apartment recently?
B: Yes, last week. (last / week / there / was / I)
- A: Do you know this town?
B: Oh yes, years ago. (years / lived / have / for / here / I)
- A: When do you go to the gym?
B: On Tuesdays. (Tuesdays / I / on / go / there)
- A: Do you know where the town hall is?
B: It's over there. (now / am / I / there / going)
- A: Have you read the information?
B: No, but I haven't looked at it yet. (I / it / at / look / tonight / carefully / will)
- A: Have you seen my bag?
B: Yes, it's upstairs. (was / upstairs / it / morning / this)
- A: Where are we meeting?
B: Outside the school at 9.15. (are / outside / at / we / school / the / meeting / 9.15)

C Add more information to the news stories by putting the expressions in the right places.

- last week on Sunday evening outside the port

Three young men were rescued from a boat near Fogmouth port. The boat hit large rocks. No one was hurt.

- at home from St Francis Zoo recently yesterday

A bear escaped. Police told people to stay. A number of animals have escaped from the zoo, including a rare white tiger.

MY TURN!

Copy and complete the sentences in your notebook using appropriate expressions of time and / or place.

- The baby was born at the hospital last night.
- Buses go every 10 minutes.
- I was at the party last night.
- Shall we have the party on Saturday afternoon?
- I'm going to meet her at the airport tomorrow.
- Could you give him the present when he comes?
- I love going to the park on sunny days.

MY TEST!

Circle the correct option.

- Police stopped a woman driving dangerously in the city last night.
a dangerously in the city last night b in the city dangerously last night c in the city last night dangerously
- Tomorrow the president is going to open the new airport.
b The president tomorrow is going to open c The president is going to tomorrow open
- Most teenagers don't do enough sport outside these days.
a outside enough sport these days b these days enough sport outside c enough sport outside these days
- Lynn Green played chess well last Tuesday.
a chess well last Tuesday b chess last Tuesday well c well chess last Tuesday
- 13-year-old Harry White has made over £1 million buying and selling on the Internet. 'I spend all my free time there,' he said.
a at the moment all my free time there b all my free time there at the moment c there all my free time at the moment

A Complete the sentences using the expressions in brackets. Remember the usual order is: manner, place, time.

- 1 She climbed slowly upstairs.
(slowly / upstairs)
- 2 I have an appointment
(in the park / at 11.00)
- 3 Can you meet me ?
(at the hospital / next Monday)
- 4 I always eat
(at lunchtime / quickly)
- 5 You don't see young people
(in this café / these days)
- 6 People must drive
(carefully / on Saturdays / in the town centre)
- 7 He's staying
(in Barcelona / on holiday)
- 8 I saw him
(here / last week)
- 9 Can you swim
(now / well)
- 10 I'm not studying
(at the moment / at school / hard)

B Underline the correct options.

- 1 It's hard work or / but I enjoy it.
- 2 I walk everywhere. I don't have a car and / or a bike.
- 3 I stayed at home on Saturday so / because I thought Andy would visit.
- 4 I thought Andy would visit, so / because I stayed at home on Saturday.
- 5 Amy got up too late, so / because she missed the bus.
- 6 Amy missed the bus so / because she had got up too late.
- 7 I'd like to buy this shirt for Charlie, and / but do you think it will be big enough?
- 8 I went back to the village and / or saw all the places I used to play in.
- 9 My sister and I both / either like rock climbing.
- 10 I haven't been there either / neither.

C Make sentences by putting the words in the correct order.

- 1 arrived / both / late / us / of
Both of us arrived late.
- 2 neither / nor / see / hear / I / him / could
I
- 3 stay / I / go / I / do / or / do?
Do
- 4 after / spoke / he / game / the / the /
players / to
After
- 5 wasn't / the / either / joke / clever / funny /
or
The
- 6 were / because / late / angry / they / was / I
Because
- 7 playing / team / was / neither / well
Neither
- 8 colds / my mum / my dad / have / and /
both
My

D Make one sentence from each pair using the linking words: *and*, *because*, *but*, *or*, *so*.

- 1 They sat down. She asked their names.
They sat down and she asked their names.
- 2 My computer is very slow now. I'm getting a new one.
.....
- 3 Would you like a sandwich? Have you had something to eat?
.....
- 4 I need some new shoes. These are really old.
.....
- 5 I've joined the club. I'll get tickets half-price.
.....
- 6 He loves music. He can't sing very well.
.....
- 7 Laura agreed to help them. They had been kind to her in the past.
.....
- 8 Just knock on the door! Go in!
.....
- 9 I'll give you the book at school tomorrow. I'll bring it to your house later.
.....
- 10 I'm going to the party. I have to leave early.
.....

E Put the sentences in the correct order and complete them with the time and sequence adverbs from the box.

after five or ten minutes finally ~~first~~ second then

The perfect lunch.

-, cut into pieces and enjoy!
-, put the bread and cheese back in the **oven** at 180° C.
- First* ~~warm some bread in the oven.~~
-, put some cheese on top.
-, take the toast out of the oven and put some tomato on top.

- 1 *First, warm some bread in the oven.*
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

F Complete the text using the words and expressions from the box.

and at midnight at the school because
both but but finally ~~in 1989~~
in New England so

The film *Dead Poets Society* was made
1 *in 1989* It is still a very
popular teen movie 2
its message is that a man should think for himself.
The film takes place 3
in the 1950s. The main characters in the film are
new schoolboys Neil and Todd
4 a new English
teacher, Mr Keating. The two boys
5 have difficult
fathers who want them to do well
6 They soon
become friends. The school and the parents are
very traditional, 7 Mr
Keating is a young free-thinking teacher. Mr
Keating helps the boys to be different. They form
a poetry club which meets to read poems
8 The headteacher
becomes worried about Mr Keating's classes,
9 he tells the new
teacher to leave.
10 Mr Keating has
to agree, 11 he has
changed the boys' lives forever.



Verb tenses

statement		negative	questions
Present simple			
I/you/we/they	work	do not work (I don't work)	Do I work?
he/she/it	works	does not work (he doesn't work)	Does he work?
Present continuous			
I	am working (I'm working)	am not working (I'm not working)	Am I working?
you/we/they	are working (you're working)	are not working (you're not / you aren't working)	Are you working?
he/she/it	is working (it's working)	is not working (it's not / it isn't working)	Is it working?
Past simple			
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	worked	did not work (you didn't work)	Did you work?
Present perfect			
I/you/we/they	have worked (they've worked)	have not worked (they haven't worked)	Have they worked?
he/she/it	has worked (she's worked)	has not worked (she hasn't worked)	Has she worked?

Irregular verbs

infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	caught	caught
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

infinitive	past simple	past participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Spelling: verbs

Present simple verbs *he/she/it*

most verbs	+ -s	<i>work – works</i>
verbs ending -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -z	+ -es	<i>watch – watches</i>
verbs ending -o	+ -es	<i>go – goes</i>
verbs ending consonant + y	y → i + -es	<i>study – studies</i>
verbs ending vowel + y	+ -s	<i>play – plays</i>

! *Have* and *be* are irregular.

I, you, we, they have he, she, it has

I am you, we, they are he, she, it is

-ing form

most verbs	+ -ing	<i>work – working</i>
verbs ending -e	remove e + -ing	<i>come – coming</i>
! except <i>be</i> is irregular		<i>be – being</i>
verbs ending -ee	+ -ing	<i>see – seeing</i>
verbs ending vowel + b, g, m, n, p, t	double consonant + -ing	<i>get – getting</i>
! except if final syllable is <i>not</i> stressed		<i>visit – visiting</i>
verbs ending -l	double l + -ing	<i>travel – travelling</i>
! North American English has one l		<i>traveling</i>
verbs ending in -ie	ie → y + -ing	<i>lie – lying</i>

Past simple

most verbs	+ -ed	<i>work – worked</i>
verbs ending -e	+ -d	<i>like – liked</i>
verbs ending consonant + y	y → i + -ed	<i>try – tried</i>
verbs ending in vowel + y	+ -ed	<i>play – played</i>
! except <i>pay, lay, say</i>	y → i + -d	<i>paid, laid, said</i>
verb ends vowel + consonant	double consonant + -ed	<i>chat – chatted</i>
! except if final syllable is <i>not</i> stressed		<i>visit – visited</i>
verb ends -l	double l + -ed	<i>travel – travelled</i>
! North American English has one l		<i>traveled</i>

Spelling: adjectives; adverbs; nouns

Adjectives and adverbs

Comparative and superlative adjectives and adverbs

most words	+ -er/-est	<i>fast – faster – fastest</i>
words ending -e	+ -r/-st	<i>nice – nicer – nicest</i>
words ending consonant + y	y → i + -er/-est	<i>early – earlier – earliest</i>
words ending vowel + consonant	double consonant + -er/-est	<i>big – bigger – biggest</i>

Adverbs ending in -ly

most adjectives	+ -ly	<i>bad – badly</i>
adjectives ending -le	e → y	<i>simple – simply</i>
adjectives ending consonant + y	y → i + -ly	<i>busy – busily</i>

Nouns

Regular noun plurals (countable nouns only)

most nouns	+ -s	<i>car – cars</i>
noun ends -s, -ss, -sh, -ch, -x, -z	+ -es [adds a syllable]	<i>watch – watches</i>
noun ends vowel + -o	+ -s	<i>radio – radios</i>
noun ends consonant + o	+ -es	<i>tomato – tomatoes</i>
noun ends consonant + y	y → i + -es	<i>diary – diaries</i>
noun ends vowel + y	+ -s	<i>day – days</i>
noun ends -f/fe ! except roof – roofs	f/fe → ves	<i>knife – knives</i>

Irregular noun plurals

<i>man</i>	<i>men</i>
<i>woman</i>	<i>women</i>
<i>child</i>	<i>children</i>
<i>person</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>tooth</i>	<i>teeth</i>
<i>foot</i>	<i>feet</i>

Glossary

bee	a yellow and black insect that makes honey	1
amazed	very surprised	58
amazing	very surprising	58
ancient	from a long time ago	10
army	a large group of soldiers that fight wars	10
assertive	behaving or speaking in a strong, confident way	37
assistant	someone whose job is to help a person who has a more important job	13
atmosphere	the feeling which exists in a place or situation	54
attraction	somewhere you can visit that is interesting or enjoyable	55
axe	a tool with a sharp piece of metal at one end, used for cutting trees or wood	26
bacteria	very small living things that can cause disease	65
bakery	a shop where you can buy bread, cakes, etc.	49
bat	a small animal like a mouse with wings that flies at night	20
battle	a fight between two armies in a war	10
bite	to cut something using teeth	32
blood pressure	the force with which blood flows around your body	35
bone	one of the hard, white pieces inside the body of a person or animal	26
Briton	someone who comes from Great Britain	10
butterfly	an insect with large, coloured wings	47
cabbage	a large, round vegetable with a lot of green or white leaves	31
calm	If the weather or the sea is calm, it is quiet and peaceful.	30
captain	the person in control of a ship or aeroplane	47
castle	a large, strong building that was built in the past to protect the people inside from being attacked	8
cave	a large hole in the ground or in the side of a mountain	12
chain	a line of metal rings connected together	R 12
charge up	put electricity into	36
chlorine	a gas with a strong smell, used to make water safe to drink and swim in (symbol Cl)	65
chopsticks	thin sticks used for eating food in East Asia	13
cocoa bean	the seed of the cacao tree. Chocolate is made from this.	40
colony	a country or area controlled by a more powerful country	10
comic	a magazine with stories told in pictures	6
compass	a piece of equipment which shows you which direction you are going in	24
complain	to say that something is wrong or that you are angry about something	38
contract	a legal agreement between two people or organisations	18
convenient	near or easy to get to	54
country	the areas that are away from towns and cities	45
criminal	someone who has done a crime	9
depressed	very sad, often for a long time	58
depressing	making you feel sad and without any hope for the future	58
desert	a large, hot, dry area of land with very few plants	39
determined	wanting so much to do something that you keep trying very hard	22
diet	the type of food that someone usually eats	35
diplomat	someone who is good at dealing with people in a sensitive way	37
dyslexic	Someone who is dyslexic has difficulty with reading and writing.	15
elevator	(AmE) a machine that carries people up and down in tall buildings (BrE lift)	7
empire	a group of countries that is ruled by one person or government	33
enemy	a person or country that you are arguing or fighting with	8
expedition	an organised journey, especially a long one for a particular purpose	24
explode	If a bomb explodes, it bursts (= breaks suddenly from inside) with noise and force.	62
fail	to not be successful	9
faithful	always liking and supporting someone or something	34
fan	someone who likes a person or thing very much	31
fascinating	very interesting	53
feather	one of the soft, light things that cover a bird's skin	28
fishing boat	a boat used to catch fish	44
flight	a journey in an aircraft	62
float	to stay on the surface of a liquid and not go under	35
forever	for all time in the future	46
fox	a wild animal like a dog with brown fur and a long thick tail	1
fur	the thick hair that covers bodies of some animals like cats and rabbits	4
gravity	the force that makes objects fall to the ground	26
guard	to protect someone or something so that no one attacks or steals them.	70
guidebook	a book that gives visitors information about a particular place	23
habitat	the natural environment of an animal or plant	25
helmet	a hard hat that protects your head	11
hero	a very brave man that a lot of people admire	8
honey	a sweet, sticky food that is made by bees	28
horizon	the line in the distance where the sky and the land or sea seem to meet	39
hydrogen	a gas that combines with oxygen to form water	55
image	the way that other people think someone or something is	33
in danger	when it is possible that something bad will happen	4
intend	to want and plan to do something	38
invent	to design or make something new	9
jealous	upset and angry because someone you like likes another person	34
jogging	the activity of running at a slow regular speed, especially as a form of exercise	32

jungle	an area of land in a hot country where trees and plants grow close together 39	slim	Someone who is slim is thin in an attractive way. 54
keyboard	a set of keys on a computer, which you press to make it work 72	soap opera	a series of television or radio programmes that continues over a long period and is about the lives of a group of characters 48
kiss	to put your lips against another person's lips or skin because you love or like them 23	sofa	a large, comfortable seat for more than one person 5
lake	a large area of water which has land all around it 55	software	programs that you use to make a computer do different things 72
leaf (leaves)	a flat, green part of a plant that grows from a stem or branch 1	species	a group of plants or animals which are the same in some way 25
lend	to give something to someone for a period of time 37	spider	a creature with eight long legs which catches insects in a web 1
lightning	sudden bright light in the sky during a storm 57	sprinter	someone who runs short distances in competitions 53
lonely	sad because you are not with other people 3	stripy	with a pattern of stripes 1
mechanic	someone who repairs vehicles and machines 4	suitcase	a rectangular case with a handle that you use for carrying clothes when you are travelling 5
medicine	something that you drink or eat when you are ill, to stop you being ill 16	sulphur	a yellow chemical element that has an unpleasant smell (symbol S) 28
monitor	a screen that shows information or pictures, usually connected to a computer 72	survivor	someone who continues to live after almost dying because of an accident, illness, etc. 20
monster	an imaginary creature that is large, ugly, and frightening 10	temple	a building where people in some religions go to pray 16
mosquito	a small flying insect that drinks your blood, sometimes causing a disease 25	tent	a structure for sleeping in, made of cloth fixed to metal poles 22
mustard	a spicy yellow or brown sauce often eaten in small amounts with meat 13	terrified	very frightened 58
nest	a home built by birds or insects for their eggs 29	terrifying	very frightening 58
oven	a piece of kitchen equipment which is used for cooking food R 14	thunder	the loud noise in the sky that you hear during a storm 57
panic	to suddenly feel very afraid so that you stop thinking clearly and do silly things 7	tragedy	something very sad which happens, usually involving death 62
pet	an animal that someone keeps in their home 11	treasure	something valuable; gold, silver and jewellery 46
pineapple	a large fruit with leaves sticking out of the top which is sweet and yellow inside 35	tunnel	a long passage under the ground or through a mountain 30
pirate	someone who attacks ships and steals from them 63	uniform	a special set of clothes that are worn by people who do a particular job or by children at school 22
programming	when someone writes computer programs 72	vegetarian	someone who does not eat meat or fish 14
protest	when people show that they disagree with something by standing somewhere, shouting, carrying signs, etc 9	vet	a doctor for animals 4
qualification	what you get when you pass an exam or a course 65	volcanic	volcanic rocks come from a volcano (a mountain that sends gas and hot rocks out of a hole in the top) 40
raw	not cooked 13	wasp	a flying insect with a thin, black and yellow body 29
react	If a chemical substance reacts with another substance, it changes. 65	waterfall	a stream of water that falls from a high place, often to a pool below 71
recycle	to use paper, glass, plastic, etc. again and not throw it away 64	wave	to put your hand up and move it from side to side in order to attract someone's attention or to say goodbye 36
rent	to pay money to live in a building that someone else owns 14	weep	to cry, usually because you are sad 22
resident	someone who lives in a particular place 14	whale	a very large animal that looks like a large fish and lives in the sea 55
rhyme	If a word rhymes with another word, the end part of the words sound the same. 22	wind	a natural, fast movement of air 39
rhythm	a regular, repeating pattern of sound 39	wipe your feet	clean dirt from your shoes on a mat before entering a room or house 22
rugby	a sport played by two teams with an oval ball and H-shaped goals 6	witch	a woman who has magical powers 16
scream	when someone makes a high, loud cry because they are afraid or upset 11	wonderful	very good 53
shake	to make quick, short movements from side to side or up and down 11	worm	a small creature with a long, thin, soft body and no legs 25
shy	not confident, especially about meeting new people 24		
slave	someone who is owned by someone else and has to work for them 70		

Grammar index

- a/an* 102, 104
a few 114
a little 114
a lot of / lots of 114
able to 52
adjectives 126, 128, 130, 132, 138
adverbs 134, 136, 142, 172
after 172
afterwards 172
and 170
any 110
anybody 112
anyone 112
anything 112
anywhere 112
articles 102, 104
be 8
because 170
both 174
but 170
can, can't 52, 54, 56
comparatives 130, 136
conditionals 156, 158
could 52, 54, 60, 156, 158
countable nouns 98
either 174
enough 140
ever 34
everybody 112
everyone 112
everything 112
everywhere 112
first 172
first conditional 156
going to 48
have (got) 82
have to 56
if 156, 158
infinitive 92
imperative 18
-ing form 14, 92
it is 122
like 70, 92
linking words 170, 172
many 114, 140
may 54, 60
might 60, 156, 158
much 114, 140
must 56
neither 76, 174
never 34
no 110
none 110
or 170
ought to 58
passive 154
past continuous 28
past simple 22, 24, 26, 38
phrasal verbs 88
plural nouns 100
possessive apostrophe ('s) 118
possessive adjectives 120
prepositional verbs 86
prepositions 86, 88, 146, 148, 150
present continuous 14, 16, 46
present perfect 32, 34, 36, 38
present simple 10, 12, 16
pronouns 116, 120
quantifiers 114
question tags 78
questions 64, 66, 68, 72, 74
relative clauses 166
reported speech 162
say 164
second conditional 158
shall 44
should 58
so 76, 170
some 110
somebody 112
someone 112
something 112
somewhere 112
state verbs 94
superlatives 132, 136
tell 164
that 108
the 102, 104
then 172
there is/are 122
these 108
this 108
those 108
to infinitive 92
too 140
uncountable nouns 98
unless 156
used to 40
was/were 22
will 44, 156
word order 6, 176
would 158
would like 92
zero conditional 156

Answer key

1 Word class and word order

A Nouns: people, language, vowels, fox, dog, words
Pronouns: it, he
Adjectives: quick, brown, lazy, new
Verbs: use, has, jumps, studied
Adverbs: very carefully

- B 2 750,000,000 people 3 It
4 The quick brown fox 5 He

C Possible answers

- 2 He 3 goes / comes 4 slowly
5 tall 6 very 7 student 8 tells
9 hospital 10 They
- D 2 We speak Russian.
3 She is ('s) a strange woman.
4 My aunt drives very badly.
5 They live in this street.
6 He has two brothers.
7 The dog ate my sandwich.
8 We saw the new film.

My Turn!

2 pronouns 3 adjectives 4 verbs 5 adverbs

Possible answers

The ugly giraffe danced happily.
The beautiful woman watched the purple moon sadly.
The striped spider went to Morocco slowly.
We won a crazy tennis match quickly.

2 Be

- A 2 are 3 is 4 are 5 am 6 is 7 is
8 am 9 are 10 is
- B 2 are ('re) 3 is ('s) 4 are ('re) 5 is not (isn't)
6 Am 7 are not (aren't) 8 Is
- C 2 am ('m) 3 am not ('m not) 4 is
5 is not (isn't / 's not) 6 are 7 is not (isn't)
8 is ('s) 9 is 10 are ('re) 11 is not (isn't)
12 is ('s) 13 are 14 are ('re)
15 are not (aren't / 're not)
- D 2 Is King Henry your father? Yes, he is.
3 Is your mother the Queen? Yes, she is.
4 Are we brothers? No, we are not / we aren't /
we're not.
5 Are your sisters here? No, they are not / they
aren't / they're not.
6 Are you very rich? Yes, I am.
7 Is it cold in your house? No, it is not / isn't.
8 Am I your friend? Yes, you are.

My Turn!

Possible answers

2 isn't 3 is 4 am 5 are 6 's 7 are
8 'm 9 are not 10 's not

3 Present simple 1

- A 2 it does 3 it enjoys 4 it fixes 5 it misses
6 it says 7 it teaches 8 it thinks 9 it tries
10 it washes
- B 2 live 3 comes 4 visit 5 buys 6 has
7 show 8 studies
- C 2 walk 3 see 4 say 5 feel 6 has
7 goes 8 wears 9 goes 10 works
11 write

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I always eat toast.
3 You never have breakfast.
4 My teacher comes to school early.
5 The school opens at 8.30.
6 My friends sometimes walk with me.
7 We like school.

4 Present simple 2

- A 2 don't grow 3 Does 4 Do
5 doesn't include 6 don't think
7 don't see 8 don't live
- B 2 don't live 3 prefer 4 use
5 does not (doesn't) have 6 stays
7 does not (doesn't) stay 8 do not (don't) fight
- C 3 Does a vet look after animals?
4 Do zoo keepers work in shops?
5 Does a young colobus monkey have white fur?
6 Do we go to school on Sundays?
7 Do nurses work in a hospital?
8 Do you do sport in the evening?
- 3 Yes, he / she does.
4 No, they don't.
5 Yes, it does.
6 No, we don't!
7 Yes, they do.
8 Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

- D 2 don't eat 3 don't fight 4 has 5 have
6 doesn't look after 7 don't go home 8 love

My Turn!

- 2 Do (the) gorillas eat bananas?
3 Do (the) gorillas fight?
4 Does the park have a lot of gorillas?
5 Do (the) gorillas have babies?
6 Does a / the baby gorilla stay with its mother?
7 Does a / the baby gorilla drink milk?
8 Do you like your job?

Possible answers

Do you have a favourite gorilla?
Do you give the gorillas names?
Do you play with the baby gorillas?
Do the baby gorillas have toys?
Do most of the gorillas look after their babies?

5 Present continuous

- A 2 are singing 3 aren't waiting 4 am running
5 Am I speaking 6 are not enjoying
7 am living 8 Is that boy smiling
- B 3 are ('re) planning 4 am ('m) walking
5 are not (aren't / 're not) running
6 is ('s) drinking 7 am not ('m not) having
8 is ('s) carrying 9 is not (isn't / 's not) working
- C 2 am ('m) sitting 3 is ('s) telling
4 is ('s) showing 5 are not (aren't) looking
6 is not (isn't / 's not) shouting
7 is not (isn't / 's not) singing 8 is ('s) coming
9 's / is smiling 10 Are you doing
11 are ('re) bringing

- D 2 am not ('m not) feeling 3 are ('re) trying
4 are not (aren't / 're not) playing
5 are you wearing 6 is ('s) writing
7 Are ... carrying 8 is ('s) talking
9 Is ... studying 10 am not ('m not) staying

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 3 Yes, I am. 4 No, they aren't. 5 No, I'm not.
6 No, it isn't. 7 No, I'm not. 8 Yes, it is.
9 Yes, I am.

6 Present continuous and present simple

- A 2 Do you have 3 is snowing
4 speaks 5 don't know 6 is playing
7 Do you like 8 'm not laughing; 'm crying
- B 3a 4b 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b 10a 11a 12b
- C 2 agree 3 Do ... need
4 is not (isn't / 's not) wearing 5 are ('re) carrying
6 do not (don't) know 7 Is ... waiting
8 is not (isn't) raining
- D 2 is shining 3 is ('s) wearing 4 comes
5 does not (doesn't) speak 6 study
7 (we) go 8 am ('m) sitting
9 do not (don't) think 10 lives
11 Are you working

My Turn!

Possible answers

I'm sitting on a ski lift. I'm wearing skis. I ski every day.
I don't like the cold weather!

7 Imperatives

- A 2 Leave 3 Don't take time 4 Close
5 don't open 6 Don't go back 7 Phone
- B 2 Don't worry 3 Go shopping 4 don't put
5 Take / Have 6 Have; Don't forget
7 pick up 8 Turn left
- C 2 Don't be / Don't arrive 3 Buy / Get
4 Don't buy / Don't get 5 Go; go / come
6 Turn; go / walk 7 Wait

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 1 Visit the art museum.
2 Have lunch in the market place.
3 Climb to the top of the hill.
4 Don't go to the parks at night.
5 Don't forget your camera.
6 Don't come on Saturday.

R1 Review: present simple and present continuous

- A 2 is ('s) running; is ('s) trying 3 works; fixes
4 is ('s) crying; cries
5 is having; are dancing; are chatting
6 studies; isn't studying; is ('s) making
7 doesn't want; says 8 has; relaxes; goes
- B 2 I'm not 3 Do 4 I don't 5 isn't 6 Is
7 Do 8 I don't 9 don't 10 isn't 11 isn't
12 don't
- C 2 My brother doesn't play the guitar, but he is ('s)
very good at singing.
3 We aren't ('re not) very happy. Our team isn't ('s)
not) winning.

- 4 Ann and Robert don't like London, and they aren't (re not) planning to stay here.
 5 Lucy isn't (s not) very good at dancing. We don't enjoy her shows.
 6 Marcus isn't playing a computer game at the moment. He doesn't play computer games every night.
 7 That song isn't very good. I don't want to listen to it again.
 8 Tony eats hamburgers. He eats a lot of meat.
 9 Joanna doesn't have a swimming competition next week, so she isn't (s not) practising very hard today.
 10 I go to school by bus – I don't walk. So I have time to read magazines on the way.
- D 2 Is your English getting 3 don't have 4 am (m) practising 5 want 6 thinks 7 don't think 8 Do you remember 9 still think 10 is (s) learning 11 is (s) playing 12 am (m) writing
- E 2 sleeps; goes; catches 3 Does; go; doesn't; goes 4 play; wins; beats 5 Do; know; Does; have; does 6 visit; lives 7 doesn't; snow; rains; don't; like 8 Do; like; loves; doesn't; enjoy 9 Does; stop; does; want
- F 2 Don't touch 3 be quiet 4 Don't look at 5 Come 6 don't be late 7 Don't bring 8 wait 9 don't go out 10 Drink

8 Past simple 1

- A 2 was; were; weren't 3 was; was 4 Was; wasn't; was 5 Was; wasn't; were 6 Were; weren't
- B 2 wasn't 3 was 4 Were you 5 weren't 6 were you 7 were

C Possible answers

- 2 wasn't hungry 3 weren't friendly 4 weren't afraid 5 wasn't hot 6 wasn't clean / wasn't hot / wasn't very big 7 weren't clean / weren't very big 8 weren't in a hurry
- D 2 wasn't 3 were 4 was 5 is 6 is 7 weren't 8 was 9 were 10 are

My Turn!

Possible answers

The people were very friendly and the shops were excellent. The streets weren't very crowded. It was a great day!

9 Past simple 2

- A 3 She lived in a flat. 4 She did not (didn't) want a house. 5 She preferred flats. 6 She did not (didn't) watch TV much. 7 She enjoyed dancing. 8 She danced the Salsa. 9 She learned Spanish. 10 She did not (didn't) stay at home much.
- B 2 Did ... watch 3 worked 4 stopped 5 didn't talk 6 travelled 7 Did ... pass 8 listened 9 Did ... finish 10 didn't like
- C 2 asked 3 Did ... celebrate 4 replied 5 didn't know 6 didn't work 7 tried 8 failed 9 didn't like 10 preferred

My Turn!

- 3 30 teenagers didn't use the Internet yesterday.
 4 19 teenagers downloaded a song last week.
 5 35 teenagers played a computer game yesterday.
 6 58 teenagers emailed a friend last week.
 7 10 teenagers didn't like computers five years ago.

Possible answers

- 2 I used the Internet yesterday.
 3 I didn't download a song last week.
 4 I played a computer game yesterday.
 5 I didn't email a friend last week.
 6 I didn't like computers five years ago.

10 Past simple 3

- A break, get, hear, know, leave, make, mean, see, speak, take, think
- B 2 won 3 had 4 did not (didn't) sleep 5 did not (didn't) eat 6 drank 7 paid 8 went 9 fought 10 gave 11 left 12 did not (didn't) come 13 became
- C ... ate / had bread and (drank) water for breakfast. She didn't go to school, she went to work. Her work began at 6.30. She ate / had meat for lunch. She got home at 5.00. She made clothes in the evening. Before she went to bed, she told a story to her sister. She didn't sleep in a bed, she slept on the floor.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 3 Yes, I did. I bought some chocolate.
 4 No, I didn't. I went to bed early.
 5 Yes, I did. I forgot my Geography homework.
 6 Yes, I did. I saw Lucy.
 7 Did you get any messages? Yes, I did. Lucy sent me a text.
 8 Did you drink coffee? No, I didn't. I drank two cans of cola.
 9 Did you feel happy? Yes, I did. I was very happy.

11 Past continuous

- A 2 was shining 3 was wearing 4 was reading 5 was drinking 6 was feeling
- B 2 It was getting late and the man was working quickly. 3 The pencil broke while I was writing down her phone number. 4 It was snowing but we were not (weren't) wearing warm clothes. 5 A cat ran in front of the car when I was driving home. 6 The lights changed while she was still crossing the road. 7 You were still sleeping when I got up. 8 They were not (weren't) building the stadium when I was living / lived in the city.
- C 2 caught 3 put 4 sent 5 followed 6 were camping 7 were following 8 left 9 went 10 took 11 were camping 12 found 13 were sitting 14 were cooking

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I was having a shower. 3 Terrible! It was raining.
 4 Yes, I did. I wasn't wearing a coat.
 5 No, I wasn't. I wasn't feeling well.
 6 No, sorry, I wasn't listening.

R2 Review: past simple and past continuous

- A 2d 3b 4c 5e 6a
 B 3d 4c 5f 6e 7h 8g
 C 2 was walking 3 said 4 told 5 was playing / played 6 met 7 Did the Romans use 8 wasn't watching
 D 2 were playing 3 fell 4 hit 5 happened 6 were coming 7 was drinking 8 heard 9 were speaking 10 ran 11 gave
 E 2a 3b 4a 5a 6c 7b 8a 9b 10c

- F 2 While we were eating breakfast, the letter arrived.
 3 Sarah didn't go because she wasn't feeling very well.
 4 As I was falling, my parachute suddenly opened.
 5 Were you having a shower when I phoned?
 6 Gavin broke his arm while he was doing judo.

G Possible answers

- 2 I walked through the park on the way here and it was raining.
 3 I didn't want my sister to eat them.
 4 I was doing it but my dog ate it.
 5 I didn't sleep last night because I was worrying about the exam.
 6 I was playing tennis in the garden.

H 2a 3b 4c 5a 6c

12 Present perfect 1

- A 2b 3a 4h 5f 6e 7i 8g 9d
- B 2 have (ve) already finished 3 has not (hasn't) come 4 Have you had 5 has stolen 6 have (ve) just bought 7 have (ve) just cleaned 8 Have you phoned 9 have (ve) already seen
- C 2 Have you tidied your cave yet? No, I haven't. 3 Have you done your science homework yet? Yes, I have. 4 Have you had a bath yet? No, I haven't. 5 Have you washed the dinosaur yet? No, I haven't. 6 Have you made your sandwiches yet? Yes, I have. 7 Have you bought the dinosaur food yet? No, I haven't.
- 2 He has not (hasn't) had a bath yet.
 3 He has not (hasn't) washed the dinosaur yet.
 4 He has not (hasn't) bought the dinosaur food yet.
- D 2 He has not (hasn't) woken up yet. 3 I still have not (haven't) read it. 4 She has (s) just gone. 5 I have (ve) given it to my dad. 6 They still have not (haven't) told her. 7 The postman has not (hasn't) come yet. 8 I have (ve) just finished it.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I have (ve) read my book.
 3 I have (ve) phoned Julie.
 4 I have not (haven't) washed my school uniform.
 5 I have not (haven't) done my Maths homework.
 6 I have not (haven't) found my tie.

13 Present perfect 2

- A Yes, I have. / No, I haven't.
- B 2 I have (ve) been / I haven't been 3 I have (ve) read / I haven't read 4 I have (ve) played / I haven't played 5 I have (ve) seen / I haven't seen 6 I have (ve) met / I haven't met 7 I have (ve) broken / I haven't broken 8 I have (ve) worked / I haven't worked 9 I have (ve) run / I haven't run

Possible answers

My parents have been to Cuba.
 My teacher has (s) read a book in one day.
 My dad has (s) played rugby.
 My sister has (s) seen an elephant (too).
 My friend has (s) met a famous person.
 My cousin has (s) broken his leg.
 My neighbour has (s) worked in a restaurant.
 My aunt has (s) run ten kilometres.

- C 2 has not (hasn't / 's not) played
3 have ('ve) never spent
4 have not (haven't) met 5 have ('ve) gone
6 has ('s) written 7 have not (haven't) spoken
8 Has ... ever forgotten 9 have ('ve) seen
10 have ('ve) ever had

- D 2 been 3 been 4 gone 5 been

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 1 I have ('ve) held a snake in my hands.
- 2 I have ('ve) eaten Mexican food before.
- 3 I have ('ve) visited the Taj Mahal.
- 4 Have you ever held a snake in your hands?
- 5 Have you ever eaten Mexican food?
- 6 Have you ever visited the Taj Mahal?
- 7 Betty has ('s) held a snake in her hands.
- 8 Betty has ('s) never eaten Mexican food.
- 9 Betty has not ('s not / hasn't) visited the Taj Mahal before.

14 Present perfect 3

- A 2 for 3 since 4 since 5 for 6 for
7 since 8 since

- B 2 haven't seen 3 's been 4 've lived
5 've never had 6 have ... had
7 's always loved 8 has ... been
9 's worked 10 've always thought

- C 2 How long has she driven a Mini Cooper?
3 How long has she lived there / in Marylebone?
4 How long has he played the piano?
5 How long has he been a vegetarian?
6 How long has she spoken Italian?

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I haven't seen my cousin for ages.
- 3 I've been at this school since September.
- 4 I've known my best friend for one year.
- 5 I haven't done the washing-up for weeks.
- 6 My family has / have always lived here.

15 Present perfect or past simple?

- A 2 acted 3 has starred 4 has worked
5 was 6 became; was 7 've had

- B 2 was 3 Have ... heard 4 did ... dream
5 has ('s) bought 6 came 7 were
8 haven't worn

- C 3a 4b 5b 6a 7b 8a

My Turn!

- 2 When did you last go swimming?
- 3 How many different schools have you studied at before now?
- 4 What did you do yesterday?
- 5 How many exams have you taken / did you take this year?
- 6 When your mother was young, where did she live?
- 7 Have you ever lived in another country?
- 8 What did your family do last weekend?

Possible answers

- 2 I went swimming last week.
- 3 I've studied at three different schools (so far).
- 4 I went shopping.
- 5 Up to now, I've taken ten exams. / I took ten exams this year.
- 6 She lived in a village in the mountains.
- 7 Yes, I have. I've lived in Switzerland.
- 8 We ate in a restaurant.

16 Used to

- A 2 He used to work in a supermarket.
3 He didn't use to have a big house.
4 He didn't use to play golf.
5 He used to wear cheap clothes.
6 He used to be happy.

- B 3 snowed / used to snow 4 met
5 watch / use to watch
6 wasn't / never used to be
7 went 8 went / used to go

- C 3 There used to be bears in England.
4 People didn't use to eat a lot of meat.
5 Builders used to make houses out of wood.
6 Most people didn't use to live in towns.
7 Travelling by sea used to be dangerous.
8 Children didn't use to learn English.

- D 2 Were you / Did you use to be
3 didn't worry / didn't use to worry
4 did / used to do 5 criticised / used to criticise
6 didn't listen / didn't use to listen
7 sat / used to sit
8 didn't answer / didn't use to answer
9 changed 10 lost

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I didn't use to have a cat.
- 3 I used to want to be an astronaut.
- 4 I never used to go to discos.
- 5 I didn't use to like swimming.
- 6 I used to be afraid of the dark.

R3 Review: present perfect and used to

- A eaten; do, did; fall, fallen; feel, felt; get, got; have, had; looked, looked; live, lived; make, made; played, played; walked, walked; write, written

- B 2 Did you use to play computer games when you were a child?
3 -
4 The Romans used to eat a lot of fish.
5 She used to play the violin at university.
6 -
7 Didn't they use to work hard at their old school?
8 -

- C 2 Have you ever made a pizza?
3 Has the film started yet?
4 How many times have you ridden a horse?
5 Have you read all seven Harry Potter books?
6 How long have Henry and Gloria been married?
7 Have you ever had a party in your house?
8 Has Tony said thank-you for the present yet?
9 Have you studied English before?
10 Has Maria cleaned her shoes yet?

- D 2 No, I've never made a pizza.
3 Yes, it's just started.
4 I've ridden a horse three times.
5 I've read four of them already, but I haven't read the other three yet.
6 They've been married for two years.
7 Yes, I have. I had a party in my house last year.
8 Yes, he's already said thank-you four times.
9 No, I've never studied English before.
10 Yes, she has. She cleaned them yesterday.

- E 2 Have ... seen; saw
3 have ... had; have ('ve) had
4 Did / Didn't ... (use to) play; did / used to
5 Have ... written; wrote
6 Have ... met; met
7 Have ... decided; have ('ve) decided; haven't decided
8 did ... (use to) want; used to want / wanted
9 Did ... watch; have ('ve) ... watched

- F 2 I've always been 3 decided 4 have
5 been 6 started 7 took 8 I've cycled
9 yet 10 haven't 11 yet 12 used
13 since 14 Have 15 I've fallen
16 haven't 17 always 18 I've had
19 met 20 haven't 21 I've collected

17 Will, shall, won't

- A 3 We'll 4 x
5 won't 6 x
7 won't 8 x
9 I'll
10 won't
11 it'll

B Possible answers

- 2 will 3 won't 4 'll 5 won't 6 won't
7 'll 8 won't 9 will 10 won't

- C 2 I will ('ll) give her some milk.
3 I will ('ll) buy some tomorrow.
4 I will ('ll) do it tomorrow.
5 I will ('ll) have a swim.
6 I will ('ll) talk to him.

- D 2 will 3 Shall 4 Will 5 won't 6 will
7 Shall 8 will 9 'll 10 will 11 won't

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 3 I think robots will do all the housework.
- 4 I don't think children will drive to school.
- 5 I'm sure everyone will have a computer.
- 6 I hope people won't live until they are 120.
- 7 I think I won't be rich.
- 8 I'm not sure the world will be very different.

18 Present continuous with future meaning

- A 2 is ('s) leaving 3 is meeting 4 are ('re) signing
5 is ('s) having 6 are ('re) reading
7 is ('s) seeing 8 are interviewing
9 is ('s) taking 10 is ('s) meeting

- B 2a 3e 4d 5b

- 2 Are you having a holiday there?
No, I am ('m) doing a drama course.
- 3 Are you flying to Zurich?
Yes, but I am ('m) not staying in Zurich.
- 4 Where are you staying?
I am ('m) renting a flat in Geneva.
- 5 Is your sister travelling with you?
No, we are ('re) not going together.

- C 2 am ('m) not spending
3 am ('m) meeting
4 Is ... taking 5 is ('s) playing 6 is ('s) coming
7 Is ... playing 8 is ('s) giving
9 is not (isn't / 's not) staying
10 are ... doing
11 am not ('m not) doing

My Turn!

Possible answers

- I'm meeting the Queen of England on Saturday.
We're having a party on my yacht.
I'm not working next week.
I'm meeting my fans.
I'm buying a new castle.
I'm not speaking to the reporters.

19 Be going to

- A 2 is ('s) going to break the
3 is not (isn't / 's not) going to snow
4 is ('s) going to cry 5 is not (isn't) going to finish
6 is ('s) going to have

- B 2 is ('s) going to 3 Are ... going to
4 is not ('s not / isn't) going to
5 are ('re) going to 6 Is ... going to
7 are not ('re not / aren't) going to

- C 3 going to win 4 going to study
5 going to have / having 6 going to finish
7 going to write 8 going to take / taking

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 He is ('s) going to buy it.
3 I am ('m) going to arrange private lessons.
4 You are ('re) going to be a doctor.
5 Sally is ('s) going to get a better job.
6 They are ('re) going to move to the country.
7 You are ('re) going to give (him) the money (to him).

R4 Review: the future

- A 2h 3b 4f 5a 6d 7c 8g

- B 1 Will your sister want to come ... ?; Will they arrive on time?; Yes, she will.; I think it'll be really good.; No, it won't.
2 Shall we go dancing tonight?
3 Are you meeting Rachel tonight?; Is Dan cooking dinner tonight?
4 Is the train going to be late?; Are you both going to watch the tennis match?; I'm going to stay at home.
C 3 Are we going to be late?
4 Will I need my passport at the hotel?
5 Susan isn't going to the party, so I won't go.
6 You won't enjoy this book.
7 Is it going to snow tonight?
8 Are you going to be sick?
9 Will your parents be angry?
10 We aren't going to win the match.
D 2 I'm going to 3 I'll 4 I'm going to
5 I'm going to 6 won't 7 I'll
8 are all going to 9 I'll 10 Are you going
11 I'm going to 12 I'm going to
E 3a 4b 5a 6b 7b 8a 9b 10a

F Possible answers

- 2 It will not (won't) be very cold next week.
3 I am ('m) going to the cinema tonight.
4 I am ('m) not going to go to the cinema next week.
5 My favourite football team is playing a match this weekend.
6 My favourite football team is not (isn't) going to win the cup this year.
7 We are ('re) going to a hot country on holiday next week.
8 We are ('re) going to go to a hot country on holiday this summer.

20 Modal verbs: can, could, be able to

- A 2 can't 3 were not able to
4 were able to 5 could 6 will be able to
B 2 I couldn't remember her name.
3 The child wasn't able to stand.
4 Can we meet at 7?
5 He couldn't answer the question.
6 I can't play tennis.
7 Can she drive a truck?
8 My friends weren't able to come.
C 2c 3d 4a 5b 6c 7c 8d
D 2 Can ... speak 3 will be able to have
4 can ... imagine 5 can't see
6 Could ... understand 7 could hear
8 won't be able to come

My Turn!

Possible answers

- When I was four,
I couldn't stand on my head.
I could touch my toes with my nose.
Now,
I can speak English.
I can stand on my head.
I can't drive.
In the future,
I will be able to run 10 kilometres.
I won't be able to touch my toes with my nose.
I will be able to drive.

21 Modals for requests: can, could, may

- A 2d 3f 4i 5a 6b 7g 8e 9c
B 2 (Please) Can / Could / May I speak to Sarah (please)?
3 (Please) Can / Could / May we come home late tonight (please)?
4 (Please) Can / Could / May I ride your bike (please)?
C 2 May I use your mobile (phone)?
3 Could / Can you help me?
4 May I come in?
5 Could / Can we meet after school?
6 Could / Can you bring your CD?
7 Could / Can you close the window?
8 Could / Can we start?
D 2 Could / Can you (please) buy me a new bike (please)?
3 Could / Can / May I (please) visit London (please)?
4 Could / Can you (please) translate this email from my friend in Mongolia (please)?
5 Could / Can you (please) do my Geography homework (please)?
6 Could / Can you (please) send my sister a birthday present (please)?
7 Could / Can / May I (please) go into space (please)?
8 Could / Can / May I (please) be in the next Spider-Man film (please)?

My Turn!

Possible answers

- Could I be President for a day, please?
Please could you lend me 200 euros?
Can I have my own room, please?

22 Must, have to and can't

- A All answers: have to / don't have to
B 2 You mustn't / can't talk on your mobile phone.
3 You mustn't / can't ride your bike here.
4 Cars must drive under 60 km per hour.
5 You mustn't / can't drink the water.
6 You must be quiet here.

C Possible answer

- I must ...
buy a new bag
and talk to my dad
and eat chips.
I must not ...
buy my dad
or talk to chips
or eat a new bag.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- I have to pay in advance.
I have to bring a tent.
I mustn't make a lot of noise.
I mustn't have parties.
I don't have to arrive early.

23 Should, ought to

- A 2g 3h 4a 5d 6e 7b 8f
B 2 should buy 3 should meet 4 should open
5 should say 6 should kiss 7 should eat
8 should give
C 2b 3c 4a 5c 6b
D Possible answers
You should play loud music too!
You should borrow a dress from your sister.
You should ask him what he wants.
You should go home.
You shouldn't worry about it.
You should find a good manager.
You ought to do what she says.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- Tourists shouldn't stay in expensive hotels.
People should always say 'Please' and 'Thank you'.
You ought to travel on our beautiful trams.
You shouldn't go out after 22.00.
Tourists shouldn't forget to bring sun cream.

24 Modals of possibility: may, might

- A 2e 3h 4g 5a 6d 7f 8c
B 3 might / may get lost
4 may / might run away.
5 might not / may not / mightn't find the Yeti.
6 might not / may not / mightn't have enough food.
7 might / may follow
8 might not / may not / mightn't attack
9 may / might write a book
10 might not / may not / mightn't survive!
C 2 might / may need 3 might not / may not have
4 might not / may not work
5 might / may see / find 6 might / may be
7 might not / may not like
8 might not / may not see / find
9 might / may write 10 might / may be

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 It might be burnt. 3 The dog may be lost.
4 Your neighbour might have an important message for you.
5 The other person may not speak English.
6 It might be your imagination.
7 He may not like opera.
8 She might be on holiday.

R5 Review: modals

- A 2 could 3 have 4 May / Can / Could
5 ought / have 6 might / may / could
7 can 8 Should 9 can / may 10 have
11 Could / Can 12 mustn't
B b2 c11 d4 e9 f1 g12 h3 i10
j8 k5 l6
C 2 can 3 will be able to 4 had to
5 must / have to 6 will have to
7 could / couldn't; couldn't / could
8 can; can't 9 will be able to; won't be able to
10 didn't have to; had to
11 have to; don't have to
12 won't have to; won't have to; will have to
D 2 might know 3 be able to play
4 May I open 5 has to be 6 Could you wait
7 may not be 8 don't have to wear
E 2a 3c 4b 5a 6c

- F 2 could 3 may / might / could 4 have to
5 be able to 6 Should / Must 7 ought
8 have to 9 may / might / could
10 may / could / might 11 may / might
12 should / could / might 13 May / Can / Could
14 can't 15 may / might 16 Can / Could

25 Yes / no questions and short answers

A 2b 3a 4d 5c 6g 7f

- B 3 No, it doesn't. 4 No, he / she isn't.
5 No, he / she hasn't. 6 Yes, they are.
7 Yes, they do. 8 Yes, we have.

C Possible answers

Is a bee black and yellow?
Have you ever seen a ladybird larva?
Do beetles have wings?
Do mosquitoes have spots?
Does a bee lay eggs?
Have you ever picked up a worm?

My Turn!

- 2 Are you over 18? No, I'm not.
3 Do you have more than one bag? Yes, I do.
4 Do you live in the USA? No, I don't.
5 Is your grandmother living in the USA? Yes, she is.
6 Have you been to the USA before? No, I haven't.
7 Are you staying for more than a month? No, I'm not.

26 Question words: Where? When? Why? How? Whose?

- A 2 Why is he famous?
3 Where did the farmer find the body?
4 Whose farm was it?
5 When did the Romans invade Britain?
6 Why did the Celts kill him?
7 How do people know about this?
8 Where can we see him?
- B 2 Where 3 How 4 When 5 Whose
6 Why 7 How 8 When
- C 2 When did; eleventh
3 Whose ... is; George Washington
4 Where were; Greece 5 How did; An apple
6 Why did; Microsoft 7 Whose ... is; Brazil
8 How did; horse
- D 3 Where do you (usually) celebrate (it)?
4 Why do you celebrate (it) at home?
5 How did you celebrate (it) last year?
6 Whose idea was that? 7 When did it start?
8 Why did it start then / early?
9 Why did you invite your gran?

My Turn!

Possible answers

Who is the man?
Why is he afraid?
When did he arrive?
Where are the police?
Whose voice is it?
Why won't his car start?
Whose face is it?
How can I find out the end of this story?

27 Object and subject questions

- A 2 What happened on 4 April 1968? g
3 Who wrote *Around the World in 80 Days*? a
4 What landed on Mars in 1976? c
5 Who did Will Smith marry in 1997? d
6 What did Frank Whittle invent? f
8 What did Neil Armstrong do in 1969? b

- B 2 Who lives at 10 Downing Street?
3 What destroyed most of San Francisco in 1906?
4 Who does Mary Jane Watson love? Who loves Mary Jane Watson?
5 Who painted *Sunflowers*?
6 What did Tim Berners-Lee invent?
7 Who did Elton John sing about in his song *Candle in the Wind*?

- C 3 What does Kelly like? 4 Who likes cats?
5 Who told my neighbour that I didn't like school?
6 Who did my neighbour tell?
7 & 8 What makes the world go round? / What does the world make?

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 Who teaches the sports / classes / us?
3 What happens (on a sports activity course)?
4 Who can come on the course?
5 What do I (need to / have to) wear?
6 What do I (need to / have to) bring?
7 Who do I contact?

28 Be like and look like

A 2f 3a 4e 5c 6b

- B 2 What does sulphur smell like?
3 What does honey taste like?
4 What do feathers feel like?
5 What do drums sound like?

C Possible answers

What do Superman and Lois look like?
What does Harry Potter look like?
What did Charlie Chaplin look like?
What is (s) the weather like?
What is (s) the weather going to be like?
What is (s) Harry Potter like?
What are Superman and Lois like?
What was the weather like?
What was the party like?
What were the first computers like?
What are your grandparents like?

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 What does your sister / she look like?
3 How's your mother?
4 What is (s) Sicily / Sardinia like?
5 What was the hotel like?
6 How are you?
7 What was the party / it like?
8 What are your grandparents like? What do your grandparents look like?
9 What is your teacher like? / What does your teacher look like?

29 What? and Which?

- A 2 Which car 3 Which way 4 Which planet
5 Which telephone / phone 6 Which bed
- B 2 Which 3 What / Which 4 What / Which
5 What / Which 6 Which
- C 2 Which 3 What 4 Which 5 What
6 Which 7 what 8 What 9 Which
10 What

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 Which one is the queen?
3 What / Which countries do honey bees live in?
4 Which continent doesn't have bees?
5 What / Which kind(s) of bees do you have?
6 What / Which is the best honey?

30 How ...? questions

A 2a 3f 4h 5d 6g 7b 8e

- B 2 far 3 good 4 long 5 much 6 fast
7 often
- C 2 often do you
3 cold / warm is (NOT ~~How hot is...~~ because water in the sea doesn't get hot.)
4 far is it 5 long did it 6 much did you

My Turn!

- 2 How fast / quickly do / can you swim?
3 How tall are you?
4 How fast can you run?
5 How early do you have to get up?

31 So and neither

A 2e 3c 4f 5h 6d 7a 8b

- B 2 So do I. Me too. 3 Neither do I. Me neither.
4 So am I. Me too. 5 Neither do I. Me neither.
6 So do I. Me too. 7 Neither am I. Me neither.
8 So do I. Me too.
- C 2 Suzi chats on the website every evening and so does Abi.
3 Suzi doesn't eat chocolate and neither does Abi.
4 Suzi is good at English and so is Abi.
5 Suzi doesn't watch horror movies and neither does Abi.
6 Suzi hates football and so does Abi.
7 Suzi isn't going out this weekend and neither is Abi.
8 Suzi thinks winter is boring and so does Abi.
- D 2 neither are my friends. 3 So is her sister.
4 Neither did I! 5 Neither has my mum.
6 So was I. 7 So did we. 8 Neither can I.
9 Neither is her husband.
10 So do my cousins. 11 So am I.
12 Neither were you!

My Turn!

Possible answers

Todd, Nicko and Emma don't like cabbage and neither do I.
Nicko doesn't like Maths and neither does Emma, Nicko and Emma don't like Maths and neither do I.
Todd is a Manchester United fan and so is Nicko.
Emma is not / isn't a Manchester United fan and neither am I.
Emma thinks winter is boring and so do I.

32 Question tags

A 2a 3i 4h 5g 6c 7d 8f 9b

- B 2 are we? 3 aren't I? 4 isn't he?
5 will it / he / she? 6 didn't you?
7 doesn't she? 8 didn't they?
9 has it? 10 do you?
- C 3 Yes, I am. 4 No, it isn't / it's not.
5 Yes, he did. 6 No, we haven't.
7 Yes, it / he / she can. 8 No, they're not / aren't.
- D 2 am I 3 is it 4 do you 5 haven't you
6 isn't it 7 will it
- E 2 You broke it, didn't you?
3 You will go, won't you?
4 You're very tired, aren't you?

My Turn!

Possible answers

The music wasn't loud, was it?
Fred was there, wasn't he?
Jake's parents were there, weren't they?
You didn't leave early, did you?

R6 Review: questions and answers

A 2b 3d 4g 5a 6e 7c 8f 9j 10i

B (Possible answers in brackets)

- 1 What kind of music do you like? (I love hip hop.)
 - 2 Who wrote your favourite book? (J. K. Rowling)
 - 3 How old are your parents? (40 and 42)
 - 4 Whose computer do you use? (I use my computer or my mum's.)
 - 5 What are your friends like? (They are (re) very nice.)
 - 6 How many countries have you visited? (I have / 've visited / been to five countries.)
 - 7 What colour are your eyes? (They are (re) blue.)
 - 8 How often do you play computer games? (Every day)
 - 9 How long does it take to get to school? (20 minutes)
- C 2 don't you; I don't; So do I
3 did you; I did; Neither did I
4 can you; I can; Neither can I
5 haven't you; I haven't; So have I
6 do you; I do; Neither do I
7 isn't she; she isn't; So is
8 hasn't he; he hasn't; So has

D 2l 3f 4j 5c 6i 7g 8m 9d 10k
11h 12b 13e

- E 2 What ... like 3 How often 4 What kind
5 How many 6 Whose coffee 7 How much
8 Which one 9 How long 10 What time

- F 2 What does he love?
3 Whose computer did he open?
4 Was she angry? 5 Why was she angry?
6 Where did he put his first game?
7 How many games has he written?
8 Who wrote to him last week?
9 Which game did the man like?
10 Where is he going (to go) next week?

33 Have and have got

- A 3 I do not (don't) have blue eyes.
4 We have a piano. 5 She has blue eyes.
6 She does not (doesn't) have a cold.
7 He does not (doesn't) have a sister.
8 He has a piano.
9 They do not (don't) have a dog.
10 They do not (don't) have a cold.
- B 3 have / have got 4 have
5 Do crocodiles have 6 have
7 have / have got 8 had 9 had
10 didn't have 11 Do you have / Have you got
- C 2 has / has got 3 did not (didn't) have
4 have / have got
5 does not (doesn't) have / has not (hasn't) got
6 had
7 do not (don't) have / have not (haven't) got
8 has / has got
- D 4 has / has (s) got 5 have / have got 6 had
7 does not (doesn't) have / has not (hasn't) got
8 have 9 Does ... have / Has ... got
10 had 11 have
12 did not (didn't) have; have
13 Does ... have / Has ... got; does / has

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 Do you have a favourite crocodile?
- 3 Has your farm got any unusual crocodiles?
- 4 Will your TV show have any famous stars?
- 5 Can I have your autograph?

34 Make, do and get

- A do: an exam, exercise, homework, a job, the shopping, the washing
make: a dress, a paper plane, a salad

B 2a 3e 4g 5h 6c 7d 8f

- C 2 getting better 3 get angry 4 getting late
5 get any text messages 6 getting married
7 get older 8 get; some milk 9 got lost
10 got up; got dressed

My Turn!

- 2 Do you get / make a pizza or do the shopping?
- 3 Do you get up early or get up late?
- 4 Do you make him a snack or make him some lunch? / Do you make a snack for him or make some lunch for him? / Do you make a snack or make some lunch?
- 5 Do you get the bus or get to school late?
- 6 Do you get a job or do nothing?

35 Prepositional verbs

- A 2 came across 3 consists of 4 Look after
5 suffer from 6 depend on

- B 2 on 3 for 4 about 5 for 6 for
7 about 8 from 9 to 10 about

- C 2 believe 3 look 4 Get 5 Look 6 go
7 come 8 depend

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 3 What are / were you listening to?
- 4 What are / were you laughing at?
- 5 What are you looking at?
- 6 What do they talk about? / What are / were they talking about?
- 7 Who does (this coat) belong to?
- 8 Who paid / 's paying for the meal?

36 Phrasal verbs

- A 2 find out 3 got back 4 lay down
5 woke up 6 Hurry up 7 take off
8 break down.

B Possible answers

- 2 Take off your sunglasses. / Take your sunglasses off.
- 3 People should pick up their rubbish / pick their rubbish up when they go home.
- 4 Turn on the lights! / Turn the lights on!
- 5 I need to charge up my phone / charge my phone up first.
- 6 Turn up the music / the volume! / Turn the music / the volume up!
- 7 The policeman told off the children. / The policeman told the children off.
- 8 When you sit in a car, you need to put on your seat belt / put your seat belt on.
- 9 I've locked the door and thrown away the key / thrown the key away.

- C 2 put it on 3 Look it up! 4 turn it down
5 tell her off 6 Throw them away
7 turn it off 8 give it up

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 I'd like it to wake me up.
- 3 I'd like it to turn on the TV.
- 4 I'd like it to take off my shoes.
- 5 I'd like it to find out the answers to my homework.

37 Verbs with two objects

- A 2 Do you get your sister a new phone?
3 Do you phone or send him a text message?
4 Do you offer the old woman your seat?
5 Do you make your family lunch?
6 Do you tell her the problem?
7 Does your dad give you driving lessons?

B Possible answers

- 2 He is lending the woman his jacket. / He is lending her his jacket.
- 3 He is making his children a cake. / He is making them a cake.
- 4 She is giving her husband some flowers. / She is giving him some flowers.
- 5 She is throwing the boy the frisbee. / She is throwing him the frisbee.
- 6 He is buying his children some balloons. / He is buying them some balloons.

C Possible answers

- The woman made me / her / the boy a cup of tea / a present.
The woman made a cup of tea / a present for me / him / the boy.
I made her / the boy / the woman a cup of tea / a present.
I made a cup of tea / a present for her / the boy / the woman.
The boy sold me / her / the woman a cup of tea / a new bike.
The boy sold a cup of tea / a new bike to me / her / the woman.
I sold her / the boy / the woman a cup of tea / a new bike.
I sold a cup of tea / a new bike to her / the boy / the woman.
The woman gave me / her / the boy a cup of tea / a new bike / a present / a message.
The woman gave a cup of tea / a new bike / a present / a message to me / her / the boy.
I gave her / the boy / the woman a cup of tea / a new bike / a present / a message.
I gave a cup of tea / a new bike / a present / a message to her / the boy / the woman.
The boy sent me / her / the woman a message.
The boy sent a message to me / her / the woman.
I sent her / the boy / the woman a message.
I sent a message to her / the boy / the woman.

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 Read them a story. / Read a story to them.
- 3 Give him some money. / Give some money to him.
- 4 Make him a sandwich. / Make a sandwich for him.
- 5 Bring me a drink. / Bring a drink to me.
- 6 Tell him / her / your friend the answer. (This is most usual form with tell.)
- 7 Lend him / her / your friend your mobile phone. / Lend your mobile phone to him / her / your friend.

38 Verb + -ing or verb + to-infinitive; like and would like

- A 2 to have 3 opening 4 being 5 to list
6 to change 7 to go / going 8 to take
9 eating 10 painting
- B 2 I like playing tennis.
3 I would (d) like to be a chef.
4 Would you like to see my paintings?
5 We like going / to go to the theatre.
6 Would you like a drink?
- C 2 doing 3 to have 4 to make 5 watch
6 creating 7 to be 8 to understand
9 to see 10 to show
- D 2 to buy 3 to learn 4 to teach
5 to study / studying 6 listening 7 spend
8 writing 9 to get 10 to hear

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 3 I enjoy learning English.
- 4 I intend to do the PET exam.
- 5 One day my gran hopes to visit my auntie in America.
- 6 My dog hates going for a walk.
- 7 I need to exercise more.
- 8 My mum promised to buy me a new bike.

39 State verbs

- A 2d 3f 4a 5c 6b 7e
- B 2 does it mean 3 's growing 4 disagree
5 is watching 6 don't understand
7 Do you remember
8 Are computers becoming 9 It seems
10 don't doubt 11 are not listening
12 believes
- C 2 am ('m) thinking 3 is having 4 looks
5 have 6 does not (doesn't) think
7 are ... looking

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I can smell flowers.
- 3 I can hear birds / insects.
- 4 It feels smooth / soft.
- 5 It tastes bitter / sweet.
- 6 I can smell dry sand.
- 7 I can hear nothing / the wind.
- 8 I can see dry sand / the horizon.
- 9 I feel alone / frightened / excited.

R7 Review: verb structures

- A 2h 3i 4k 5b 6j 7e 8d 9c 10a
11f 12g
- B 2 Yesterday David suggested going bowling tonight.
3 My mum decided to throw away my old trainers yesterday.
4 We want to make a birthday card for Sharon.
5 Last night, I finished studying at 10 pm.
6 I don't mind waiting for you.
7 She promised to take me to the cinema.
8 Last week, Duncan offered to buy me a ticket.
9 I need to speak to Jo now.
10 Alison refused to pay for her dinner.
- C 2 How many brothers does Steven have?
3 What are you worried about?
4 Who does this guitar belong to?
5 What kind of house have you got?
6 What time did the plane take off?
7 What does this word mean?
8 Where would Pauline like to go?
9 What does this sandwich taste like?
10 Who were they waiting for?
- D 2 planned 3 wanted 4 offered 5 prefer
6 make 7 made 8 laughed 9 getting
10 getting 11 turned 12 looked 13 sat
14 got 15 had 16 wait 17 bought
- E 2 to 3 at 4 about 5 on 6 of
7 for 8 on
- F 2 had 3 to 4 after 5 up 6 looks
7 for 8 'd like 9 like 10 Think about
11 up 12 turned it up

40 Countable and uncountable nouns

- A can be used in the plural: beach, car, cup, job, melon, piece, room, table, wave
can't be used in the plural: bread, cotton, furniture, happiness, luggage, traffic, work
- B 2 a 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 - 7 a 8 a
9 - 10 - 11 - 12 a

- C 2 information 3 sandwiches 4 comes
5 advice 6 hair; eyes 7 is 8 buses
9 luck 10 is

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I cannot live without a car / food / friends.
- 3 A car is / Food is / Weekends are the best!
- 4 A car is / Money is / Good looks are not essential in life.
- 5 A friend is / Love is / Good looks are all you need. (The original line 'Love is all you need' comes from a Beatles song.)
- 6 A weekend doesn't / Love doesn't / Good looks don't last forever.
- 7 Everyone needs a friend / work / music.
- 8 Music / A friend / Knowledge is beautiful.

41 Plural nouns

- A 2 girls 3 tables 4 people 5 legs
6 beaches 7 tomatoes 8 bikes
9 countries 10 sheep 11 foxes
12 photos 13 families 14 wishes
- B 2 bags 3 children 4 wives 5 teeth
6 pianos 7 wolves 8 buses
9 women 10 sandwiches
- C 2 has 3 eat 4 are 5 comes 6 is
7 Do 8 understand 9 lives 10 Are
- D 2 models 3 rooms 4 clocks 5 watches
6 meetings 7 trees 8 children 9 people
10 boxes 11 shelves

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I like Mondays but I don't know why!
 - 3 I like black jeans. They are ('re) cool.
 - 4 I don't like cheese sandwiches because they're not tasty.
 - 5 I like butterflies. They're beautiful.
 - 6 I like hip-hop music because my friend likes it.
 - 7 I don't like orange furniture. It's strange.
- I don't like rats because they are dirty.
I like French food. It's delicious.
I don't like tests because I get nervous.

42 Articles 1

- A 2 a nurse 3 the cat 4 Manchester
5 a tomato 6 the scissors 7 chocolate
8 a horror story 9 the game 10 Sport
11 an older brother 12 the Post Office
- B 2 - 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 - 7 a 8 the
9 the 10 a 11 the 12 the 13 the
14 the 15 a 16 the 17 The 18 the
19 an 20 the 21 the 22 a 23 the
24 the 25 - 26 the 27 the 28 the
- C 2 The colours of the English flag are red and blue. False. (They're red and white.)
3 Cats have nine lives. False.
4 There is a town called Moscow in America. True.
5 'Musicals' are plays or films with singers and dancers. True.
6 A mile is longer than a kilometre. True.
7 Elvis Presley played a concert in London. False. (Elvis never visited England.)
8 The original name of New York was New Rome. False. (It was New Amsterdam.)

My Turn!

Possible answers

There are birds in the tree. The leaves on the tree are brown. I don't like cats, but I like birds.

43 Articles 2

- A 2 the 3 a 4 The 5 a 6 the 7 the
8 an
- B 3a 4b 5b 6a 7a 8b 9b 10a
- C 2 Where is the party tomorrow?
3 It was an exciting night.
4 Who is the most beautiful?
5 A horse is an animal.
6 Hot milk is nice on a cold day. / Cold milk is nice on a hot day.
7 The car park is full again.
8 People need music.
- D 2 - music 3 the forest 4 a tree
5 the birds 6 The sun 7 - wood
8 a guitar 9 the road 10 a knife
11 the tree

My Turn!

Some of the answers are possible ones.

- 2 The viola / The piano 3 The sea.
- 4 - Milk / - Sugar 5 A ship. 6 The moon.
- 7 A credit card. 8 - Happiness. / - Love.

R8 Review: nouns and articles

- A 3 dogs 4 men 5 shoes 6 tomatoes
7 boxes 8 tables 9 computers 10 mice
11 teeth 12 bananas 13 knives
14 houses 15 dictionaries
- B 2 Those ladies have pretty babies.
3 The men are going to buy (some) new watches.
4 The women found (some) mice under the pianos.
5 Those girls stole (some) glasses.
6 These buses have (some) broken windows.
7 The children are eating (some) potatoes.
8 Those farmers are buying (some) sheep and fish.
- C a/an some
city, family, advice, air, fun, furniture,
feeling, game, help, information,
garden, ice cream, luggage, music, soap,
problem, tree, soup, work
trip
- D 2 a 3 some 4 a 5 Some 6 any
7 any 8 some 9 a 10 some
- E 3b 4a 5a 6b 7a 8b 9b 10a 11a 12b
- F 2 an 3 A 4 - 5 the 6 the 7 the
8 the 9 the 10 - 11 the 12 a
13 the 14 the 15 the 16 the 17 the
18 - 19 the 20 - 21 a 22 the
23 the / a 24 a 25 the 26 the
- G 2 plays the violin 3 on / at the / a beach
4 all the cheese 5 the only brother of
6 an hour 7 the bank for a
8 on a business trip

44 This, that, these, those

- A 2 This 3 Those 4 this 5 This 6 these
7 That 8 That
- B 2 this 3 these 4 that 5 this
6 this 7 That 8 those
- C Possible answers
2 How much are these?
3 Who's that?
4 That's
5 Look at those flowers! / Aren't those flowers lovely!
6 are these your glasses
7 is this your phone

My Turn!**Possible answers**

These are my brothers, Tim and Tom. This building is my aunt's house. That tree behind the house is a cherry tree.

45 Some, any, no, none

- A 3 She has some bananas.
4 She doesn't have any tomatoes. / She has no tomatoes.
5 She doesn't have any coffee. / She has no coffee.
6 She has some soap.
- B 2 any 3 no 4 some 5 none 6 no
7 any 8 none 9 any 10 Some
- C 2 A: Have you got some / any American dollars with you?
B: Yes, I've got some.
3 A: Would you like some / any help?
B: I don't need any, thanks.
4 A: I need some biscuits.
B: I'm sorry, we don't have any (biscuits). / I'm sorry, there are none / there aren't any.
5 A: Do you understand any of the questions?
B: No, none.
6 A: Yes, we've got some. Which do you want?
B: Any.
- D 2 Some friendly people 3 any noisy factories
4 some delicious seafood
5 some beautiful walks
6 any money

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 3 The art gallery has some great paintings.
4 There are no sharks in the sea.
5 There isn't any problem with pollution.
6 Some people speak English.
7 We don't get any snow in winter.

46 Something, everywhere, nobody, anyone

- A 2e 3f 4b 5g 6c 7a
- B 2 anything 3 something 4 nothing
5 anything 6 something 7 someone
8 Everybody
- C 2 something 3 everyone / everybody
4 someone / somebody / no one / nobody
5 anyone / anybody 6 anything
7 something 8 anyone / anybody
9 somewhere
- D 2 I could see someone / somebody / everyone / everybody.
3 I didn't tell the police officer anything. / I told the police officer nothing.
4 The woman didn't tell me anything interesting. / The woman told me nothing interesting / The woman told me something boring.
5 Nobody / No one is happy / Everyone is sad.
6 Everybody / Everyone knows.
7 There was something unusual about her.
8 He's (He has) been everywhere / somewhere.

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 someone 3 Everybody 4 anywhere
5 nothing; nothing 6 Everyone 7 Nobody

47 Much, many, a lot of, a little, a few

- A 2 much 3 Many 4 much 5 many
6 many 7 much 8 many 9 much
10 many
- B Possible answers
2 A few sweets are not bad for you. / A little salt in your food is not bad for you.

- 3 A little love is better than none. / A few days off are better than none.
4 A few arguments are nothing to worry about. / A little rain is nothing to worry about.
- C 2 a lot of / lots of (many wouldn't be used here as this text is written in an informal style)
3 many / a lot of / lots of
4 much / a lot of
5 A few
6 a lot of / lots of (many wouldn't be used here as this text is written in an informal style)
7 much / a lot of 8 a few 9 a little

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 1 A lot / Not much / Only a little.
2 A lot / Not much / Only a little.
3 A lot / Not many / Only a few.
4 A lot / Not many / Only a few.
5 A lot / Not much / Only a little.
6 A lot / Not many / Only a few.
7 A lot / Not much / Only a little.
8 A lot / Not many / Only a few.

48 Subject and object pronouns

- A 2 It 3 She; them 4 he 5 you; me
6 it; us 7 You; her 8 We; you
- B 2 She 3 He 4 You 5 They 6 It
- C 2 We 3 them 4 you 5 him 6 them
7 They 8 it; her 9 them; me 10 us
- D 2 She 3 they 4 her 5 They 6 We
7 you 8 us / it 9 it 10 They 11 them
- E It has a big garden but most people don't know that it is a magic garden! Mr and Mrs Strange have a daughter, Mary Strange. Last summer, my brother and I saw her outside. She had a golden key. She took it, went to the gate of the garden and opened it. Quietly, we followed her inside. We saw Mr and Mrs Strange. They were sitting in a tree. Mary flew to them. A bird in the tree spoke to her and she answered it. We ran away.

My Turn!

- 3 I like / don't like them. 4 I like / don't like it.
5 I like / don't like him / her.
6 I like / don't like it. 7 I like / don't like her.
8 I like / don't like him. 9 I like / don't like them.

49 Possessive 's

- A 2 Rosa 3 Emilio 4 Anna and Fabio
5 Pietro and Stefano 6 Joe
- Possible answers**
8 is Anna's husband / Pietro and Stefano's father
9 is Pietro's wife / Joe and Carla's mother
10 is Pietro's brother / Joe's (Carla's) uncle
11 is Joe's sister / Pietro and Catherine's daughter / Anna and Lucio's granddaughter
12 are Pietro and Catherine's children / Anna and Lucio's grandchildren / Emilio and Rosa's great-grandchildren
- B 2 Emilio's 3 Emilio's
4 Rosa and Emilio's / Emilio and Rosa's
5 Rosa's 6 Rosa and Emilio's / Emilio and Rosa's
- C 2 Jack's 3 man's 4 Women's 5 managers'
6 Young people's 7 country's 8 parents'
9 husband's

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- My dad's favourite sport is motor racing.
My mum's birthday is in July.
My sister's hobby is surfing.
My grandparents' home is in the country.

My cousin's job is easy.

My brother's room is very untidy.

My sister's school is at the end of the road.

50 Whose?, my, mine

- A 2 my 3 his 4 my 5 her 6 my / our
7 our 8 your 9 my / our 10 their
- B 2 hers 3 My; Mine 4 their 5 her
6 My; yours 7 It's 8 their 9 your
- C 2 her 3 His 4 our 5 theirs 6 his
7 its / their 8 her 9 theirs 10 Our; ours
11 his 12 yours

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 Yes, I do. / No, mine is silver. / No, my phone is silver.
3 Yes, he / she does. / No, his / hers is a VW. / No, his / her car is a VW.
4 Yes, he / she does. / No, his / hers is black. / No, his / her bag is black.
5 Yes, it is. / No, ours is small. / No, our (family) home is small.
6 Yes, they do. / No, theirs is old. / No, their computer is old.
7 Yes, I do. / No, mine is untidy. / No, my bedroom is untidy.

51 There and it

- A Any order possible:
3 There are some books.
4 There are some boxes.
5 There isn't a clock.
6 There's a computer.
7 There isn't a lamp.
8 There aren't any people.
9 There aren't any pictures.
10 There's a telephone.
- B 2 There isn't 3 There is 4 it
5 It's 6 It 7 there is 8 It's 9 It isn't
10 it 11 there
- C 2 It was my birthday yesterday.
3 It was lovely to see you again.
4 There were a lot of people.
5 (Once) there were (once) bears in England (once).
6 It was almost time for bed.
7 There was some water in the bottle.
8 It was three kilometres long.
- D 2 it is (it's) 3 There are 4 There is (There's)
5 it is (it's) 6 There are 7 it is (it's)
8 there are not (aren't) 9 It is not (isn't / 's not)
10 there are

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 There's some information on the website. It's really interesting.
3 There's a text message from Susie. It's for you.
4 There's a bus at the bus stop. It's very late!
5 There's a good programme on television. It's really funny!

R9 Review: pronouns; possessives; quantifiers

- A 3 I 4 our 5 they 6 They 7 us
8 we 9 them 10 We 11 them
12 our 13 it 14 It 15 our 16 it
17 ours 18 my / our 19 She 20 our
21 she 22 your 23 my 24 it
25 your 26 you 27 me 28 I

B Possible answers

- 2 It's 11.30. 3 It's red, blue and white.
 4 There's a man on a bicycle.
 5 There aren't many. 6 It's Maria.
 7 There are foxes and wolves.
 8 It was on Monday.
 9 There was a film about dragons.
 10 It was sunny.
- C 2 brother's ... he's 3 Samantha's ... parents'
 4 It's ... isn't 5 friend's ... doesn't
 6 I'll 7 brother's ... doesn't 8 children's
 9 Maria's ... horses' 10 Terry's
- D 2 in Barry and Gary's / their
 3 are my dad's 4 lend you mine
 5 Their house is 6 listens to her
 7 you give me
- E 2 many 3 Everybody 4 Many 5 A
 6 Nobody 7 much 8 Lots 9 of
 10 lot of 11 little 12 any 13 much
 14 many 15 anything
- F 2 that 3 somewhere 4 some 5 That
 6 any 7 any 8 lots of 9 any 10 a few
 11 any 12 some 13 a few 14 the
 15 some 16 a lot of 17 A few of 18 much
 19 anywhere 20 nowhere 21 -

52 Adjectives

- A ancient city
 careless man / worker
 cold weather / city / day
 empty glass / city
 great city / day / time / weather / worker
 terrible day / time / weather / worker
 ugly face / man / city
 useful information / glass
 young face / worker

- B 2 a credit card 3 a CD player
 4 a toothbrush 5 a bedroom
 6 a train station 7 a postman
 8 a taxi driver

C Possible answers

- 2 It is (It's) not far from here. (the cinema)
 3 It was a very busy place. (the airport)
 4 She doesn't look very well. (my friend)
 5 These flowers smell lovely. (roses)
 6 She does not (doesn't) seem very friendly. (my neighbour)
 7 It is not (It's not / It isn't) a good idea. (smoking)
 8 He is (He's) my favourite actor. (Johnny Depp)
 9 They do not (don't) taste nice. (olives)
 10 He is (s) always asleep! (my brother)

D**Possible answers**

- 2 The homework was
 3 My lunch was quite
 4 A tyrannosaurus rex was
 5 I feel a bit
 6 I am quite
 7 My bedroom is a little
 8 I am
 9 I am very
 10 The house is very

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 I felt nervous, but also excited.
 3 Every visitor must go to the Charles Bridge. It's a famous bridge across the Vltava river. It is very busy in the day but at night it is quiet.
 4 From an aeroplane the city looks very big. All the houses have red roofs.
 5 The people are very friendly.

- 6 The city seems safe at night.
 7 I miss the culture. In Prague there are a lot of interesting galleries and festivals.

53 Order of adjectives**A**

opinion	size	quality	age
amazing	[big]	dirty	modern
famous	enormous	happy	new
handsome	short	quiet	
colour	origin	material	
brown	Asian	cheese	
golden	Roman	glass	
white	Swiss		

- B 2 heavy silver Olympic
 3 tired Kenyan marathon
 4 amazing new 100-metre
 5 tall slim basketball
 6 long 70-metre discus

- C 2 football 3 brown 4 real 5 tall
 6 hard 7 golf 8 family

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 my expensive new brown shoes
 3 an enormous white plastic watch
 4 a dirty old glass window
 5 a famous young Asian footballer
 6 an amazing big cheese sandwich

54 Comparatives

- A 2 longer 3 more dangerous
 4 politer / more polite 5 rarer
 6 farther / further 7 more expensive
 8 older 9 younger 10 heavier
- B 2 Flying is less dangerous than / not as dangerous as driving.
 3 Silver is less rare than / not as rare as gold.
 4 One kilometre is less far than / not as far as one mile.
 5 Seoul is less expensive than / not as expensive as Tokyo.
 6 Moscow is less old than / not as old as Madrid.
- C 3 more expensive 4 as big as
 5 further / farther 6 better
 7 worse 8 later / better

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 The giraffe is a bit taller than the elephant.
 3 The elephant is far heavier than the monkey.
 4 The lion is a bit shorter than the zebra.
 5 The snake is a lot more dangerous than the monkey.
 6 The zebra is a little slower than the lion.

55 Superlatives

- A 2 most dangerous ≠ safest
 3 best ≠ worst 4 most hard-working ≠ laziest
 5 most interesting ≠ most boring
 6 oldest ≠ newest 7 saddest ≠ happiest
 8 strongest ≠ weakest 9 wettest ≠ driest
- B 4 The rabbit ... the longest
 5 The dog ... the biggest
 6 The strawberry jam is the cheapest.
 7 The raspberry jam is the most expensive.
 8 Tom ... the most unusual

C Possible answers

- 2 The dog is the nicest.
 3 The sheep is the most useful.
 4 The mouse is the least useful.
 5 The elephant is the least interesting.
 6 The horse is the most interesting.

- 7 The horse is the fastest.
 8 The elephant is the most dangerous.
 9 The sheep is the least dangerous.

- D 2 Mount Everest is the highest mountain.
 3 The Vatican City is the smallest country.
 4 The blue whale is the largest animal.
 5 Antarctica is the coldest continent.
 6 Hydrogen is the most common gas.
 7 Sirius is the brightest star.
 8 Baikal is the deepest lake.

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 This is the fastest car!
 3 This is the lightest mobile!
 4 This is the friendliest dog!
 5 This is the most comfortable flat!
 6 Our coffee is the best!

56 Adverbs of manner

- A 2 badly 3 quickly 4 noisily 5 easily
 6 slowly 7 carefully

- B 2 far 3 happily 4 fast 5 well 6 carefully
 7 early 8 immediately 9 suddenly 10 late

C Possible answers

- 2 Leonardo da Vinci could paint very well.
 3 Rocky Marciano could hit hard.
 4 Carl Lewis could run very quickly.
 5 The Beatles could sing very well.
 6 Pelé could play football beautifully.
 7 Garry Kasparov could play chess brilliantly.

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 She is (s) smiling happily.
 3 They are (re) talking angrily.
 4 He is (s) walking slowly.
 5 He is (s) eating unhealthily / badly.
 6 She is (s) leaving the house quietly.

57 Comparative and superlative adverbs

- A 2 [early] – earlier – earliest
 3 easily – [more easily] – most easily
 4 [far] – farther / further – farthest / furthest
 5 well – [better] – best
 6 happily – more happily – [most happily]
 7 slowly – [more slowly] – most slowly
 8 [safely] – more safely – most safely

- B 2 sooner 3 highest 4 more safely
 5 worse 6 more seriously 7 accurately
 8 most carefully

- C 2 farther / further; False 3 more quickly; True
 4 faster; True 5 higher; False
 6 better; True 7 more easily; False
 8 more deeply; True

D**Possible answers**

- 2 My sister draws best.
 3 My mum works hardest.
 4 Stefan writes most clearly.
 5 Marco lives farthest / furthest from here.
 6 My dad sings worst.
 7 My brother sleeps longest.
 8 My cousin eats his lunch most quickly.

My Turn!**Possible answers**

- 2 Tim has eaten his meal fastest.
 3 Kim is eating most tidily and most slowly.
 4 Kim is eating least quickly.
 5 Kim has climbed higher.
 6 Tim has climbed less high.
 7 Kim is smiling more happily.
 8 Tim is smiling less happily.

58 -ed and -ing adjectives

- A 2 disappointed 3 interesting 4 exciting
5 terrifying 6 relaxed 7 surprising
8 worried 9 boring 10 annoyed
- B 2 surprising 3 interested 4 exciting
5 disappointed 6 shocked 7 confused
8 frightening 9 bored 10 amazing
11 interesting
- C 2 a) boring b) exciting
3 b) worried c) interested
4 a) tired b) amazing
5 b) frightening c) relaxing

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I'm shocked and frightened.
3 I'm pleased and excited.
4 It's very surprising but I'm very pleased.
5 I'm amazed. It's amazing!
6 This is terrifying. I'm frightened.
7 I'm not worried but it's annoying.
8 I'm annoyed but this isn't very surprising.

59 Too and enough

- A 2 The shoe was too small. *Cinderella*
3 There were not enough mattresses. *The Princess and the Pea*
4 There were too many rats in the city. *The Pied Piper of Hamelin*
5 He was too ugly. *The Ugly Duckling*
6 He slept too much. *Rip Van Winkle*
- B 2 too 3 too 4 too many 5 too
6 too much 7 too 8 too many 9 too much
- C 2 There are not enough women police officers.
3 He doesn't work fast enough.
4 I can't reach it – I'm not tall enough.
5 Do you have enough money?
6 There's never enough time for everything.
7 This camera is small enough to fit in your pocket.
- D 2 enough butter
3 too hard
4 enough rain
5 is ('s) too sweet
6 enough money
7 too much traffic
8 too many people

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 How much money have you saved? Enough / Not enough!
3 How much football is there on TV? Enough / Not enough! / Too much!
4 How many exams do you have every month? Enough / Not enough! / Too many!
5 How many text messages do you receive? Enough / Not enough! / Too many!
6 How much sleep do you get? Enough / Not enough! / Too much!
7 How many weekends are there in a year? Enough / Not enough! / Too many!
8 How much music do you listen to? Enough / Not enough / Too much!

60 Adverbs of frequency

- A 2 It rarely snows 3 don't always save
4 is hardly ever wrong 5 Do you often take
6 They normally go 7 We often have
8 is always on time
9 My mum sometimes doesn't
10 has never had
- B 2 She rarely wears jeans in the office.
3 She always remembers her boss's birthday.
4 She is often late

- 5 She never works at the weekend.
6 She usually has lunch in a café.
- C 2 I usually wear jeans.
3 My sister is hardly ever late.
4 Sandra often phones (me).
5 My boss rarely goes on holiday.
6 The book is sometimes useful.
7 Guests must always lock their rooms.
8 I have never been to Portugal.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 I usually go to bed at the same time.
3 I hardly ever dream about animals.
4 My dreams never come true.
5 I have often seen my friends in dreams.
6 Sometimes I wake up because of a bad dream.
7 I usually tell my friends about my dreams.
8 I have never dreamed in English.

R10 Review: adjectives and adverbs

- A 2 nicer, the nicest, nicely, more nicely, most nicely
3 easier, the easiest, easily, more easily, most easily
4 quieter, the quietest, quietly, more quietly, most quietly
5 faster, the fastest, fast, faster, fastest
6 sadder, the saddest, sadly, more sadly, most sadly
7 better, the best, well, better, the best
8 more expensive, the most expensive, expensively, more expensively, most expensively
9 worse, the worst, badly, worse, worst
10 further / farther, the furthest / farthest, far, further / farther, furthest / farthest
11 more interesting, the most interesting, interestingly, more interestingly, most interestingly
12 friendlier, the friendliest, in a friendly way, in a friendlier way, in the friendliest way
- B 2 the 3 as 4 than 5 the 6 more
7 more 8 less
- C 2 the worst driver 3 further from the sea
4 loudly enough
5 expensive new American sports
6 more slowly than I
7 in a silly way 8 is less interesting than
9 lot less warm

D Possible answers

- 2 I always study hard before an important exam.
3 Please speak more quietly. The baby is asleep.
4 I hardly ever get up early when I'm on holiday.
5 You never wear your old blue coat.
6 (Sometimes) I (sometimes) don't answer my important emails quickly.
7 He's a very nice man, but he's a bit boring.
8 My new car is a lot better than my old one.
9 She never laughs and she doesn't often smile.
10 You eat too quickly and you don't eat enough fresh vegetables.

- E 3b 4a 5b 6a 7b 8a 9a 10b 11a
12b 13b 14a 15a 16b

F Possible answer

Once upon a time, there was a *silly, young* boy called Jack. He lived *quietly* with his *old* mother. They were *very poor*. They didn't have *enough* money. They had *dirty old* clothes. They had just one *thin* cow.

One *sad* day Jack's mother told *silly* Jack to take the *thin* cow to the *colourful* market in the *big* city. Jack and the *sad* cow walked to the market *slowly*. *Suddenly*, Jack heard somebody calling his name *in a friendly way*. He turned round *quickly* and saw a *strange* man. The *strange* man was wearing *colourful* clothes ...

61 Prepositions of place

- A 2 at 3 opposite 4 in front of 5 above
6 near 7 in 8 on
- B 2 in the south of the island
3 at the bottom of the page
4 above the line 5 outside the shop
6 near me 7 behind the building
8 in the city / inside the city / in the centre of the city 9 at the end of the film
- C 2 on 3 in 4 behind 5 at 6 between
7 at 8 in front of 9 by 10 in

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 in my pocket
3 under the bed / behind the sofa
4 at a party / at school
5 in Ruskin Street / at 19 Ruskin Street
6 in Milan
7 outside the house / in the garage / next to the house
8 at school / at home

62 Prepositions of time: at, in, on

A	on	in	at
22 June	1999	breakfast	
Monday	the afternoon	midnight	
your birthday	the rainy season	the moment	
13 September	two years' time	the weekend	
Thursday	winter		

- B 3b 4a 5a 6b 7a 8b 9b 10a

- C 3 on 4 – 5 at 6 in 7 – 8 in
D 2 at 3 in 4 in 5 at 6 – 7 at
8 on 9 at 10 –

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 the weekend 3 four years 4 Friday night
5 ten o'clock 6 a few months'
7 the spring 8 Saturday

63 Prepositions of movement

- A 2 Get out of the car. 3 Walk under it.
4 Jack went down the hill.
5 We got on / onto the train.
6 She is coming / going to Palermo.
7 I walked to the park. 8 We got off the plane.
9 Walk slowly towards the lion.
- B 2 Up the cheese. 3 Over the cheese.
4 To (towards) the cheese. 5 From the cheese.
6 Into (in) the cheese. 7 Out of the cheese.
8 (A)round the cheese.

- C 2a 3d 4b 5d 6c 7b 8d 9c 10a

My Turn!

Possible answers

Go round the mountains and walk round the lake. Go along the river and over the bridge to the old house. Go into the house. The treasure is behind the door.

R11 Review: prepositions

- A 2 between two 3 in front of 4 at 3 in
5 the day before yesterday 6 out of
7 visited her last 8 at the moment

- B 2 on 3 at 4 in 5 on 6 at 7 on
8 in 9 on 10 at 11 in 12 on
13 in 14 on 15 at 16 in 17 at 18 in
- C 2f 3i 4b 5c 6e 7d 8j 9h 10a
- D 2 in 3 At 4 off 5 out of 6 through
7 down 8 on 9 round 10 into
11 behind 12 opposite 13 out of
14 towards 15 at 16 towards 17 near
18 under 19 past 20 into 21 to
22 up 23 At 24 below 25 along
26 off 27 on 28 between

- E 2 I'll meet you in half an hour in front of the cinema.
3 He took the pizza out of the box and put it into the oven.
4 I'm going to visit her in hospital the day after tomorrow.
5 They live in an apartment on the eighth floor.
6 I always sit next to my best friend at school.
7 We usually go to work by train but on Tuesday we went by taxi.
8 The dog ran along the road and jumped over the wall.

64 Passive: present and past simple

- A 2d 3a 4f 5i 6c 7j 8e 9g 10b
- B 2 is done 3 are given 4 was started
5 is bought 6 Is ... learned / learnt
7 was discovered 8 are produced
9 Were ... sent 10 was invented
- C 2 was eaten by 3 The Queen opened
4 were called 5 Did he write
6 is not (isn't) accepted
- D 2 am ('m) woken 3 are emptied
4 am ('m) shocked 5 was left 6 was taken
7 was sold 8 was put 9 was broken
10 was given

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 Food is bought. Money is paid.
3 Children are taught. Friends are made.
4 Films are watched. Popcorn is eaten.
5 Computers are used. Emails are sent.
6 Rooms are cleaned. Food is prepared.
7 Tickets are sold. Trains are caught.
8 Information is found. Websites are used.

65 Zero and first conditionals

- A 2 makes 3 melts 4 eat 5 kills
6 do not (don't mix)
- B 2e 3d 4a 5b 6f 7c 8g
- 2 You'll get cold if you don't put your coat on.
3 If we study hard, we will do well in our exams.
4 If the men do not leave, the army will attack.
5 What will you do if the shop is closed?
6 I don't work very well if the TV is on.
7 I might go to school tomorrow if I feel better.
8 If I give you some money, will you pay for the tickets?
- C 2 is; will go up 3 do not (don't) phone; gets
4 drive; will ('ll) get 5 go; feel / are feeling
6 does not (doesn't) practise; will not (won't) be
7 get; will ('ll) be 8 will ('ll) be; stop

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 we'll go early.
3 if it's raining / if it rains.
4 I'll go on my own.
5 if we don't have enough money for the bus.
6 we'll come back in the afternoon.

66 Second conditional

- A 2 won; would ('d) be 3 felt; would ('d) see
4 would not (wouldn't) speak; broke
5 would ('d) move; lived 6 had; would ... learn
7 did not (didn't) like; would ('d) change
8 Would ... run; saw
- B 2a 3b 4d 5a 6c 7b 8b 9d 10c
- C 2f 3g 4h 5d 6e 7a 8b
- 2 If I saw a strange light in the sky, I might think it was a spaceship.
3 If I had no friends, I could / might join a sports club.
4 If I learned 700 new words today, I could not (couldn't) might not remember them all.
5 If I found a book of magic, I might not want to read it.
6 If I travelled back in time, I could / might visit Cleopatra.
7 If I wrote a pop song, I could / might become a pop star.
8 If I spent three hours in the bathroom every morning, I could / might make my family very angry.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 If I won a free plane ticket, ...
3 If the house was on fire, ...
4 ... if everyone smiled more.
5 If I forgot Lucy's birthday, ...
6 ... if I had a History test tomorrow.
7 If I moved house, ...
8 If there were no buses, ...

R12 Review: the passive; conditionals

- A 2e 3a 4f 5i 6c 7b 8h 9d
- B 2 are sold in that shop
3 was given this sweater by my sister
4 hair is cut by my aunt
5 was taught to sing by a famous opera singer
6 are taught to swim by Mr Hill
7 dinner will be cooked by Uncle Brian
8 were told to stay in your room
- C 2 think 3 use 4 are cut 5 are put
6 was filmed 7 was given
8 was discovered 9 was added
10 needed 11 was chosen 12 discovered
13 caused 14 were broken / broke
15 were blown down 16 were damaged
17 fell 18 lost 19 was hurt
- D 2 If Mick was / were taller, he would ('d) be a great basketball player.
3 This computer will not (won't) work unless you turn it on.
4 If I knew the answer, I would ('d) tell you.
5 If I were / was you, I would not (wouldn't) wear that hat.
6 You can't come in unless you have a ticket.
7 Where would you go if you could fly?
8 I might win the competition if I am ('m) lucky.

E Possible answers

- 2 I'll take my sister. 3 if I needed it.
4 the weather is bad.
5 I'd ask them to come round.
6 I'd be surprised. 7 I saw an accident.
8 I would love it.

- F 2 wouldn't ask 3 had 4 buy / bought
5 has / had 6 will / would be able to
7 buy / bought 8 would
9 would you feel 10 gave 11 was
12 would be 13 hit 14 light up
15 does / would she want 16 wants / wanted
17 loses / lost 18 will / would be able to
19 has 20 will try 21 can't 22 are
23 will phone 24 will have to

67 Reported speech

- A 2 'I want to go to Sophie's party.'
3 'I don't know Sophie.'
4 'Sophie is having a party tomorrow.'
5 'Everyone is invited to the party.'
6 'I'm surprised that everyone is going.'
7 'It will be great if we go together.'
8 'I'll think about it.'
- B 2 He thought (that) he needed a towel.
3 She said (that) she had a lot of work to do.
4 He thought (that) the map / it wasn't clear.
5 They thought (that) they were winning.
6 She said (that) she wasn't answering his question.
- C 2 needed it that 3 they had
4 was busy then 5 go the week
6 the next / following day

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 Mr Brown knew it was Sophie's fault.
3 Mrs Brown said she wanted to stay in a hotel.
4 She thought she needed a holiday.
5 The Browns thought that they needed the police.
6 They told the police they wanted to move house.
7 They said Sophie would never have another birthday party.

68 Say and tell

- A 2 say 3 telling 4 told 5 said 6 tell
7 tell 8 says / said
- B 2 What did you tell the police officer to do? / What did the police officer tell you to do?
3 The customers said they were not happy.
4 Have you told anyone about your problems?
5 She said she would get up early.
6 I will tell you about the match later.
7 Passengers were told to go to platform 3.
8 My dad said he was not feeling very well.
9 She told everyone not to go in.
10 We told them we could not come.
- C 2 He told me to call back later.
3 We told the others not to leave without us.
4 I will tell her to wait outside.
5 Tell the driver not to park in front of the house.
6 I told Simon not to be late.
7 The girl told her friend not to say anything.
8 He always tells me not to worry.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 The teacher was telling a good joke.
3 He wasn't telling the truth.
4 He was telling a story.
5 She was telling (her / her friend) a secret.
6 He said sorry.

69 Defining relative clauses

- A Squash is a racket sport which boys in a London school invented in the 19th century. It is played by two players in a court that has four walls. Players hit the ball around the walls of the court. The ball travels very quickly.

Squash is a healthy sport but it is not good for people who are not very strong! It has become an internationally popular sport which many people think should be in the Olympics. But there is a problem with this. People who come to watch the matches do not always enjoy them. They find it difficult to see the ball!

- B 2 which 3 who 4 which 5 who
6 who 7 which 8 which
- C 2 *Matkot* is a beach game which / that is played all over the world.
3 An ecologist is a scientist who / that studies the environment.
4 Is that the girl who / that you saw at the party? / Is that the girl you saw at the party?
5 A penguin is a bird which / that can't fly.
6 I don't know the doctor who / that is coming to see you.
7 The actress who / that was in *Superman* is on TV tonight. / The actress who / that is on TV tonight was in *Superman*.
8 We're going to the hotel which / that is near the beach. / The hotel which / that we're going to is near the beach. / The hotel we're going to is near the beach. /

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 Neighbours are people who live next to you.
- 3 A musician is a person who plays an instrument.
- 4 A chef is someone who cooks food.
- 5 A telescope is a thing you use to look at the stars.
- 6 An astronaut is a person who travels into space.
- 7 Friends are people who understand you.
- 8 A dinosaur was an animal that lived on Earth millions of years ago.
- 9 A ring is a thing you wear on your finger.
- 10 A knife is a thing you use to cut food.

R13 Review: reported speech; say / tell; relative clauses

- A 2 him he couldn't go out the next day because his aunt was coming / going to stay with them.
3 Zoe to come / go to her house later. She said she would show her her photos.
4 he couldn't play the guitar but he was quite good at singing.
5 they used to have a dog but now they have / had a cat.
6 children to put their coats there and that they could collect them later.
7 Paula he'd like to speak English as well as her.
8 if they didn't stop talking, she would phone their mother.
- B 2 'I can't. I'm talking to my friend.'
3 'My friend is angry with me.'
4 'He will ('ll) be very very angry if I turn the phone off.'
5 'I will ('ll) be very very very angry if you don't turn the phone off.'
6 'I can't talk right now. A policeman wants to talk to me.'
7 'I'm looking for a criminal.'
8 'I want to look in your bag.'
9 'You can't. It's full of stolen money from the bank.'
10 'You're joking.'
- C 3b 4a 5b 6a 7a 8b 9b 10a
- D 2 told the children a 3 Adam said sorry
4 I don't like you 5 I'll study tomorrow
6 tell you a 7 that he used to 8 told me a lie

- E 2 The photo which you took of me is terrible!
3 The student who I'm teaching is from China.
4 Where did I put that book which I was reading?
5 I met someone who went to primary school with you.
6 Was the doctor who you saw nice?
7 The bus which goes to the town centre doesn't stop here.
8 The people who live next door have eight cats.
9 Was the present which you gave me expensive?
10 People who run every day are usually healthy.

- F 2h 3b 4g 5i 6f 7c 8d 9a

- 2 A shopaholic is a person who loves shopping!
- 3 An insect is an animal which has six legs.
- 4 A pet is an animal you look after at home.
- 5 Mercury is a planet which is very close to the sun.
- 6 Oxygen is a gas we need to live.
- 7 A pilot is someone who flies a plane.
- 8 A poet is someone who writes poems.
- 9 Yoga is a type of exercise many people enjoy.

70 Linking words: and, but, or, so, because

- A 3b 4a 5a 6b 7a 8b 9b 10a

- B 2 and 3 or 4 but 5 so 6 and
7 because 8 or

- C 2 Felix is friendly and his sister is really nice.
3 My dictionary is very small, so the word isn't in it.
4 The party was OK but I felt a bit bored.
5 Have you been to Italy before or is this your first time here?
6 I opened the bag and I saw the money.
7 Trevor can't sleep because he drank a lot of coffee.
8 We heard a strange noise, so I phoned the police.

- D Shen-Nung was an Emperor. ~~He~~ and he lived in China. One day he went into the garden. ~~He~~ and (he) sat under a tree. It was a beautiful day. ~~It~~, but it was too hot. ~~It was too~~ and dry. Shen-Nung was thirsty. ~~He~~, so he asked for a drink. Shen-Nung could drink something cold. ~~He~~ or he could have a cup of hot water. The Emperor chose hot water. ~~It~~ because it was his usual afternoon drink. He waited. ~~The~~ and the servant brought the hot water. Shen-Nung closed his eyes. ~~He~~ because he felt tired. ~~He felt~~ and sleepy. Some leaves fell from the tree. ~~They~~ and they went into his cup of water. Shen-Nung woke up. ~~He~~ and he took his cup. He drank the tea. ~~He~~, but he didn't notice the leaves. The new drink was unusual. ~~The new drink was~~ but very tasty. ~~He~~, so he made another cup of hot water with leaves. Shen-Nung is now famous. ~~He~~ because he invented tea.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 and made breakfast.
- 3 because there are a lot of parks.
- 4 Getting up early ... so I am often late.
- 5 ... get a job ... travel around Asia.
- 6 My sister ... because she took my make-up.
- 7 ... a mobile phone ... a poster of Juventus
- 8 ... because I have some friends from Canada.
- 9 ... so people should use public transport.
- 10 ... my family and friends.

71 Time and sequence adverbs: first, then, afterwards

- A 2 first 3 next 4 finally 5 Afterwards

B Possible answers

- 2 Second, put in / enter your pin code.
- 3 Third, choose an amount of money.
- 4 Fourth, take your card (out of the machine).
- 5 Next, take your money.
- 6 Finally, put the money in your wallet.

- C 2 First 3 First; Second; then / finally
4 then / after that 5 After that / Then
6 First; Next; after that / then / finally
7 then

My Turn!

Possible answer

Then put butter or mayonnaise on the bread. Next, cut some cheese or ham. Put the cheese on one piece of bread. Finally, put the other piece of bread on top and eat it. Afterwards, have a drink.

72 Both, either, neither

- A 2 Both 3 Neither 4 both of 5 Either
6 neither of 7 both 8 either

- B 2 Neither of them like / likes Oxford. / Neither Lyra nor Roger like / likes Oxford.
3 Neither of them can use a compass. / Neither Lyra nor Roger can use a compass.
4 Both of them feel afraid. / Both Lyra and Roger feel afraid.
5 Neither of them have / has been to the North. / Neither Lyra nor Roger have / has been to the North.
6 Both of them would like a map. / Both Lyra and Roger would like a map.
7 Neither of them know / knows where the children are. / Neither Lyra nor Roger know / knows where the children are.

- C 2 Programming is both a science and an art.
3 Computer logic is neither difficult nor boring.
4 The symbols are both clear and useful.
5 The software is either free or very cheap.
6 You need both a monitor and a keyboard.

- D 2 both 3 Neither of 4 both 5 either
6 either 7 both 8 Either

My Turn!

Possible answers

We both have a pet cat.
Both of us speak a bit of French.
Neither of us likes shopping.
Both of us are in the basketball team.
We both read in bed.

73 Word order

- A 1 at Tony's Diner p on Monday t
2 at the Barton hospital p in the summer t
3 again t next month t
4 at the age of 65 t for 18 years t
at the city centre school p in Florida p
there p

- B 2 I was there last week.
3 I have lived here for years.
4 I go there on Tuesdays.
5 I am going there now.
6 I will look at it carefully tonight.
7 It was upstairs this morning.
8 We are meeting outside the school at 9.15.

- C 1 The boat hit large rocks outside the port on Sunday evening. No one was hurt.
2 A bear escaped from St Francis Zoo yesterday. Police told people to stay at home. A number of animals have escaped from the zoo recently, including a rare white tiger.

My Turn!

Possible answers

- 2 daily / every morning / on Wednesdays / from the bus station
- 3 at home / at work / in bed / here / there
- 4 here / at my house / on Saturday
- 5 on Friday / next week / at lunchtime / here / there / outside the bank
- 6 tomorrow / at breakfast
- 7 to the beach in the summer

R14 Review: linking words and word order

- A
- 2 I have an appointment in the park at 11.00.
 - 3 Can you meet me at the hospital next Monday?
 - 4 I always eat quickly at lunchtime.
 - 5 You don't see young people in this café these days.
 - 6 People must drive carefully in the town centre on Saturdays.
 - 7 He's staying in Barcelona on holiday.
 - 8 I saw him here last week.
 - 9 Can you swim well now?
 - 10 I'm not studying hard at school at the moment.
- B
- 2 or 3 because 4 so 5 so 6 because 7 but 8 and 9 both 10 either
- C
- 2 I could neither see nor hear him.
 - 3 Do I stay or do I go? / Do I go or do I stay?
 - 4 After the game, he spoke to the players.
 - 5 The joke wasn't either funny or clever / clever or funny.
 - 6 Because I was late, they were angry.
 - 7 Neither team was playing well.
 - 8 My mum and my dad both have colds.
- D
- 2 My computer is very slow now, so I'm getting a new one.
 - 3 Would you like a sandwich or have you had something to eat?
 - 4 I need some new shoes because these are really old.
 - 5 I've joined the club, so I'll get tickets half-price.
 - 6 He loves music, but he can't sing very well.
 - 7 Laura agreed to help them because they had been kind to her in the past.
 - 8 Just knock on the door and go in!
 - 9 I'll give you the book at school tomorrow or I'll bring it to your house later.
 - 10 I'm going to the party but / so I have to leave early.
- E
- 2 Second, put some cheese on top.
 - 3 Then, put the bread and cheese back in the oven at 180° C.
 - 4 After five or ten minutes, take the toast out of the oven and put some tomato on top.
 - 5 Finally, cut into pieces and enjoy!
- F
- 2 because 3 in New England 4 and 5 both 6 at the school 7 but 8 at midnight 9 so 10 Finally 11 but

active GRAMMAR

A1-A2 **LEVEL 1**
with answers

Learn and practise grammar *your way!*

Active Grammar is a three-level grammar reference and practice series specially designed to appeal to teenage and young adult learners. **Active Grammar Level 1** covers A1-A2 (CEF) level grammar points.

- Presentation of grammar points in interesting and realistic contexts
- Appealing, educational content drawn from areas such as geography, science and history
- Clear, easy-to-understand grammar explanations
- Exercises designed to help students prepare for the Cambridge KET and PET exams
- Regular TIP boxes highlight common mistakes
- MY TEST! and Review units monitor progress

Suitable for classroom use or self-study

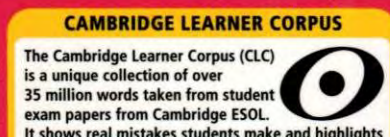
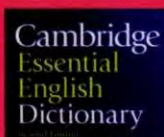
On the CD-ROM

- Extra practice material for each unit
- Printable tests for all grammar areas

On the website

- A FREE online Teacher's Guide provides an abundance of practical ideas on how to use the material in class, and tips on teaching mixed-ability and mixed-age classes.

www.cambridge.org/elt/activegrammar



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS
www.cambridge.org